

MO001 for  
**FAC1501**

**INTRODUCTORY  
FINANCIAL  
ACCOUNTING**

**2016**

Department of Financial Accounting  
University of South Africa, Pretoria



© 2015 University of South Africa

All rights reserved

Printed and published by the  
University of South Africa  
Muckleneuk, Pretoria

FAC1501/MO001/2016

70182434

InDesign

**FAC1501**

**INTRODUCTORY  
FINANCIAL ACCOUNTING**



**Introductory Financial  
Accounting**

CONTENTS	<i>Page</i>
LEARNING UNIT 1: THE NATURE AND PURPOSE OF FINANCIAL ACCOUNTING	1
LEARNING UNIT 2: THE ACCOUNTING EQUATION: FINANCIAL POSITION	9
LEARNING UNIT 3: THE ACCOUNTING EQUATION: FINANCIAL PERFORMANCE	35
LEARNING UNIT 4: BUSINESS DOCUMENTS: CASH TRANSACTIONS	61
LEARNING UNIT 5: THE RECORDING OF CASH TRANSACTIONS	115
LEARNING UNIT 6: CREDIT TRANSACTIONS	191
LEARNING UNIT 7: INVENTORY	229
LEARNING UNIT 8: BANK RECONCILIATION STATEMENTS	253
LEARNING UNIT 9: TRIAL BALANCE	273
LEARNING UNIT 10: FINAL ACCOUNTS	291
LEARNING UNIT 11: FINANCIAL STATEMENTS OF A SOLE TRADER	325

**FAC1501**

**LEARNING UNIT 1**

**THE NATURE AND  
PURPOSE OF  
FINANCIAL ACCOUNTING**



**Introductory Financial  
Accounting**

## OVERVIEW

Learning outcomes .....	1
Key concepts .....	1
Assessment criteria .....	3
2.1 Introduction .....	3
2.2 What is financial accounting?.....	3
2.3 The objective of financial accounting .....	4
2.4 The nature of financial accounting .....	4
2.5 International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs).....	5
2.6 The objective of financial statements .....	6
2.7 Users of financial statements .....	6
2.8 Exercises and solutions .....	7
Self-assessment.....	8

## LEARNING OUTCOMES

After studying this learning unit you should be able to:

- define financial accounting
- explain the objective of financial accounting
- explain the nature of financial accounting
- list the steps involved in the financial accounting cycle
- explain the difference between financial accounting and bookkeeping
- explain the acronym IFRSs
- identify the users of financial accounting information in the financial statements and the reasons why they need the financial information

## KEY CONCEPTS

- Transaction
- Financial accounting
- Objective of financial accounting
- Financial accounting cycle
- Bookkeeping
- International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs)
- Users of financial statements



## ASSESSMENT CRITERIA

- The concept “financial accounting” is explained.
- The nature and objective of financial accounting is explained.
- The specific and general functions of financial accounting are explained.
- The processing of basic transactions is explained.
- The meaning of International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs) and its application to the preparation and presentation of financial information are explained.
- The overall objective of financial statements to meet the needs of the users of financial information is explained.
- Information useful to the users of financial information is determined according to the specific users’ needs.

## 1.1 INTRODUCTION

Every day all over the world literally millions of transactions take place. A transaction is an action where money is paid and in return an item or service, that the buyer needs, is obtained. Think about buying a loaf of bread – something that most of us do on a daily basis. For us as individuals it is quite easy to remember what transactions we concluded for a particular day, but for a big entity, it would be impossible to know what transactions took place during a day if proper records were not kept. It would even become impossible for an individual to remember what transactions were concluded a month ago if he/she does not have a proper recordkeeping system in place.

## 1.2 WHAT IS FINANCIAL ACCOUNTING?

Financial accounting can be defined as the orderly and systematic identification and recording of the monetary values of financial transactions of an individual or business entity, and the reporting of the results of these transactions by way of the preparation and presentation of financial statements to enable the users to use the information obtained in these financial statements as a basis for decision-making. Financial accounting is a specialised method used to communicate financial information about an entity and its activities to those persons or entities that have an interest in the activities of the entity.

Financial accounting is a process that involves three activities, namely:

- Identification – selecting those events that are evidence of economic activity (transactions) relevant to the particular entity.
- Recording the monetary value of the economic events (transactions) so as to provide a permanent history of the financial activities of the entity. Recording consists of keeping a chronological diary of measured events in an orderly and systematic manner. Recording implies that economic events are also classified and summarised.
- The third activity encompasses the communication of the recorded information to interested users. The information is communicated through the preparation and distribution of accounting reports, the most common of which are known as financial statements, that consist of:
  - a statement of financial position;
  - a statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income;
  - a statement of changes in equity;
  - a statement of cash flows;
  - notes, comprising of a summary of significant accounting policies and other explanatory notes.

An entity does not necessarily refer to business entities. It can also refer to an educational institution, a religious institution or a private household.

**NOTE:**

Do not be concerned if you do not understand all the terminology on the following few pages, as they will all be explained in learning units 1 and 2.

**1.3 THE OBJECTIVE OF FINANCIAL ACCOUNTING**

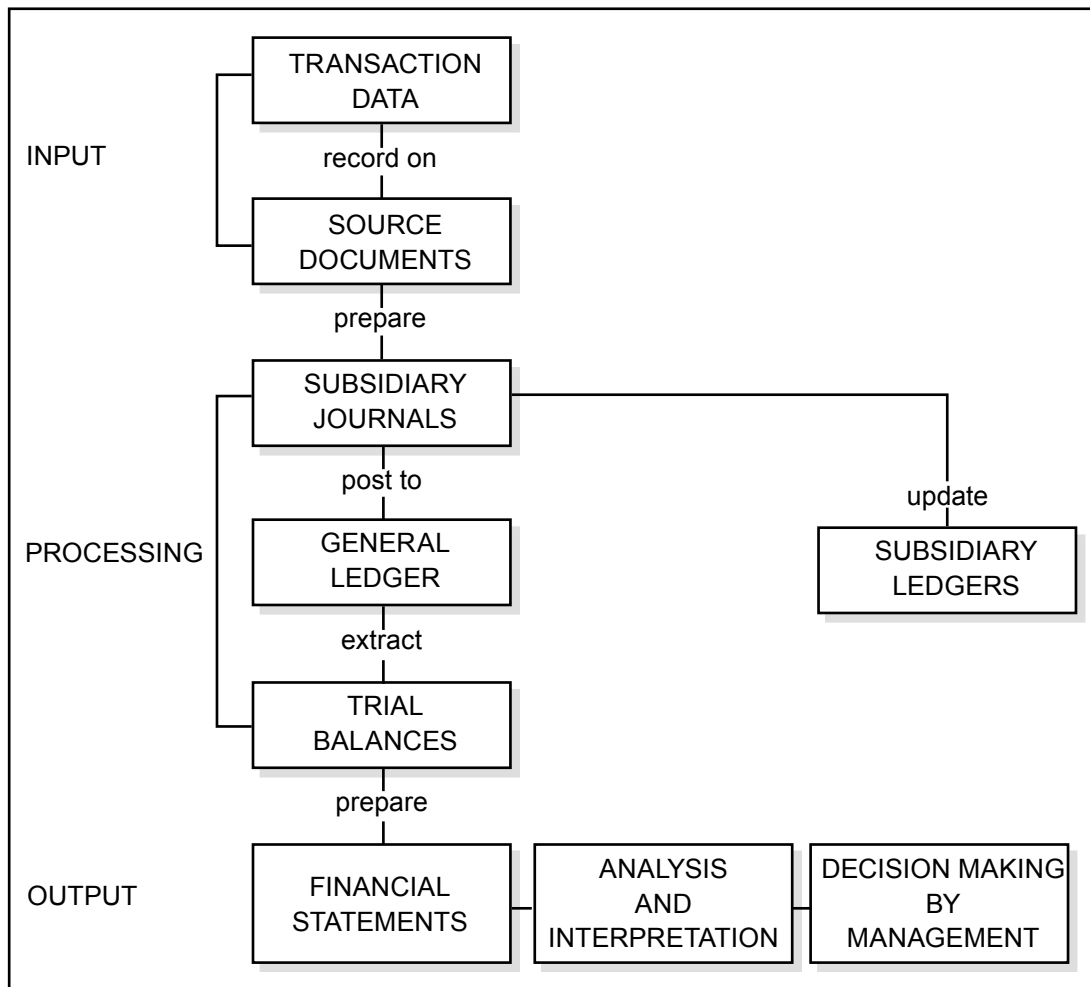
The objective of financial accounting is to enable the users of financial information to ascertain readily what the financial results and financial position of the entity is. With this statement we mean:

- (a) Did the entity trade at a profit or loss?
- (b) What was the income of the entity and what were the expenses incurred in producing that income?
- (c) How much does the entity owe to other entities?
- (d) How much do customers owe to the entity?
- (e) What is the nature and amount (in value) of the various kinds of property and other assets the entity possesses?
- (f) What is the amount of the entity's capital (equity)?

**1.4 THE NATURE OF FINANCIAL ACCOUNTING**

Financial accounting functions as an information system: far-reaching decisions are taken on the basis of the results reported in financial statements and business transactions have to be measured, classified, summarised and recorded continuously. We call these actions the financial accounting cycle. This cycle is demonstrated in the following diagram.



**Diagram 1: The financial accounting cycle**

Financial accounting is the systematic recording of the financial transactions of an entity in such a manner that any information required by the entity is readily available. The systematic recording of the financial information is called a financial accounting cycle, which consists of the elements listed in diagram 1.

The processing stage entails the recording of transactions and this process is known as bookkeeping. The ultimate goal of the input stage and the processing stage is to prepare financial statements.

## 1.5 INTERNATIONAL FINANCIAL REPORTING STANDARDS (IFRSs)

It would be problematic if each entity kept individualised records of its transactions as this would make it difficult to compare the performance of an entity with those of other similar entities. To prevent this from happening, the financial accounting profession has standardised the way in which entities are required to keep record of their transactions.

In South Africa the recording and reporting of financial information are governed by international financial reporting standards as set by the Financial Reporting Standards Council (FRSC) in South Africa. The purpose of these financial accounting standards will to a great extent ensure that the same type of transaction is recorded by different entities in more or less the same way. This will eventually ensure that the financial statements of different entities conducting the

same type of business are comparable and that an entity's financial statements will also be comparable to those prepared in previous years.

In South Africa we have to comply with International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs) which can be regarded as the "rules for financial accounting".

## 1.6 THE OBJECTIVE OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

The objective of financial statements is to provide information about the financial position, performance and changes in the financial position of an entity that is useful to a wide range of users in making economic decisions.

## 1.7 USERS OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Financial statements are prepared and presented at least once a year and are directed towards the common information needs of a wide range of users.

The following categories of users, and their need for accounting information, have been identified:

User	Information needs
Clients	to assess the ability of the entity to continue as a going concern.
Employees	to assess the ability of their employer to provide stable employment and remuneration.
Government	to regulate activities of the enterprise, compile statistics and determine resource allocation and tax policies.
Investors	to assess the risk and return on an investment in the enterprise.
Lenders	to assess the ability of the enterprise to pay interest on a loan and to repay loans.
Suppliers and other creditors	to assess the ability of the enterprise to pay amounts owing
Management	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● planning, that is determining future actions to be taken;</li> <li>or</li> <li>● exercising control, that is evaluating the current situation and taking corrective steps</li> </ul>

Although employees are considered to be part of the organisation, they do not have the same, unlimited access to the accounting records of the entity.

## 1.8 EXERCISES AND SOLUTIONS

### REQUIRED


Answer the following questions:

- (a) What is a transaction?
- (b) How will you define financial accounting?
- (c) What is the objective of financial accounting?
- (d) What is the nature of financial accounting?
- (e) List the steps in the financial accounting cycle.
- (f) What does bookkeeping entail?
- (g) What does IFRSs stand for?
- (h) List the categories of users of financial accounting information.
- (i) Name the reasons why management need financial accounting information.
- (j) What is the objective of financial statements?

### SOLUTION

- (a) A transaction is an action where money is paid and, in return, an item or service, that the buyer needs is obtained.
- (b) Financial accounting is the orderly and systematic identification and recording of the monetary values of financial transactions of an individual or business entity, and the reporting of the results of these transactions by way of the preparation and presentation of financial statements to enable the users to use the information as a basis for decision making.
- (c) To enable the users of financial information to ascertain readily what the financial results and financial position of the entity is.
- (d)
  - to identify events that are evidence of economic activity relevant to the particular entity,
  - to record the monetary value of economic events so as to provide a permanent history of the financial activities of the entity,
  - to communicate the recorded information to interested users.
- (e) Transactions ⇒ source documents ⇒ journals ⇒ general ledger and subsidiary ledgers ⇒ trial balances ⇒ final accounts and financial statements
- (f) Bookkeeping is the systematic recording of transactions.
- (g) International Financial Reporting Standards.
- (h)
  - Clients
  - Employees
  - Government
  - Investors
  - Lenders
  - Suppliers and other creditors
  - Management
- (i) Information to be used for decisions directed at
  - planning, that is determining future actions to be taken, or
  - exercising control, that is evaluating the current situation and take corrective steps.

- (j) The objective of financial statements is to provide information about the financial position, performance and changes in the financial position of an entity that is useful to a wide range of users in making economic decisions.

	<p><b>SELF-ASSESSMENT</b></p> <p>After you have worked through this learning unit, are you able to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● define financial accounting?</li> <li>● explain the objective of financial accounting?</li> <li>● explain the nature of financial accounting?</li> <li>● list the steps involved in the financial accounting cycle?</li> <li>● explain what the acronym IFRSs stands for?</li> <li>● list the users of financial statements?</li> <li>● explain what information different users of financial statements will be interested in?</li> <li>● explain the main objective of financial statements?</li> </ul>	<p>☺ ☺ ☺ ☺ ☺ ☺ ☺ ☺ ☺ ☺</p>	<p>☹ ☹ ☹ ☹ ☹ ☹ ☹ ☹ ☹ ☹</p>	<p>☹ ☹ ☹ ☹ ☹ ☹ ☹ ☹ ☹ ☹</p>
---	--	--	--	--

If you have marked all ☺ you may continue to the next learning unit .

If you have marked any ☹ you have to *revise* that specific section.

If you have marked any ☹ you have to **re-study** that specific section.

**FAC1501**

**LEARNING UNIT 2**

**THE ACCOUNTING  
EQUATION: FINANCIAL  
POSITION**



**Introductory Financial  
Accounting**

## OVERVIEW

Learning outcomes .....	10
Key concepts .....	10
Assessment criteria .....	11
2.1 Introduction .....	11
2.2 Types of business entities .....	11
2.3 South African forms of business ownership .....	12
2.4 Characteristics of a sole trader .....	12
2.5 The elements of financial statements .....	13
2.6 The double-entry principle .....	14
2.7 The accounting equation: Financial position .....	14
2.8 The statement of financial position .....	23
2.9 Exercises and solutions .....	30
Self-assessment .....	34

## LEARNING OUTCOMES

After studying this learning unit you should be able to:

- list the basic business forms found in South Africa
- explain the characteristics of a sole trader
- understand the accounting equation concerning assets, equity and liabilities
- explain the effects of financial accounting entries concerning assets, equity and liabilities on the accounting equation
- prepare entries in general ledger accounts for assets, equity and liabilities
- prepare a statement of financial position for a service entity.

## KEY CONCEPTS

- Service entity
- Retailing entity
- Manufacturing entity
- Forms of business
- Sole trader
- Double-entry principle
- T-account
- Debit
- Credit
- Accounting equation
- Assets
- Liabilities
- Equity

- Income
- Expenses
- Statement of financial position
- Balancing off of accounts
- Debtors
- Creditors



### ASSESSMENT CRITERIA

- The processing of accounting information by different types of business entities because of the difference in operating activities is explained.
- The form of business ownership according to the capital needs of an entity is explained.
- The characteristics of a sole trader are explained.
- The elements of the general purpose financial statements are explained.
- Accounting terminology is explained and examples of their use are given.
- The principle of debits and credits are explained.
- Business transactions concerning assets, liabilities and equity are explained with reference to appropriate examples.
- Accounting policy is demonstrated according to the right methods and procedures when recording in the accounting equation format and in the ledger accounts.
- Assets, liabilities and equity are defined and classified for recognition in the statement of financial position.

## 2.1 INTRODUCTION

In the previous learning unit you learned that financial accounting is an information system that communicates financial information to the users of financial accounting information. But who exactly needs to keep financial accounting records? The answer to this question is simple: everybody who earns an income!

The average salary earner needs accommodation, food, clothes, and has to pay (for example) the telephone account, school fees and groceries. They would possibly open a clothing account and pay the school fees in monthly instalments. Salary earners would also have a bank account into which their salaries are deposited every month. How would they be able to keep track of what has been paid, what they still owe and how much money they have left without some form of financial accounting system?

## 2.2 TYPES OF BUSINESS ENTITIES

The processing of financial accounting information (that is, bookkeeping) will be determined by the operating activities of an entity and should be adapted to provide the information that is applicable to the specific operating activities. The operating activities of an entity are those activities from which it tries to make a profit. The objective of every entity is to earn as large a profit as possible.

Let's consider the following example:

Mr Bongile Sithole, a qualified electrician, has his own business which he runs from his home. Mr B Sithole trades as BS Electrical and installs electrical cables and repairs electrical faults. In order for him to deliver his services he needs his tools. His clients must supply any cabling or wiring required for the job, which they buy from the hardware store. The hardware store buys these items from an engineering company that manufactures them.

- **Mr Bongile Sithole** therefore runs
  - a commercial entity
  - which sells
  - a service to his clients.
- **The hardware store** is
  - a commercial entity
  - which buys and sells
  - goods to their customers.

Commercial entities can be retail entities that will sell goods to the public, or wholesalers that only sell goods to retailer entities.

- **The engineering entity** is
  - a manufacturing entity
  - which manufactures and sells
  - goods to their customers.

Each of these types of entities will make use of financial accounting records that are suitable to their own needs. The minimum information that must be available from these financial accounting records is prescribed by International Financial Reporting Standards (IFRSs).

## 2.3 SOUTH AFRICAN FORMS OF BUSINESS OWNERSHIP

Mr Bongile Sithole's entity, the hardware store entity as well as the engineering entity may be conducted in one of a number of business forms. In order to start any business, money is needed. This money is referred to as *capital*. Some types of businesses require more capital than others. For example, the engineering entity would need machines, an electrician would need his toolbox and the hardware store will need hardware inventory. The amount of capital needed to start and continue business operations would largely influence the *form* of the business.

For financial accounting purposes we distinguish between the following forms of business ownership:

- sole traders
- partnerships
- close corporations
- companies

In South Africa two types of companies can be formed, namely a profit company and a non-profit company.

In this module you will concentrate on the financial accounting records required by different operating activities (that is sales and services) of a sole trader and we will not venture into any aspects of the other forms of business ownership.

## 2.4 CHARACTERISTICS OF A SOLE TRADER

- This entity belongs to one person only. In the case of BS Electrical the entity belongs to Mr Bongile Sithole.
- It is suitable for smaller types of entities that do not need big amounts of capital to start.



- All decisions regarding the entity are taken by the owner and all the profits and losses accrue to the owner. Mr Bongile Sithole will take all decisions regarding BS Electrical and all the profit and losses will accrue to him as owner.
- Mr Bongile Sithole is the sole owner and disposer of the assets of the business.
- The sole trader is not a legal entity distinct from its owner. Mr Bongile Sithole will conclude any contracts applicable to his entity in his own name and he will be liable in his personal capacity for the debts of the entity.
- As the sole trader is not a legal entity, the profits of the entity will be taxed in the hands of the owner. Mr Bongile Sithole will declare the profits in his personal income tax return and he will be taxed on the amount.
- If Mr. Bongile Sithole dies, the entity ceases to exist. If the business activities are taken over by someone else, a new sole trader entity comes into being.

To be able to do Mr Bongile Sithole's books it is necessary to look at the accounting equation.

## 2.5 THE ELEMENTS OF FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

Every entity implements a financial accounting system according to the minimum financial accounting standards and practices when it draws up financial statements that are used in making economic decisions. Financial statements will reflect the financial effects of transactions by grouping them into broad classes according to their economic characteristics, namely assets, equity, liabilities, income and expenses. Assets, equity, liabilities, income and expenses are called the elements of financial statements.

The elements directly related to the measurement of financial position at a given time in the statement of financial position are assets, liabilities and equity.

**Assets are all the resources controlled by the entity (whether they are owned by the entity or not), for example land and buildings, vehicles, furniture, equipment, trading inventory, debtors, bank and petty cash.**

Remember, not all assets controlled by the entity are owned by the entity. If, for example, the entity bought a vehicle on credit, it does not belong to the entity until the final instalment is paid.

**Liabilities are the debts of the entity (all the money owed to third parties), for example long-term loans, mortgage bonds, bank overdrafts and creditors.**

**Equity refers to the amount that the owner invested in the entity and is made up mainly of capital. It is an indication of the assets that actually belong to the owner and is referred to as the owner's net worth.**

Profit or loss is frequently used as a measure of performance. The elements directly related to the measurement of financial performance for a period in the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income are income and expenses.

**Income less expenses = profit for the year**

**Income is the income earned by the entity through its normal everyday business activities for the financial accounting period (normally a year), for example sales, rent income, interest income and credit losses recovered.**

**Expenses are the running expenses of the entity for the financial accounting period (normally a year) necessary to earn the income, for example purchases, rent expenses, telephone expenses, water and electricity, salaries and wages.**

To be able to record transactions correctly it is necessary to have a look at the process of recording transactions.

## 2.6 THE DOUBLE-ENTRY PRINCIPLE

Bookkeeping is the part of financial accounting that is concerned with the recording of transactions. The transactions are recorded in an account.

**An account consists of a left-hand side and a right-hand side and is presented in a “T” format. The left-hand side is referred to as the debit side and the right-hand side is referred to as the credit side. The name of the “T” account is written across the centre at the beginning of each account.**

This can be illustrated as follows:

<b>Dr (debit side)</b>	<b>..... Account</b>	<b>(credit side) Cr</b>
<b>Left-hand side (LHS)</b>		<b>Right-hand side (RHS)</b>

For each asset, liability, equity, expense and income there will be a “T” account in the books of the entity. All these “T” accounts together are called the general ledger.

The double-entry principle provides a logical method of recording transactions. In using the double-entry system the monetary (money value) of each transaction must be entered on the debit side of one ledger account as well as on the credit side of another ledger account. The entry in one ledger account refers to the corresponding entry in the other ledger account.

As the entries in the two ledger accounts have been entered on opposite sides, the use of the double entry system allows for cross references. Each transaction is entered in two separate accounts on opposite sides, and it is therefore possible to check and control the arithmetical and accounting accuracy of the work. If each transaction is recorded so that the debit and credit entries are equal, the same sum of all the debits to the account must equal the sum of all the credits. This can be explained by way of the accounting equation.

## 2.7 THE ACCOUNTING EQUATION: FINANCIAL POSITION

The logical method of recording transactions by way of the accounting equation is used to process transaction data. Transactions may:

- affect assets and/or equity and/or liabilities.
- generate income or give rise to expenditure

The accounting equation states that:

<b>ASSETS</b>	=	<b>EQUITY</b>	+	<b>LIABILITIES</b>
<b>A</b>	=	<b>E</b>	+	<b>L</b>

OR

<b>EQUITY</b>	=	<b>ASSETS</b>	-	<b>LIABILITIES</b>
<b>E</b>	=	<b>A</b>	-	<b>L</b>

**The equity equals all the assets in the entity less all the claims against those assets (liabilities).**

The accounting equation is a *mathematical* equation that should **always balance**. The financial position of an entity is indicated by this equation.

For the accounting equation to always balance it requires the involvement of two accounts for each transaction. The accounting equation is, therefore, based on the double-entry accounting system.

**Basic requirements for the accounting equation:**

- **A minimum of two accounts must be used for each transaction.**
- **The equation must remain in balance after each transaction. In other words the debit side (A) is equal to the credit side (E + L).**

Consider the following example of transactions that affect assets and/or equity and/or liabilities:

Before the entity starts to do business, the **accounting equation** will look like this:

<b>Debit side</b>	=	<b>Credit side</b>		
<b>A</b>	=	<b>E</b>	+	<b>L</b>
Possessions the entity owns	=	Amounts owed to the owner of the entity	+	Amounts owed to third parties
What the entity owns	=	What the entity owes		
0	=	0		

**Note that the recording of transactions is done from the point of view of the business entity independent from its owner, Mr Bingole Sithole.**

Every entity for which separate financial records are kept is a financial accounting entity. It is extremely important to see the entity as separate from its owner: transactions entered into by the entity have to be dealt with from the point of view of the entity whose books are being done.

### Transaction 1:

Mr Bingole Sithole, a qualified electrician, started a small service business, BS Electrical on 1 January 20.6. He decided to deposit R40 000 in the entity's bank account to start the business.

### Explanation:

The entity received R40 000 in cash and the money was deposited in a bank account opened in the name of the entity. It cannot be Mr B Sithole's bank account. **The entity must have its own bank account.** The money (bank account) is an asset because it is a resource controlled by the entity (it can be used by the entity to do business). The assets increased because it was "0" before this transaction. The owner deposited the money into the entity's bank account. Any amount received from the owner is called capital and this increases equity. The entity now owes Mr B Sithole R40 000. Both the left-hand side of the equation (A) and the right-hand side of the equation (E + L), now equals R40 000.

**The effect of this transaction on the accounting equation can be illustrated as follows:**

<b>A</b>	=	<b>E</b>	+	<b>L</b>
Bank		Capital		
R		R		R
+ 40 000	=	+ 40 000	+	-

#### NOTE:

The plus sign shows an increase of an element of the accounting equation and a minus shows a decrease in an element of the accounting equation.

### Transaction 2:

On 1 January 20.6 BS Electrical bought a toolbox and tools to be used by Mr B Sithole on credit from Big Builders for R7 000.

### Explanation:

Tools and equipment are a resource controlled by the entity (it can be used by the entity to do business). It is an asset, so the assets increased. The entity owed money to Big Builders, a creditor, so the liabilities would increase.

**A creditor is a person or entity to which the entity, BS Electrical, owes money. This debt is usually paid back within one year.**

The effect of this transaction on the accounting equation can be illustrated as follows:

A		=	E	+	L
Bank	Tools and equipment		Capital		Big Builders (creditor)
R	R		R		R
+ 40 000			+ 40 000		+ 7 000
	+ 7 000				
40 000	7 000	=	40 000	+	7 000

### Transaction 3:

On 1 January 20.6 BS Electrical bought a ladder from Ladders (Pty) Ltd and paid for it by cheque, R1 200.

### Explanation:

Money (bank account) is a resource controlled by the entity (it can be used by the entity to do business). Assets decreased because money was paid by the entity. Tools and equipment, another resource controlled by the entity (it can be used by the entity to do business), increased, thus assets increased. Assets increased and decreased with R1 200, leaving us with a nil effect. The left-hand side of the equation (A) = right-hand side of the equation (E + L) [R47 000 = R40 000 + R7 000].

The effect of this transaction on the accounting equation can be illustrated as follows:

A		=	E	+	L
Bank	Tools and equipment		Capital		Big Builders (creditor)
R	R		R		R
+ 40 000			+ 40 000		+ 7 000
	+ 7 000				
- 1 200	+ 1 200				
38 800	8 200	=	40 000	+	7 000

### Transaction 4:

On 1 January 20.6 BS Electrical borrowed R50 000 from Uni Bank at an interest rate of 10% per annum repayable over 60 months. The R50 000 was transferred to the bank account of the entity.

### Explanation:

The money received from Uni Bank increased the bank account. Bank is an asset and therefore the assets increased with the money received from Uni Bank. The entity however owed Uni Bank

R50 000. This is an obligation (liability) to pay and the liabilities increased. The left-hand side of the equation (A) = the right-hand side of the equation (E + L) [R97 000 = R40 000 + R57 000].

**BS Electrical owes Uni Bank, who provided the long-term loan, the money. Uni Bank is a creditor (financing creditor) of BS Electrical. This long-term debt is usually not paid back within one year (in this case it will only be paid back over a period of 5 years (60 months)).**

The effect of this transaction on the accounting equation can be illustrated as follows:

<b>A</b>		=	<b>E</b>	+	<b>L</b>	
<b>Bank</b>	<b>Tools and equipment</b>		<b>Capital</b>		<b>Big Builders (creditor)</b>	<b>Uni Bank (long-term loan)</b>
<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>		<b>R</b>		<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>
+ 40 000	+ 7 000		+ 40 000		+ 7 000	+ 50 000
- 1 200	+ 1 200					
+ 50 000						
88 800	8 200	=	40 000	+	7 000	50 000

The following rules can be applied:

<b>Dr (debit side)</b>	<b>Asset accounts</b>	<b>(credit side) Cr</b>
+ (increase)		- (decrease)
<b>Dr (debit side)</b>	<b>Liability accounts</b>	<b>(credit side) Cr</b>
- (decrease)		+ (increase)
<b>Dr (debit side)</b>	<b>Equity account</b>	<b>(credit side) Cr</b>
- (decrease)		+ (increase)

For you as a learner of financial accounting the reality is that the double-entry rules are not one of those concepts that you can try to understand – you have to learn them!

**When analysing a transaction, the following four questions need to be asked:**

- Which two accounts are involved in the transaction?
- Do the accounts form part of assets, equity or liabilities?
- Did the assets, equity or liabilities increase or decrease?
- Which one of the accounts must be debited and which one must be credited?

Let's consider the transactions of BS Electrical again:

**Transaction 1:**

Mr Bingole Sithole, a qualified electrician, starts a small service business, BS Electrical, on 1 January 20.6. He decided to deposit R40 000 in the entity's bank account to start the business.

The effect of this transaction on the accounting equation can be illustrated as follows:

<b>A</b>	=	<b>E</b>	+	<b>L</b>
<b>Bank</b>		<b>Capital</b>		<b>Liabilities</b>
<b>R</b>		<b>R</b>		<b>R</b>
+ 40 000	=	+ 40 000	+	-

**Explanation** (detailed explanation of the accounting equation transaction 1):

- 1. Bank account (an asset) increased; and must therefore be debited.**

<b>Dr (debit side)</b>	<b>Assets</b>	<b>(credit side) Cr</b>
+ (increase)		- (decrease)

- 2. Capital account (equity) increased; and must therefore be credited.**

<b>Dr (debit side)</b>	<b>Equity</b>	<b>(credit side) Cr</b>
- (decrease)		+ (increase)

The above transaction will be recorded in the ledger accounts as follows:

**(a) The debit-side of the bank account:**

Dr			Bank				1		Cr
Date	Details	Fol	R	Date	Details	Fol	R		
20.6									
Jan 1	Capital (name of account to be credited)		40 000						

A few things to remember:

- The date of the transaction (date). The transaction took place on 1 January 20.6.
- A description of the other account affected by the transaction to make cross-referencing easier (details). The account to be debited is bank account and the account to be credited is capital account.
- Cross-referencing to the folio number of the other account affected (fol). (It will be discussed in a later learning unit .)

- Recording the amount of the transaction. The amount of the transaction is R40 000. (Bank account is debited with R40 000, and capital account is credited with R40 000.)

**(b) The credit-side of the capital account:**

Dr		Capital				2		Cr
Date	Details	Fol	R	Date	Details	Fol	R	
				20.6 Jan 1	Bank (name of account to be debited)		40 000	

Debit side = Credit side = R40 000

**Transaction 2:**

On 1 January 20.6 BS Electrical bought a toolbox and tools to be used by Mr Bingole Sithole on credit from Big Builders for R7 000.

The effect of this transaction on the accounting equation can be illustrated as follows:

<b>A</b>		=	<b>E</b>	+	<b>L</b>
<b>Bank</b>	<b>Tools and equipment</b>		<b>Capital</b>		<b>Big Builders (creditor)</b>
<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>		<b>R</b>		<b>R</b>
+ 40 000	+ 7 000		+ 40 000		+ 7 000
40 000	7 000	=	40 000	+	7 000

**Explanation** (detailed explanation of the accounting equation transaction 2):

- Tools and equipment account (an asset) increased and must therefore be debited.

<b>Dr (debit side)</b>	<b>Assets</b>	<b>(credit side) Cr</b>
+ (increase)		– (decrease)

- Big Builders' account (a liability) increased and must therefore be credited.

<b>Dr (debit side)</b>	<b>Liabilities</b>	<b>(credit side) Cr</b>
– (decrease)		+ (increase)



The above transaction will be recorded in the ledger accounts as follows:

(a) The debit-side of the tools and equipment account:

Dr		Tools and equipment				3		Cr	
Date		Details	Fol	R	Date		Details	Fol	R
20.6									
Jan	1	Big Builders (name of account to be credited)		7 000					

(b) The credit-side of Big Builders' account:

Dr		Big Builders				4		Cr	
Date		Details	Fol	R	Date		Details	Fol	R
					20.6				
					Jan	1	Tools and equipment (name of account to be debited)		7 000

Debit side = Credit side = R7 000

### Transaction 3:

On 1 January 20.6 BS Electrical bought a ladder from Ladders (Pty) Ltd and paid for it by cheque, R1 200.

The effect of this transaction on the accounting equation can be illustrated as follows:

A		=	E	+	L
Bank	Tools and equipment		Capital		Big Builders (creditor)
R	R		R		R
+ 40 000			+ 40 000		
	+ 7 000				+ 7 000
- 1 200	+ 1 200				
38 800	8 200	=	40 000	+	7 000

**Explanation** (detailed explanation of the accounting equation transaction 3):

1. Tools and equipment account (an asset) increased and must therefore be debited.

Dr (debit side)	Assets	(credit side) Cr
+ (increase)		- (decrease)

2. Bank account (an asset) decreased and must therefore be credited.

Dr (debit side)	Assets	(credit side) Cr
+ (increase)		– (decrease)

The above transaction will be recorded in the ledger accounts as follows:

(a) The debit-side of the tools and equipment account:

You will have only one ledger account for each asset, liability and equity item. Use the same tools and equipment account as created in transaction 2.

Dr		Tools and equipment				3		Cr
Date		Details	Fol	R	Date	Details	Fol	R
20.6								
Jan	1	Big Builders Bank (name of account to be credited)		7 000 1 200				

(b) The credit-side of the bank account:

Use the same bank account created in transaction 1.

Dr		Bank				1		Cr
Date		Details	Fol	R	Date	Details	Fol	R
20.6					20.6			
Jan	1	Capital		40 000	Jan	1 Tools and equipment (name of account to be debited)		1 200

Transaction 4:

On 1 January 20.6 BS Electrical borrowed R50 000 from Uni Bank at an interest rate of 10% per annum repayable over 60 months. The R50 000 was transferred to the bank account of the entity.

The effect of this transaction on the accounting equation can be illustrated as follows:

<b>A</b>		=	<b>E</b>	+	<b>L</b>	
<b>Bank</b>	<b>Tools and equipment</b>		<b>Capital</b>		<b>Big Builders (creditor)</b>	<b>Uni Bank (long-term loan)</b>
<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>		<b>R</b>		<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>
+ 40 000	+ 7 000		+ 40 000		+ 7 000	+ 50 000
– 1 200	+ 1 200					
+ 50 000		=	40 000	+	7 000	50 000
88 800	8 200					

**Explanation** (detailed explanation of the accounting equation transaction 4):

- Bank account (an asset) increased** and must therefore be **debited**.

Dr (debit side)	Assets	(credit side) Cr
+ (increase)		– (decrease)

- Long-term loan: Uni Bank account (a liability) increased** and must therefore be **credited**.

Dr (debit side)	Liabilities	(credit side) Cr
– (decrease)		+ (increase)

The above transaction will be recorded in the ledger accounts as follows:

- The debit-side of the bank account:**

Use the same bank account created in transaction 1 and used in transaction 3 and 4.

Dr		Bank				1		Cr
Date	Details	Fol	R	Date	Details	Fol	R	
20.6				20.6				
Jan 1	Capital account		40 000	Jan 1	Tools and equipment		1 200	
	Long-term loan: Uni Bank ( <b>name of account to be credited</b> )		50 000					

- The credit-side of the long-term loan: Uni Bank account:**

Dr		Long-term Loan: Uni Bank				5		Cr
Date	Details	Fol	R	Date	Details	Fol	R	
				20.6				
				Jan 1	Bank ( <b>name of account to be debited</b> )		50 000	

The accounting equation is, therefore, based on the double-entry accounting system, and is used for preparing the *statement of financial position at a specific point in time*.

## 2.8 THE STATEMENT OF FINANCIAL POSITION

The statement of financial position reflects the financial position of an entity in terms of the basic accounting equation **on a specific date**. It is a statement of balances at a specific date.

The statement of financial position of BS Electrical prepared as at 1 January 20.6 is as follows:

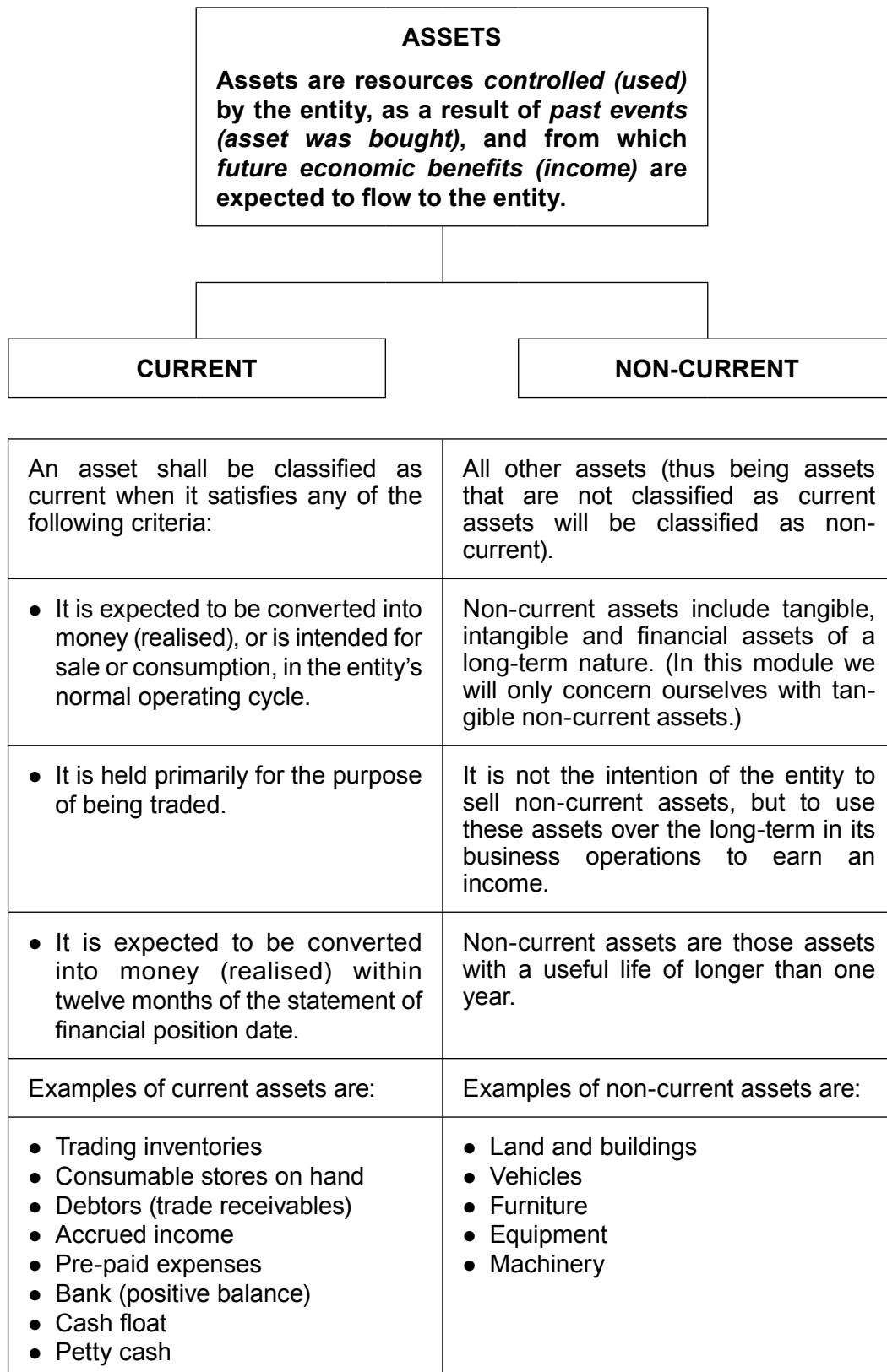
**BS ELECTRICAL**  
**STATEMENT OF FINANCIAL POSITION AS AT 1 JANUARY 20.6**

<b>ASSETS</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>EQUITY AND LIABILITIES</b>	<b>R</b>
Bank	88 800	Capital	40 000
Tools and equipment	8 200	Creditor	7 000
		Long-term loan	50 000
	<u>97 000</u>		<u>97 000</u>

At this stage it is necessary to have a look at the ways assets can be used:

- Some assets are used time and time again in the business to earn an income. The tools and equipment used by Mr Bingole Sithole are examples of such assets. These assets are classified as **non-current assets**.
- Some assets have a short life span, and continually change in value in the normal course of business, for example, money in the bank. These assets are classified as **current assets**.

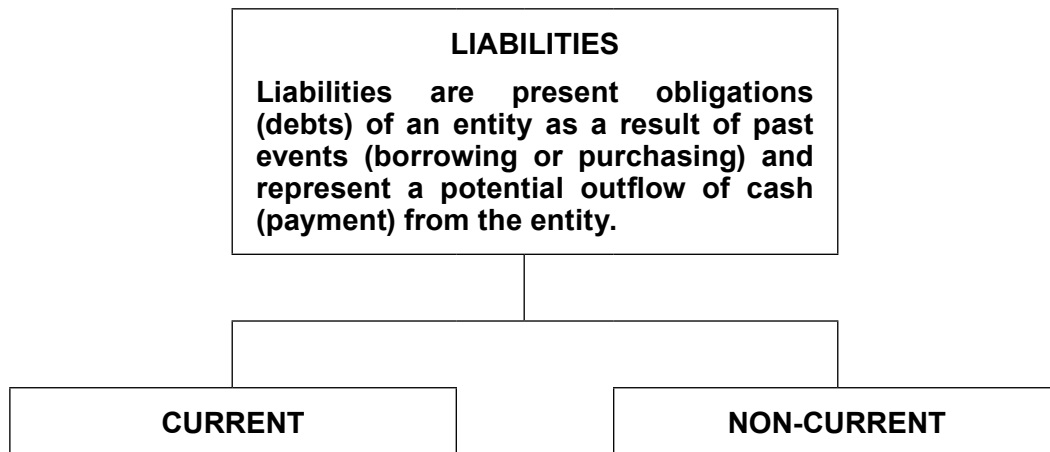
Let's have a look at the difference between non-current assets and current assets.



Liabilities can also be non-current or current, depending on when the liability must be settled:

- Some liabilities are payable more than one year after financial year end, that is, they are not payable within the next financial year. These liabilities are classified as **non-current liabilities**.
- Liabilities payable within the next financial year are classified as **current liabilities**.

Let's have a look at the difference between current and non-current liabilities:



A liability shall be classified as current when it satisfies any of the following criteria:	All other liabilities (thus being liabilities that are not classified as current liabilities) will be classified as non-current).
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It is expected to be settled in the entity's normal operating cycle (usually one year).</li> </ul>	Are long-term debts, and have to be settled after one year of the statement of financial position date.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It is held primarily for the purpose of being traded.</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It is due to be settled within twelve months after the statement of financial position date.</li> </ul>	
Examples of current liabilities are:	Examples of non-current liabilities are:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Creditors (trade payables)</li> <li>• Bank overdrafts</li> <li>• Current portion of long-term borrowings</li> <li>• Short-term borrowings</li> <li>• Accrued expenses</li> <li>• Income received in advance</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Long-term loans</li> <li>• Mortgage</li> <li>• Debentures</li> </ul>

According to these principles the correct statement of financial position for BS Electrical is as follows:

### BS ELECTRICAL

#### STATEMENT OF FINANCIAL POSITION AS AT 1 JANUARY 20.6

ASSETS	R	EQUITY AND LIABILITIES	R
<b>Non-current assets</b> Tools and equipment	8 200	<b>Equity</b> Capital	40 000
<b>Current assets</b> Bank	88 800	<b>Non-current liabilities</b> Long-term loan	50 000
		<b>Current liabilities</b> Creditor	7 000
<b>Total assets</b>	97 000	<b>Total equity and liabilities</b>	97 000

The rules that need to be followed when the double-entry accounting is applied can be derived from the statement of financial position. (The correct vertical format will be discussed later.)

**To summarise the ledger accounts in the general ledger:**

Dr			Bank				1		Cr	
Date	Details		Fol	R	Date	Details		Fol	R	
20.6					20.6					
Jan 1	Capital			40 000	Jan 1	Tools and equipment			1 200	
	Long-term loan:									
	Uni Bank			50 000						

The bank account has transactions on the debit side and the credit side. To determine what the net result is (ie how much money is left in the bank account) the account must be balanced.

**An account with entries on both the debit and the credit sides, have to be balanced (to balance is to find the final amount on the account).**

**To balance the bank account:**

- **Add the debit side of the bank account and write down the total in pencil: R40 000 + R50 000 = R90 000.**
- **Add the credit side of the bank account and write down the total in pencil: R1 200.**
- **The debit total of the bank account is more than the credit total. To make the two sides equal the credit side needs an amount of R90 000 – R1 200 = R88 800. This is the balancing amount and is recorded on the side of the T-account that is the smallest, in this case, the credit side. It is shown as a balance c/d.**
- **The account is then totalled (the biggest total in pencil, that is the debit side total of R90 000) and the balance is b/d on the debit side.**
- **The bank has a debit balance because the entity has an amount of R88 800 left in the bank account – which represents an asset of the entity.**

Dr				Bank				1		Cr
Date		Details	Fol	R	Date		Details	Fol	R	
20.6					20.6					
Jan	1	Capital		40 000	Jan	1	Tools and equipment		1 200	
		Long-term loan:				31	Balance	c/d	88 800	
		Uni Bank		50 000						
				90 000					90 000	
Feb	1	Balance	b/d	88 800						

Dr				Capital				2		Cr
Date		Details	Fol	R	Date		Details	Fol	R	
					20.6					
					Jan	1	Bank		40 000	

Dr				Tools and equipment				3		Cr
Date		Details	Fol	R	Date		Details	Fol	R	
20.6										
Jan	1	Big Builders		7 000						
		Bank		1 200						
				8 200						

**To balance an account with only debit transactions, you only have to add the debit side, that is, R7 000 + R1 200 = R8 200. If there is only one amount in an account it is left as is.**

Dr				Big Builders				4		Cr
Date		Details	Fol	R	Date		Details	Fol	R	
					20.6					
					Jan	1	Tools and equipment		7 000	

Dr				Long-term loan: Uni Bank				5		Cr
Date		Details	Fol	R	Date		Details	Fol	R	
					20.6					
					Jan	1	Bank		50 000	



According to the balances on the ledger accounts in the general ledger of the assets, liabilities and equity, it can be recognised in the statement of financial position as follows:

## BS ELECTRICAL

### STATEMENT OF FINANCIAL POSITION AS AT 1 JANUARY 20.6

<b>ASSETS</b>	<b>Note</b>	<b>R</b>
<b>Non-current assets</b>		8 200
Tools and equipment		8 200
<b>Current assets</b>		88 800
Bank		88 800
<b>Total assets</b>		97 000
<b>EQUITY AND LIABILITIES</b>		
<b>Equity</b>		40 000
Capital		40 000
<b>Non-current liabilities</b>		50 000
Long-term loan: Uni Bank		50 000
<b>Current liabilities</b>		7 000
Creditor (Big Builders)		7 000
<b>Total equity and liabilities</b>		97 000

The statement of financial position is now shown in its vertical format and this is the correct format that must be used in future.

## 2.9 EXERCISES AND SOLUTIONS

### EXERCISE 1

- (a) Define the concept of an accounting entity.
- (b) Describe the financial position of an entity in terms of the accounting equation.
- (c) Explain the nature of
  - (i) assets
  - (ii) equity
  - (iii) liabilities
- (d) Name two sources of financing.
- (e) What is meant by the double-entry principle?

### SOLUTION: EXERCISE 1

- (a) An accounting entity is any entity for which separate financial records are kept.
- (b)  $ASSETS = EQUITY + LIABILITIES$
- (c)
  - (i) Assets are the possessions of the entity.
  - (ii) Equity is the interest which the owner has in the business and which the entity therefore owes to him.
  - (iii) Liabilities are creditors' interest or interests of parties other than the owner(s). Liabilities are therefore the debts of the entity.
- (d) The owner and creditors.
- (e) In principle it means that every transaction has a dual effect on the elements of the accounting equation and that after every transaction the accounting equation **must remain in balance**.

### EXERCISE 2

The assets of Maxi Services amount to R30 000 and its liabilities (creditors) to R5 000.

### REQUIRED

Calculate the equity.

### SOLUTION: EXERCISE 2

Use the accounting equation. The amounts which are given are substituted for the appropriate symbol and the value of the unknown symbol is calculated.

$$\begin{array}{rclcl}
 A & = & E & + & L \\
 E & = & A & - & L \\
 E & = & R30\ 000 & - & R5\ 000 \\
 E & = & R25\ 000 & & 
 \end{array}$$

**EXERCISE 3**

T Tom is the owner of Zebra Services which offers a carpet cleaning service. On 30 November 20.6 Zebra Services owns equipment amounting to R100 000. Clients owe R40 000 for services rendered and Zebra Services owes R20 000 to a supplier for parts purchased. Zebra Services also has R10 000 in cash in the bank.

**REQUIRED**

Show the accounting equation and determine the equity.

**SOLUTION: EXCERCISE 3****Step 1:****Identify the assets:**

Equipment = R100 000  
 Debtors = R40 000  
 Cash = R10 000

**Step 2:****Identify the liabilities:**

Creditors control = R20 000

Substitute these amounts into the equation:

A	=	E	+	L
E	=	A	-	L
E	=	R(100 000 + 40 000 + 10 000)	-	R20 000
E	=	R150 000	-	R20 000
E	=	R130 000		

Zebra Service's financial position can also be presented in the form of a statement of financial position as follows:

**ZEBRA SERVICES**

**STATEMENT OF FINANCIAL POSITION AS AT 30 NOVEMBER 20.6**

<b>ASSETS</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>EQUITY AND LIABILITIES</b>	<b>R</b>
Equipment	100 000	Equity	130 000
Debtors	40 000	Creditors	20 000
Cash in bank	10 000		
	150 000		150 000

**EXERCISE 4**

Calculate the missing figures using the accounting equation:

**R**

- (a) Bank = 4 000  
 Vehicles = 5 000  
 Equipment = 7 000  
 Equity = ?
- (b) Equity = 150 000  
 Loan = 50 000  
 Bank = ?  
 Machinery = 190 000
- (c) Bank = 5 000  
 Debtors = 15 000  
 Buildings = 100 000  
 Furniture = 40 000  
 Creditors = 50 000  
 Equity = ?
- (d) Equity = 60 000  
 Loan = 10 000  
 Creditors = 6 000  
 Assets = ?


<b>SOLUTION: EXCERCISE 4</b>
------------------------------

(a) A = E + L  
 E = A - L  
 E = R(4 000 + 5 000 + 7 000) - R0  
 E = R16 000

(b) A = E + L  
 R190 000 + Bank = R150 000 + R 50 000  
 Bank = R200 000 - R190 000  
 Bank = R 10 000

(c) A = E + L  
 E = A - L  
 E = R(5 000 + 15 000 + 100 000 + 40 000) - R50 000  
 E = R160 000 - R50 000  
 E = R110 000

(d) A = E + L  
 A = R60 000 + R(10 000 + 6 000)  
 A = R76 000

	<h2 style="text-align: center;">SELF-ASSESSMENT</h2> <p>After you have worked through this learning unit, are you able to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• classify the different elements of financial statements correctly?</li> <li>• define an asset?</li> <li>• define a liability?</li> <li>• define income?</li> <li>• define expenses?</li> <li>• explain the difference between (and give examples of) non-current assets and current assets?</li> <li>• explain the difference between (and give examples of) non-current liabilities and current liabilities?</li> <li>• explain the difference between (and give examples of) income and expenses?</li> <li>• list the rules for debiting and crediting different type of accounts concerning assets, equity and liabilities?</li> <li>• correctly classify any given account concerning assets, equity and liabilities?</li> <li>• correctly enter any given transaction concerning assets, equity and liabilities into the accounting equation?</li> <li>• correctly apply the accounting equation to any given transaction concerning assets, equity and liabilities?</li> <li>• correctly enter any given transaction concerning assets, equity and liabilities in the ledger accounts?</li> <li>• prepare a statement of financial position?</li> </ul>			
	☺	☹	☹	
	☺	☹	☹	
	☺	☹	☹	
	☺	☹	☹	
	☺	☹	☹	
	☺	☹	☹	
	☺	☹	☹	
	☺	☹	☹	
	☺	☹	☹	
	☺	☹	☹	
	☺	☹	☹	
	☺	☹	☹	
	☺	☹	☹	
	☺	☹	☹	

If you have marked all ☺ you may continue to the next learning unit .

If you have marked any ☹ you have to *revise* that specific section.

If you have marked any ☹ you have to **re-study** that specific section.

**FAC1501**

**LEARNING UNIT 3**

**THE ACCOUNTING  
EQUATION: FINANCIAL  
PERFORMANCE**



**Introductory Financial  
Accounting**

## OVERVIEW

Learning outcomes .....	36
Key concepts .....	36
Assessment criteria .....	37
3.1 Introduction .....	37
3.2 The accounting equation: Financial performance .....	37
3.3 The trial balance .....	46
3.4 The profit or loss account.....	47
3.5 The statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income .....	50
3.6 Summary.....	51
3.7 Exercises and solutions .....	53
Self-assessment.....	60

## LEARNING OUTCOMES

After studying this learning unit you should be able to:

- understand the accounting equation concerning income and expenses
- explain the effects of financial accounting entries concerning income and expenses on the accounting equation
- prepare entries in general ledger accounts of income and expenses
- prepare a trial balance for a service entity
- prepare a profit or loss account for a service entity
- prepare a statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income for a service entity

## KEY CONCEPTS

- Income
- Expenses
- Debtors
- Trial balance
- Profit or loss account
- Statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income





## ASSESSMENT CRITERIA

- Business transactions concerning income and expenses are explained with appropriate examples.
- Accounting policy is demonstrated according to the right methods and procedures when recording in the accounting equation format and in the ledger accounts.
- Expenses and income and gains and losses are defined and classified for recognition in the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income.

### 3.1 INTRODUCTION

The objective of every entity is to earn as large a profit as possible. It is therefore necessary to determine the financial performance of the entity by calculating the financial result over a specific period.

### 3.2 THE ACCOUNTING EQUATION: FINANCIAL PERFORMANCE

The financial result of an entity is measured in terms of the profit or loss which the entity has made over a specific period. This period is known as the financial period and is usually one year.

**An entity makes a profit when the income it has earned from its business activities is more than the expenditure it has incurred in generating or producing that income.**

**An entity makes a loss when the expenditure it has incurred in generating or producing income is more than the income it has earned.**

**PROFIT/LOSS FOR THE YEAR = INCOME – EXPENSES**

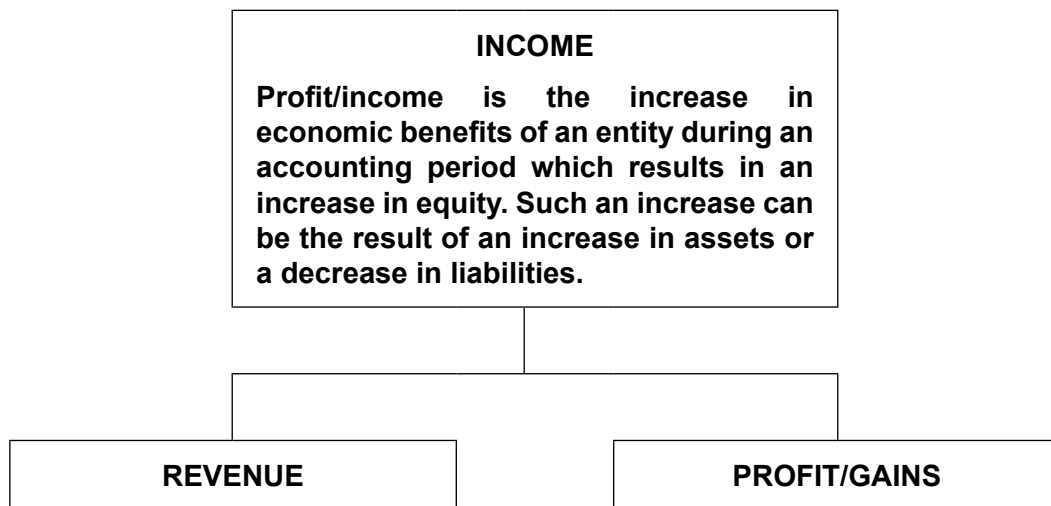
An entity must earn an income to be able to pay its expenses. Profit for the year is the owner's reward for the capital invested and the entrepreneurial spirit shown.

**Profit (gains) or income is credited because it increase the equity (capital) amount owed to the owner of the entity. If equity increases the account must be credited.**

<b>Dr (debit side)</b>	<b>Capital</b>	<b>(credit side) Cr</b>
– (decrease)		+ (increase)

The following rule can be applied to profit/income:

<b>Dr (debit side)</b>	<b>Profit/income</b>	<b>(credit side) Cr</b>
– (decrease)		<b>Always credited</b> + (increase)



Revenue earned from the entity's normal activities (daily operating activities), for example:	Gains are increases in economic benefits, which do not arise from the normal activities of the entity, for example:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● fees earned</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● profit on sale of non-current asset</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● sales</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● interest income</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● rental income</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● commission income</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● credit losses recovered</li> </ul>	

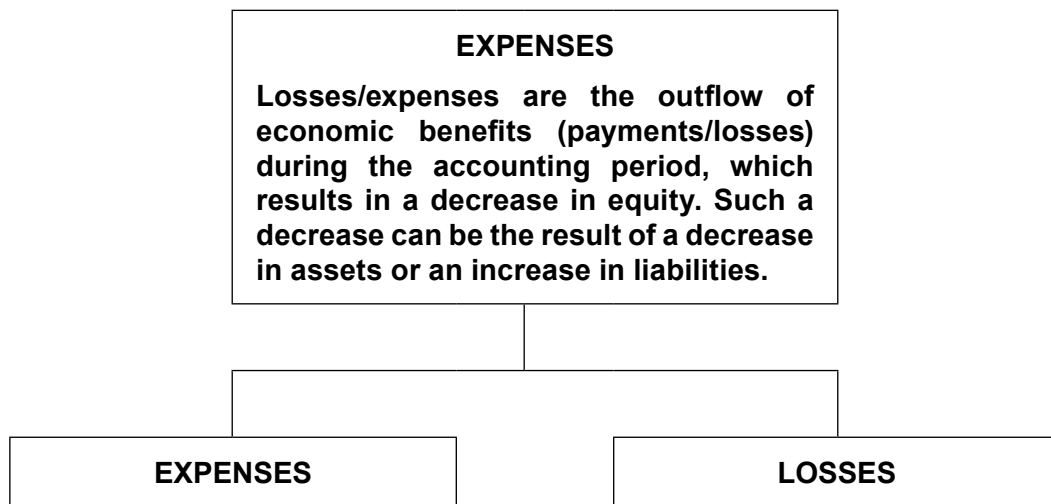
Expenses are incurred to earn income.

**Losses or expenses are debited because it decreases the equity (capital) amount owed to the owner of the entity. If equity decreases the losses or expense accounts must be debited.**

<b>Dr (debit side)</b>	<b>Capital</b>	<b>(credit side) Cr</b>
– (decrease)		+ (increase)

The following rule can be applied to losses/expenses:

<b>Dr (debit side)</b>	<b>Losses/expenses</b>	<b>(credit side) Cr</b>
<b>Always debited</b> + (increase)		– (decrease)



Expenses are incurred in the normal course of the entity's activities. They arise from the generation of income, for example:	Losses are decreases in economic benefits, which do not arise from the normal activities of the entity, for example:
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Cost of sales</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Loss on sale of non-current asset</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Rental expenses</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Interest expenses</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Wages and salaries</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Advertising</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Credit losses</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Insurance</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Repairs and maintenance</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Telephone expenses</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Water and electricity</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Postage</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Rates and taxes</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Stationery</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Consumables</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Packing materials</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Bank charges</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Depreciation</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Administrative expenses</li> </ul>	

Let's consider a few more transactions of Mr Bingole Sithole for the 20.6 financial year that generate income or give rise to expenditure. The financial year ends annually on 31 December.

**Transaction 5:**

Mr Bingole Sithole rendered a service on 15 January, for cash, to a client for the amount of R60 000.

**Explanation:**

Received money for services rendered, therefore the **bank account (an asset) increases** and must be **debited**.

Dr (debit side)	Assets	(credit side) Cr
+ (increase)		– (decrease)

Services rendered are **an income that increases the profit for the year**. Therefore, **equity increased** and **services rendered account** must be **credited**. You will now see that the double entry principle has been adhered to.

Dr (debit side)	Profit/income	(credit side) Cr
– (decrease)		+ (increase)

The effect of the transaction on the accounting equation can be illustrated as follows:

<b>A</b>		=	<b>E</b>		+	<b>L</b>	
<b>Bank</b>	<b>Tools and equipment</b>		<b>Capital</b>	<b>Income/ expenditure</b>		<b>Big Builders (creditor)</b>	<b>Uni Bank (long-term loan)</b>
<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>		<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>		<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>
88 800	8 200		40 000	+ 60 000		7 000	50 000
+ 60 000							
148 800	8 200	=	40 000	60 000	+	7 000	50 000

The above transaction will be recorded in the ledger accounts as follows:

1. The debit-side of the bank account:

Dr		Bank				1		Cr	
Date		Details	Fol	R	Date		Details	Fol	R
20.6					20.6				
Jan	1	Capital		40 000	Jan	1	Tools and equipment		1 200
		Long-term loan: Uni							
		Bank		50 000					
	15	Services rendered		60 000					
		(account to be credited)							

2. The credit-entry in the services rendered account:

Dr		Services rendered				2		Cr	
Date		Details	Fol	R	Date		Details	Fol	R
					20.6				
					Jan	15	Bank (account to be debited)		60 000

**Transaction 6:**

Mr Bingole Sithole rendered a service on 16 January, on credit, to M Beauty for the amount of R20 000.

**Explanation:**

Clients owe BS Electrical money. These clients are called debtors (resource controlled by the entity), as a result of past events (rendering of services), and from which future economic benefits are expected (money to be received). Therefore, it is an asset.

**Assets increased** and **M. Beauty** (a debtor) must be **debited**.

**A person who owes money to the entity is a debtor (asset).**

Dr (debit side)	Assets	(credit side) Cr
+ (increase)		- (decrease)

Services rendered is an income that increases the profit for the year. Therefore, equity increased and services rendered account must be credited.

Dr (debit side)	Profit/income	(credit side) Cr
- (decrease)		+ (increase)

The effect of the transaction on the accounting equation can be illustrated as follows:

A			=	E		+	L	
Bank	Tools and equipment	M. Beauty (debtor)		Capital	Income/ expenditure		Big Builders (creditor)	Uni Bank (long-term loan)
R	R	R		R	R		R	R
88 800	8 200		=	40 000			7 000	50 000
+ 60 000		+ 20 000			+ 60 000			
					+ 20 000			
148 800	8 200	20 000	=	40 000	80 000	+	7 000	50 000

The above transaction will be recorded in the ledger accounts as follows:

1. The debit-side of M Beauty's account:

Dr		M. Beauty				6		Cr
Date	Details	Fol	R	Date	Details	Fol	R	
20.6 Jan 16	Services rendered (account to be credited)		20 000					

2. The credit-entry in the services rendered account:

Dr		Services rendered				7		Cr
Date	Details	Fol	R	Date	Details	Fol	R	
				20.6 Jan 15	Bank		60 000	
				16	M. Beauty (account to be debited)		20 000	

**Transaction 7:**

On 28 January the business's telephone account for January was paid by cheque, R1 200.

**Explanation:**

Telephone expenses is **an expense that decreases the profit for the year**. Therefore, **equity decreased** and the **telephone expense account** must be **debited**.

Dr (debit side)	Losses/expenses	(credit side) Cr
+ (increase)		– (decrease)

Paid money for the telephone account, therefore the **bank account (an asset) decreases** and must be **credited**. To complete the double entry the appropriate expense account must be debited.

Dr (debit side)	Assets	(credit side) Cr
+ (increase)		– (decrease)

The effect of the transaction on the accounting equation can be illustrated as follows:

A			=	E		+	L	
Bank	Tools and equipment	M Beauty (debtor)		Capital	Income/ expenditure		Big Builders (creditor)	Uni Bank (long-term loan)
R	R	R		R	R		R	R
88 800	8 200		=	40 000		+	7 000	50 000
+ 60 000					+ 60 000			
		+ 20 000			+ 20 000			
– 1 200					– 1 200			
147 600	8 200	20 000	=	40 000	78 800	+	7 000	50 000

The above transaction will be recorded in the ledger accounts as follows:

1. The entry on the debit-side of the telephone expenses account:

Dr		Telephone expenses				8		Cr
Date	Details	Fol	R	Date	Details	Fol	R	
20.6 Jan 28	Bank (account to be credited)		1 200					

2. The credit-entry in the bank account:

Dr		Bank				1		Cr
Date	Details	Fol	R	Date	Details	Fol	R	
20.6 Jan 1	Capital		40 000	20.6 Jan 1	Tools and equipment		1 200	
	Long-term loan: Uni Bank		50 000	20.6 Jan 28	Telephone expenses (account to be debited)		1 200	
	Services rendered		60 000					

**Transaction 8:**

On 31 January the receptionist’s salary for January was paid by cheque, R6 000.

**Explanation:**

**Salaries account is an expense that decreases the profit for the year. Therefore, equity decreased and salaries account must be debited.**

Dr (debit side)	Losses/expenses	(credit side) Cr
+ (increase)		– (decrease)

**Paid the salary of the receptionist, therefore the bank account (an asset) decreases and must be credited. To complete the double entry the appropriate expense account must be debited.**

Dr (debit side)	Assets	(credit side) Cr
+ (increase)		– (decrease)

**The effect of the transaction on the accounting equation can be illustrated as follows:**

A			=	E		+	L	
Bank	Tools and equipment	M. Beauty (debtor)		Capital	Income/ expenditure		Big Builders (creditor)	Uni Bank (long-term loan)
R	R	R		R	R		R	R
88 800	8 200			40 000			7 000	50 000
+ 60 000					+ 60 000			
		+ 20 000			+ 20 000			
– 1 200					– 1 200			
– 6 000					– 6 000			
141 600	8 200	20 000	=	40 000	72 800	+	7 000	50 000

**The above transaction will be recorded in the ledger accounts as follows:**

**1. The debit-side of the salaries account:**

Dr		Salaries				9		Cr
Date	Details	Fol	R	Date	Details	Fol	R	
20.6 Jan 31	Bank (account to be credited)		6 000					



## 2. The credit-entry in the bank account:

Dr		Bank				1		Cr	
Date		Details	Fol	R	Date		Details	Fol	R
20.6					20.6				
Jan	1	Capital account		40 000	Jan	1	Tools and equipment		1 200
		Long-term loan: Uni				28	Telephone expenses		1 200
		Bank		50 000		31	Salaries ( <b>account to be debited</b> )		6 000
	15	Services rendered		60 000					

A summary of all the ledger accounts in the general ledger, at the end of January 20.6 are as follows:

The bank account must be balanced off.

## BS ELECTRICAL

## GENERAL LEDGER

Dr		Bank				1		Cr	
Date		Details	Fol	R	Date		Details	Fol	R
20.6					20.6				
Jan	1	Capital		40 000	Jan	1	Tools and equipment		1 200
	15	Long-term loan: Uni				28	Telephone expenses		1 200
		Bank		50 000		31	Salaries		6 000
		Services rendered		60 000			Balance	c/d	141 600
				150 000					150 000
Feb	1	Balance	b/d	141 600					

Dr		Capital				2		Cr	
Date		Details	Fol	R	Date		Details	Fol	R
					20.6				
					Jan	1	Bank		40 000

Dr		Tools and equipment				3		Cr	
Date		Details	Fol	R	Date		Details	Fol	R
20.6									
Jan	1	Big Builders		7 000					
		Bank		1 200					
				8 200					

Dr				Big builders				4		Cr	
Date	Details		Fol	R	Date	Details		Fol	R		
					20.6 Jan 1	Tools and equipment			7 000		

Dr				Long-term loan: Uni Bank Account				5		Cr	
Date	Details		Fol	R	Date	Details		Fol	R		
					20.6 Jan 1	Bank			50 000		

Dr				M Beauty				6		Cr	
Date	Details		Fol	R	Date	Details		Fol	R		
20.6 Jan 16	Services rendered			20 000							

Dr				Services rendered				7		Cr	
Date	Details		Fol	R	Date	Details		Fol	R		
					20.6 Jan 15	Bank			60 000		
					16	M Beauty			20 000		

Dr				Telephone expenses				8		Cr	
Date	Details		Fol	R	Date	Details		Fol	R		
20.6 Jan 28	Bank			1 200							

Dr				Salaries				9		Cr	
Date	Details		Fol	R	Date	Details		Fol	R		
20.6 Jan 31	Bank			6 000							

The ledger accounts in the general ledger numbered from 1 to 6 are asset accounts, liability accounts and equity accounts. These balances will appear in the statement of financial position. The ledger accounts in the general ledger numbered from 7 to 9 are all income/profit accounts and expense/loss accounts. The arithmetical correctness of the recording of transactions in the general ledger must be tested on a regular basis. This usually takes place once all transactions up to and including a certain date (in this case for the month of January) have been recorded in the general ledger and before any final financial statements are prepared. A trial balance will be compiled to check the arithmetical correctness of the recording of transactions in the general ledger.

### 3.3 THE TRIAL BALANCE

The total of all the debit balances on the ledger accounts should be equal to the total of all the credit balances on the ledger accounts, because all the transactions should have been recorded

in accordance with the double-entry principle. To determine whether this is so, the balances of all accounts are determined and recorded in a statement known as the trial balance.

**A trial balance is a list of all the balances of all the accounts in the general ledger on a particular date.**

The names and balances are recorded in the trial balance in the order in which they appear in the general ledger. There are two columns in which debit balances and credit balances are recorded. The final totals of the two columns should always be the same.

**BS ELECTRICAL  
TRIAL BALANCE AS AT 31 JANUARY 20.6**

	<b>Debit</b>	<b>Credit</b>
	<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>
Bank	141 600	
Capital		40 000
Tools and equipment	8 200	
Big Builders		7 000
Long-term loan: Uni Bank		50 000
M. Beauty	20 000	
Services rendered		80 000
Telephone expenses	1 200	
Salaries	6 000	
	177 000	177 000

The errors which may be revealed by a trial balance will be discussed in detail in a later learning unit. The debit balances total is equal to the credit balances total and the profit or loss account can now be compiled.

### **3.4 THE PROFIT OR LOSS ACCOUNT**

If Mr Bingole Sithole wants to determine after one month whether it is worthwhile for him to carry on the business, the profit/income accounts and losses/expense accounts must be closed off to the profit or loss account so that the profit for the month can be calculated.

The financial result of an entity is measured in terms of the profit or loss which the entity has made over a specific period. This period is known as the **financial period** and is usually one year.

**At the end of the financial period (usually a year) all expense/loss accounts and income/profit accounts of a service entity must be closed off to a profit or loss account which forms the basis for the preparation of a statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income.**

**Explanation of the transfer of income to the profit or loss account:**

To close off the services rendered account (income), the **services rendered account** must be **debited** with R80 000, which is equal to the total of the amounts on the credit side (R60 000 + R20 000). There is no total on the debit side. To balance off the ledger account the total amount of R80 000 will be entered on the debit side. The name of the account that must be credited to complete the double-entry is profit or loss account. The services rendered account will now balance off.

The **profit or loss account** is **credited** with R80 000. This is done to adhere to the double-entry principle.

Dr		Services rendered				7		Cr
Date	Details	Fol	R	Date	Details	Fol	R	
20.6				20.6				
Jan 31	Profit or loss ( <b>account to be credited</b> )		80 000	Jan 15	Bank		60 000	
				16	M. Beauty		20 000	
			80 000				80 000	

**Explanation of the transfer of expenditure to the profit or loss account:**

To close off the telephone expense account (an expense), the **telephone expenses account** must be **credited** with R1 200 which is equal to the total amount on the debit side, R1 200. There is no balance on the telephone expense account because the total amount is taken to the profit or loss account.

The **profit or loss account** is **debited** with R1 200. This is done to adhere to the double-entry principle.

Dr		Telephone expenses				8		Cr
Date	Details	Fol	R	Date	Details	Fol	R	
20.6				20.6				
Jan 28	Bank		1 200	Jan 31	Profit or loss ( <b>account to be debited</b> )		1 200	
			1 200				1 200	

The same principle is applicable to the closing off of the salaries account (an expense) to the profit or loss account.

The salaries account must be credited with R6 000, the total of the amount on the debit side, R6 000. There is no balance on the salaries account because the total amount is taken to the profit or loss account.

The **profit or loss account** is **debited** with R6 000. This is done to adhere to the double-entry principle.

Dr			Salaries				9		Cr
Date	Details		Fol	R	Date	Details		Fol	R
20.6					20.6				
Jan	31	Bank		6 000	Jan	31	Profit or loss (account to be debited)		6 000
				6 000					6 000

The profit or loss account is a final account in the general ledger and the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income is one of the financial statements an entity has to prepare. It uses the same information, but the one is an account while the other is a statement (no debit side or credit side).

**The profit or loss account is as follows:**

Dr			Profit or loss				10		Cr
Date	Details		Fol	R	Date	Details		Fol	R
20.6					20.6				
Jan	31	Telephone expenses (account to be credited)		1 200	Jan	31	Services rendered (account to be debited)		80 000
		Salaries (account to be credited)		6 000					
		Capital (Profit for the month) (account to be credited)		72 800					
				80 000					80 000

An entity makes a profit when the income it has earned is more than the expenditure it has incurred in generating or producing that income. BS Electrical has made a profit for the month because the income earned, R80 000, is more than the expenses incurred in generating the income, R1 200 + R6 000 = R7 200. The income earned (profit) is R80 000 – R7 200 = R72 800.

**To calculate the profit or loss for the month (the same as calculating the balance c/d):**

- Add the debit side of the profit or loss account and write down the total in pencil: R1 200 + R6 000 = R7 200.
- Add the credit side of the profit or loss account and write down the total in pencil: R80 000.
- The credit total of the profit or loss account is more than the debit total. To make the two sides equal the debit side needs an amount of R80 000 – R7 200 = R72 800. This is the balancing amount and is recorded on the side of the profit or loss account that is the smallest in this case, the debit side. It is a profit because the income is greater than the expenses.
- The account is then totalled (the biggest total in pencil, that side is the credit side total of R80 000).
- The capital account will be credited, therefore the reference on the debit side of the profit or loss account will be capital account (profit for the month).

The last transfer is the entry for the profit for the period that must be credited to the capital account (profit or loss account is debited) because BS Electrical owes the profit to the owner, Mr B. Sithole. The profit for the month is the owner's reward for the capital he has invested and the entrepreneurial spirit he has shown. It therefore increases the equity.

Dr		Capital				2		Cr
Date	Details	Fol	R	Date	Details	Fol	R	
				20.6				
				Jan 1	Bank		40 000	
				31	Profit or loss (profit for the month)		72 800	
					<b>(account to be debited)</b>			
							112 800	

A statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income will now be compiled using the information included in the profit or loss account.

### 3.5 THE STATEMENT OF PROFIT OR LOSS AND OTHER COMPREHENSIVE INCOME

The aim of the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income is to reflect the financial performance (profit/loss) for a financial period.

The statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income is as follows:

#### BS ELECTRICAL

#### STATEMENT OF PROFIT OR LOSS AND OTHER COMPREHENSIVE INCOME FOR THE MONTH ENDED 31 JANUARY 20.6

	Notes	R
Services rendered		80 000
Distribution, administrative and other expenses		(7 200)
Telephone expenses		1 200
Salaries		6 000
Profit for the month		72 800
Other comprehensive income for the month*		—
<b>Total comprehensive income for the month</b>		<b>72 800</b>

\* Other comprehensive income for the month falls outside the scope of the FAC1501 syllabus.

Notes fall outside the scope of this module.

In order to complete the set of financial statements the statement of financial position will also be compiled.

The statement of financial position is as follows:

## BS ELECTRICAL

### STATEMENT OF FINANCIAL POSITION AS AT 31 JANUARY 20.6

	Notes	R
<b>ASSETS</b>		
<b>Non-current assets</b>		8 200
Tools and equipment		8 200
<b>Current assets</b>		161 600
Debtors control		20 000
Bank		141 600
<b>Total assets</b>		169 800
<b>EQUITY AND LIABILITIES</b>		
<b>Equity</b>		112 800
Capital		112 800
<b>Non-current liabilities</b>		50 000
Long-term loan: Uni Bank		50 000
<b>Current liabilities</b>		7 000
Creditors control		7 000
<b>Total equity and liabilities</b>		169 800

Learning unit 2 and 3 are the most important learning units in financial accounting. Please make sure you understand the rules concerning assets, liabilities, equity, profit/income accounts and losses/expense accounts. You will have no problems with financial accounting in future if you understand these rules and know how to apply them.

## 3.6 SUMMARY

The table below presents a useful overview of the accounting equation and the related sub-categories of the elements of financial statements. Examples of relevant ledger accounts are provided under each category.

<b>ASSETS</b> Debit (+) Credit (-)	= <b>EQUITY</b> Debit (-) Credit (+)	+ <b>LIABILITIES</b> Debit (-) Credit (+)
<p><b>NON-CURRENT ASSETS</b>                      Land and buildings                      Equipment                      Vehicles                      Furniture                      Machinery                      Goodwill                      Investments (financial)</p> <p><b>CURRENT ASSETS</b>                      Trading inventory                      Debtors control                      Prepaid expenses                      Accrued income                      Bank                      Petty cash                      Cash float</p>	<p>* DRAWINGS</p> <p><b>EXPENSES</b>                      Cost of sales                      Rental expenses                      Interest expense                      Wages and salaries                      Advertising                      Insurance expenses                      Repairs and maintenance                      Telephone expenses                      Water and electricity                      Credit losses                      Postage                      Rates and taxes                      Stationery                      Consumables                      Packaging materials                      Loss on sale of a non-current asset</p> <p>* CAPITAL</p> <p><b>INCOME</b>                      Sales                      Rental income                      Interest income                      Dividend income                      Commission income                      Credit losses recovered                      Profit on sale of a non-current asset</p>	<p><b>NON-CURRENT LIABILITIES</b>                      Long-term loans                      Mortgage</p> <p><b>CURRENT LIABILITIES</b>                      Short-term loans                      Creditors control                      Bank overdraft                      Current portion of long-term loans                      Accrued expenses                      Income received in advance</p>



### 3.7 EXERCISES AND SOLUTIONS

#### EXERCISE 1

- (a) How is the financial result calculated in financial accounting terms?
- (b) Which financial report reflects the financial result?
- (c) Give three examples of income.
- (d) Give three examples of expenditure.
- (e) How is profit/loss determined for a financial period?
- (f) Does a loss increase or decrease the equity of the owner?

#### SOLUTION: EXERCISE 1

- (a) PROFIT FOR THE YEAR = INCOME – EXPENDITURE
- (b) The statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income for the year ended ...
- (c)
  - fees earned
  - sales
  - interest income
  - rental income
  - commission income
  - credit losses recovered
- (d)
  - cost of sales
  - rental expenses
  - interest expense
  - wages and salaries
  - advertising
  - credit losses
  - insurance
  - repairs and maintenance
  - telephone expenses
  - water and electricity
  - postage
  - rates and taxes
  - stationery
  - consumables
  - packing materials
  - bank charges
  - depreciation
  - administrative expenses
- (e) PROFIT FOR THE YEAR = INCOME – EXPENDITURE
- (f) A loss decreases income and profits and therefore also decreases the equity.

**EXERCISE 2**

The financial position of T Payn, an attorney, at 28 February 20.6 is as follows:

A	=	E	+	L
R50 000	=	R30 000	+	R20 000

For the year ended 28 February 20.7 he had the following income and expenditure:

	<b>R</b>
Fees earned	180 000
Salaries	100 000
Administrative expenses	20 000
Insurance expenses	10 000

**REQUIRED**

Calculate T Payn's equity as at 28 February 20.7.

**SOLUTION: EXERCISE 2**

<b>Income</b>	=	Fees earned R180 000		
<b>Expenditure</b>	=	Salaries R100 000 + Administrative expenses R20 000 + Insurance expenses R10 000		
	=	R130 000		
<b>Profit for the year</b>	=	<b>Income</b>	-	<b>Expenses</b>
	=	R180 000	-	R130 000
	=	R50 000		
<b>Equity</b>	=	<b>Capital</b>	+	<b>Profit for the year</b>
E	=	R30 000 (20.6)	+	R50 000 (20.7)
E	=	R80 000		

**EXERCISE 3****REQUIRED**

List each of the following ledger accounts under one of the categories in the table below. "Furniture" is inserted as an example.

ASSETS		EQUITY			LIABILITIES	
Non-current assets	Current assets	Capital	Income	Expenditure	Non-current liabilities	Current liabilities
Furniture						

Ledger accounts to be classified:

- (a) land and buildings
- (b) mortgage
- (c) petty cash
- (d) postage
- (e) interest income
- (f) vehicles
- (g) salaries
- (h) debtors
- (i) creditors
- (j) bank overdraft
- (k) fees earned
- (l) electricity deposit
- (m) subscriptions

### SOLUTION: EXERCISE 3

	ASSETS		EQUITY			LIABILITIES	
	Non-current assets	Current assets	Capital	Income	Expenditure	Non-current liabilities	Current liabilities
(a)	land and buildings						
(b)						mortgage	
(c)		petty cash					
(d)					postage		
(e)				interest income			
(f)	vehicles						
(g)					salaries		
(h)		debtors					
(i)							creditors
(j)							bank overdraft
(k)				fees earned			
(l)		electricity deposit *					
(m)					subscriptions		

\* Electricity deposit is an amount paid by the entity to serve as security for the payment of the electricity account. The amount will be paid back to the entity if they sell the land and buildings and will no longer make use of the electricity; therefore it is not an expense but a current asset.

**EXERCISE 4**

D Paulus started a television antenna installation service on 1 June 20.6. The following transactions took place during the first month:

Transactions:

- June
- 1 Cash in the bank deposited as opening capital, R25 000.
  - 2 D Paulus made his private equipment available to the business, R9 000.
  - 3 Additional equipment purchased and paid for by cheque, R12 000.
  - 4 Installation fees for work done on account for Kannadrift Municipality, R4 200.
  - 6 Vehicle purchased on credit from Virginia Cars Limited, R22 400.
  - 17 Kannadrift Municipality paid R2 200 on their account.
  - 28 Wages paid, R4 000.
  - 30 Paid R9 000 to Virginia Cars Limited in part settlement of the entity's account.

**REQUIRED**

Use the accounting equation to analyse the above mentioned transactions as follows:

**NB:** (1) Show the effect of each transaction on the accounting equation with a plus sign (+) for an increase and a minus sign (–) for a decrease.

*Example:* On 1 July 20.6 D Paulus received R2 000 in cash for an installation done for Cook Financing Corporation.

Date	Accounting equation		
	Assets	=	Equity + Liabilities
20.6 July 1	+ R2 000		+ R2 000      0

Cash received will increase the bank, therefore assets increased.

The cash was for installation fees, an income, therefore equity increased.

**SOLUTION: EXERCISE 4**

Date	Accounting equation		
	Assets	= Equity	+ Liabilities
20.6			
June 1	+ R25 000	+ R25 000	
2	+ R 9 000	+ R 9 000	
3	+ R12 000		
	- R12 000		
4	+ R 4 200	+ R 4 200	
6	+ R22 400		+ R22 400
17	+ R 2 200		
	- R 2 200		
28	- R 4 000	- R 4 000	
30	- R 9 000		- R 9 000
	R47 600	R34 200	R13 400

Assets (R47 600) = Equity (R34 200) + Liabilities (R13 400)

**EXERCISE 5**

The following transactions relate to Witblits Electricians:

Transactions:

- Oct
- 1 W Blits, the owner, deposited as opening capital, R10 000.  
Obtained a loan from SA Bank, R6 000.
  - 3 Bought equipment on credit from Sparks Dealers, R1 000.
  - 9 Issued a cheque for an advertisement in a local newspaper, R200.
  - 12 Paid the telephone account by cheque, R75.
  - 13 Received a cheque from H House for services rendered, R500.
  - 24 As an additional capital contribution W Blits transferred his motor vehicle to the business, R9 000.
  - 27 Paid salaries by cheque, R2 000.
  - 30 Issued a cheque to SA Bank as a repayment on the loan, R1 500.

**REQUIRED**

Prepare the appropriate general ledger accounts which reflect the above transactions in the books of Witblits Electricians. The general ledger accounts must be properly balanced at 31 October 20.6.

**NB:** Indicate the correct contra general ledger account.

<b>SOLUTION: EXCERCISE 5</b>
------------------------------

### WITBLITS ELECTRICIANS

#### GENERAL LEDGER

Dr		Capital				1		Cr
Date	Details	Fol	R	Date	Details	Fol	R	
				20.6				
				Oct 1	Bank		10 000	
				24	Motor vehicles		9 000	
							19 000	

Dr		Bank				2		Cr
Date	Details	Fol	R	Date	Details	Fol	R	
20.6				20.6				
Oct 1	Capital		10 000	Oct 9	Advertisements		200	
	Long-term loan:			12	Telephone expenses		75	
	SA Bank		6 000	27	Salaries		2 000	
13	Services rendered		500	30	Long-term loan: SA			
				31	Bank		1 500	
					Balance	c/d	12 725	
			16 500				16 500	
Nov 1	Balance	b/d	12 725					

Dr		Long-term loan: SA Bank				3		Cr
Date	Details	Fol	R	Date	Details	Fol	R	
20.6				20.6				
Oct 30	Bank		1 500	Oct 1	Bank		6 000	
31	Balance	c/d	4 500					
			6 000				6 000	
				Nov 1	Balance	b/d	4 500	

Dr		Equipment				4		Cr
Date	Details	Fol	R	Date	Details	Fol	R	
20.6								
Oct 3	Sparks Dealers		1 000					

Dr		Motor vehicles				5		Cr
Date	Details	Fol	R	Date	Details	Fol	R	
20.6								
Oct 24	Capital		9 000					


Dr		Sparks Dealers				6		Cr
Date	Details	Fol	R	Date	Details	Fol	R	
				20.6 Oct 3	Equipment		1 000	

Dr		Services rendered				7		Cr
Date	Details	Fol	R	Date	Details	Fol	R	
				20.6 Oct 13	Bank		500	

Dr		Telephone expenses				8		Cr
Date	Details	Fol	R	Date	Details	Fol	R	
20.6 Oct 12	Bank		75					

Dr		Salaries				9		Cr
Date	Details	Fol	R	Date	Details	Fol	R	
20.6 Oct 27	Bank		2 000					

Dr		Advertisements				10		Cr
Date	Details	Fol	R	Date	Details	Fol	R	
20.6 Oct 9	Bank		200					

	<h2>SELF-ASSESSMENT</h2>			
	<p>After you have worked through this learning unit, are you able to:</p>			
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● define income?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● define expenses?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● explain the difference between (and give examples of) income and expenses?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● explain the rules for debiting and crediting different types of profit/income and losses/expense accounts?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● correctly classify any given profit/income and losses/expense account?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● correctly enter any given transaction considering profit/income and losses/expense into the accounting equation?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● correctly apply the accounting equation to any given transaction considering profit/income and losses/expense?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● correctly enter any given transaction concerning profit/income and losses/expense in the ledger accounts?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● prepare a trial balance?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● prepare a profit or loss account?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● prepare a statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹

If you have marked all ☺ you may continue to the next learning unit .

If you have marked any ☹ you have to *revise* that specific section.

If you have marked any ☹ you have to **re-study** that specific section.



**FAC1501**

**LEARNING UNIT 4**

**BUSINESS DOCUMENTS:  
CASH TRANSACTIONS**



**Introductory Financial  
Accounting**

## OVERVIEW

Learning outcomes .....	62
Key concepts .....	62
Assessment criteria .....	63
4.1 Introduction .....	63
4.2 The financial accounting cycle .....	63
4.3 Cash transactions .....	63
4.4 Business documents .....	64
4.5 Starting a business entity .....	64
4.6 Value Added Tax (VAT) .....	65
4.7 Comprehensive example .....	69
4.8 Exercises and solutions .....	93
Self-assessment .....	114

## LEARNING OUTCOMES

After studying this learning unit you should be able to:

- define cash transactions
- define source documents
- explain the difference between internal source documents and external business documents
- explain the applicable source documents involved in different cash transactions
- complete different business documents

## KEY CONCEPTS

- Cash transactions
- Source documents
- Internal source documents
- External source documents
- Cash slips
- Cash register rolls
- Duplicate cash invoices
- Original cash invoices
- Duplicate receipts
- Original receipts
- Duplicate cash sales invoices
- Cheque counterfoils
- Cheques
- Original delivery note
- Duplicate delivery note
- Petty cash voucher

- Original credit card slip
- Duplicate credit card slip
- Bank statement
- Original deposit slip
- Duplicate deposit slip
- Internet banking: Notice of payment
- Value Added Tax (VAT)
- Sales
- Purchases
- Cash discount



### ASSESSMENT CRITERIA

- The concept “source documents” is explained and source documents applicable to cash transactions are identified using appropriate examples from entities.
- The principles of VAT and the calculation thereof is explained with examples to verify the ability to calculate VAT.
- The ability to complete business documents applicable to cash transactions from relevant financial data is demonstrated.
- The ability to apply the accounting equation when recording cash transactions is demonstrated.
- The ability to record cash transactions of a sole proprietor in various ledgers from source documents is demonstrated.

## 4.1 INTRODUCTION

In learning unit 2 and 3 you learned how to analyse transactions and to determine their effect on the accounting equation. The principle of the double-entry system was also explained as well as the recording of all the transactions in the various ledger accounts. This created a framework within which you now must study the processing of accounting data in greater detail.

## 4.2 THE FINANCIAL ACCOUNTING CYCLE

Accounting data is processed within a definite framework which is known as the financial accounting cycle. The financial accounting cycle was explained in learning unit 1.

You will remember that, according to the financial accounting diagram, there must first be a transaction and then there must be proof that a transaction did take place. The proof that a transaction did take place takes the form of a source document. There are different business documents for different transactions that serve as proof that transactions did take place. In this learning unit the source documents for cash transactions will be discussed.

## 4.3 CASH TRANSACTIONS

The transaction of an entity can be either in cash or on credit or a mixture of both. In this learning unit only business documents applicable to cash transactions will be discussed. Cash transactions always affect the bank account, petty cash or cash float. That means that, when cash transactions take place, the entity will either receive or pay out money. The type of source document used to record cash transactions will depend on the type of transaction that took place.

## 4.4 BUSINESS DOCUMENTS

When a cash transaction takes place, it is necessary to record it on a business document. These business documents are necessary to keep record of the large number of transactions that an entity is engaged in during a business day. It is not practical to record each transaction directly into the books of the entity. These business documents serve as proof that a transaction between the entity and another party took place and constitute a record for the further processing of the data on the business document. The information on the business document gives details of the transaction, which includes the date, the amount, the type of transaction, and with whom the transaction has taken place. These documents are referred to as source documents because they are used to record transactions in the accounting records (books) of an entity. They are thus the source of information to record the transaction.

There are two types of source documents, namely:

- **Internal source documents**

Internal source documents are those documents prepared by the entity itself to record transactions with external clients. Source documents are usually drawn up in duplicate. The original will be given to the other party to the transaction and the **duplicate will remain with the entity** to enable the entity to record the transaction in their accounting records. Examples of internal source documents are:

- cash register rolls
- duplicate cash sales invoices
- duplicate receipts
- cheque counterfoils
- petty cash vouchers
- duplicate bank deposit slips
- internet banking: notice of payment
- signed credit card slip

- **External source documents (also referred to as supporting documents)**

External source documents are the documents prepared by the other party to the transaction and received by the entity as proof that the transaction did take place. The entity will receive the original source document and the **entry into the books is recorded from this original source document received**. Examples of external source documents are:

- original cash purchases invoices
- original receipts
- cheques
- cash slips

## 4.5 STARTING A BUSINESS ENTITY

Mr Bingole Sithole, a qualified electrician, starts a small service entity, BS Electrical, from home on 2 January 20.6.

Before BS Electrical can start with its business operations, a current bank account must be opened in the name of the entity, BS Electrical. During the process of opening this current bank account, it must be determined who the person or persons are who are authorised to sign the cheques issued by the business entity. Mr B Sithole decided that he would sign the cheques, but because he will not always be available, he also wants Mrs S Peterson, his newly appointed bookkeeper, to be authorised to sign

the cheques. Mrs S Peterson must accompany Mr B Sithole to Helping Bank Limited because the bank wants a sample of the signatures of both Mr B Sithole and Mrs S Peterson.

Helping Bank Limited opened a current bank account with the number 9000–123456 in the name of the entity, BS Electrical, and Mr B Sithole as well as Mrs S Peterson are authorised to sign the cheques of the business entity.

BS Electrical also applied for:

- Internet banking with Helping Bank Limited. Mrs S Peterson will then be able to make payments for BS Electrical, via the internet, instead of making payments by cheque. The payments are done, via the internet, directly into the bank account of the other party. Payments can also be made by other parties, via the internet, directly into the bank account of BS Electrical.
- A business credit card with Helping Bank Limited to be able to do the necessary purchases for the entity.
- A credit card machine (this machine can also be used for debit card transactions) with Helping Bank Limited. The banks bear the costs of processing the information and collecting outstanding amounts and also absorb any losses arising from credit losses. For these services, banks charge entities a fee based on a percentage of the credit card sale (2% to 5%). BS Electrical settled at a fee of 3% on the credit card sales with Helping Bank Limited.
- A business telephone with Telkom.
- A VAT number with the South African Revenue Service (SARS).

## 4.6 VALUE ADDED TAX (VAT)

If a person carries on an entity and the total value of his taxable supplies exceeds or is likely to exceed R1 000 000 for a twelve-month period, it is compulsory for him or her to register as a vendor. It is important to note that a person, in the above case Mr B Sithole, is registered as a vendor and not an entity.

Once registered every vendor will fall within a particular category that will determine his or her tax period (that is, how often a tax return must be completed and submitted to SARS). These categories are:

- **Category A**

Vendors whose tax periods are periods of two months ending on the last day of the months of January, March, May, July, September and November of the calendar year fall in this category. These are vendors whose taxable supplies for the twelve months do not exceed R30 million or for farmers whose taxable supplies exceed R1,5 million.

- **Category B**

Vendors whose tax periods are periods of two months ending on the last day of the months of February, April, June, August, October and December of the calendar year fall in this category. These are vendors whose taxable supplies for the twelve months do not exceed R30 million or for farmers whose taxable supplies exceed R1,5 million.

- **Category C**

Vendors whose tax periods are periods of one month ending on the last day of each of the 12 months of the calendar year fall in this category. These are vendors whose taxable supplies for a twelve month period exceed or are likely to exceed R30 million or for vendors who have specifically applied in writing for a monthly basis.

- **Category D**

This category is for vendors whose tax periods are periods of six months ending on the last day of February and August of the calendar year or, where any vendor falling within this category makes written application, therefore, on the last day of such other months as the Commissioner may approve. These are vendors whose entities consist of farming activities and whose taxable supplies do not or are not likely to exceed R1,5 million.

- **Category E**

Vendors whose tax periods are periods of twelve months ending on the last day of their year of assessment fall in this category. These are vendors who are either a company or trust fund which meet the following criteria:

- The vendor's entity entails solely of one or more activities consisting of the letting of fixed property or the renting of movable goods to or the administration or management of companies which are connected person in relation to the vendor.
- The recipients of these supplies are all registered vendors entitled to the deduction of the full amount of input tax in respect of the supplies.
- Tax invoices are issued once a year and the payments for these supplies only become due once a year at the end of the year of assessment.
- A written application to be placed in this category is made to the Commissioner.

- **Category F**

This category contain vendors whose tax periods are periods of four months ending on the last day of the months of June, October and February. These are vendors who qualify as small entities and whose total value of taxable supplies do not exceed or are not likely to exceed in a period of twelve months R1,5 million, or vendors that has made a written application to SARS to be placed in this category.

Because we are dealing with small entities in this module, we will look at categories A and B (with two-month VAT periods).

Value added tax (VAT) is a tax levied whenever a product is sold or service is rendered. The VAT is added to the selling price that a trader expects for goods and the goods are marked at a price inclusive of VAT. The rate of VAT is decided by the government and is changed from time to time. The current VAT rate is 14%. A vendor will pay input tax – that is the tax which a vendor himself has borne in respect of goods or services supplied to him. This amount can be claimed back from SARS. A vendor will also levy output tax – that is the tax which a vendor charges on the supply of goods or services rendered. This amount must be paid over to SARS. After two months, the value added tax payable or refundable by a registered vendor must be calculated. In other words, the difference between the vendor's output tax and input tax must be determined. If the input tax is bigger than the output tax the vendor will claim the amount of the difference from SARS (it is refundable). If the output tax is bigger than the input tax, the difference is payable to SARS.

The following ledger accounts must be opened:

- a VAT input account
- a VAT output account
- at the end of every second month a VAT control account, to determine the amount refundable by or payable to SARS.

The VAT input account and the VAT output account will be closed off to the VAT control account at the end of every second month.

The amounts of all the transactions will therefore always be the amount excluding VAT.

The completed VAT return must be submitted, with payment if required, to SARS on or before the 25<sup>th</sup> of the month following the end of the tax period. If a vendor is registered on e-filing it must be submitted, with payment if required, on or before the last day of the month following the end of the tax period. A penalty of an amount equal to 10% of the tax is payable for late submission of a VAT return.

The calculation of the tax payable for a particular tax period will be determined by the accounting basis used by the vendor. The vendor is allowed to choose between two bases, namely:

- **The invoice basis**

In terms of the invoice basis the output tax and the input tax are accounted for, in general, on the issue of an invoice or on a receipt of payment whichever occurs first.

- **The payments basis**

In terms of the payments basis the output tax is accounted for, in general, when payments are received and the input tax is accounted for when payments are made. This basis may not be used automatically, but the vendor must state reasons on the VAT registration form as to why the payments basis is to be used. The payments basis may also only be used if the total value of the vendors' taxable supplies does not exceed R2,5 million for a twelve month period or are not likely to exceed such amount and the vendor is a natural person.

The debtors' and creditors' payment policy applied will determine which basis has the most favourable cash-flow advantage for the vendor. Say the payments basis is applied, then, if a vendor grants credit to his customers, output tax need only be accounted for in the tax period when payment is received from the debtor. However, if the payments basis is applied and the vendor acquires goods and services on credit, he or she will only be able to claim the input tax deduction in respect of the VAT on the transaction in the tax period when payment to the creditor is made.

To be able to claim an input tax deduction the vendor must be in possession of a tax invoice or a debit or credit note in the legal or trading name of the vendor. A tax invoice is also issued by a registered vendor when delivering supplies to a client. Tax invoices differ from normal invoices because they contain particular information.

- **for supplies under R50 (including VAT)**

The issuing of tax invoices is optional.

- **for supplies between R50 (including VAT) and R5 000 (including VAT)**

An abridged tax invoice with the following information must be issued:

- the words "tax invoice", which must be printed in a prominent place on the invoice
- the name, address and VAT registration number of the supplier
- an individual serialised number as well as the date upon which the tax invoice is issued
- a full and proper description of the goods or services supplied

- **either:**

- the value of the supplies, the amount of tax charged and the consideration for the supplies (price including VAT); or
- where the tax charged is calculated by applying the tax fraction ( $\frac{14}{114}$ ) to the consideration (price including VAT), the consideration for the supplies and either the amount of tax charged or a statement that the consideration includes a charge in respect of tax; the rate of tax charged may be reflected on the tax invoice.

- **for supplies exceeding R5 000 (including VAT)**

A full tax invoice as prescribed above with the following additional information must be issued:

- the name and address of the recipient and with effect from 1 March 2005, the VAT registration number of the recipient
- the quantity or volume of the goods or services supplied

All tax invoices must be issued with amounts stated in the currency of South Africa.

Debit and credit notes can also be issued if:

- the supply of goods or services were cancelled
- the nature of the supply of goods or services has been fundamentally varied or altered
- the consideration (price including VAT) of the goods or services has been altered by agreement with the recipient
- goods or services supplied have been returned

These credit notes issued must contain the following information:

- the amount by which the value of the supply shown on the tax invoice has been reduced as well as the amount of the excess tax
- where the tax charged is calculated by applying the tax fraction ( $\frac{14}{114}$ ) to the consideration (price including VAT), the amount by which the consideration has been reduced and either:
  - the amount of the excess tax; or
  - a statement that the reduction includes tax and the rate of tax applied
- the reason for the issuing of the credit note with sufficient information to identify it with reference to the original supply

Some products are zero-rated supplies, which will be indicated in the transaction, for example, certain bread products, certain milk products and certain maize meal. An input tax (14%) can be claimed on these products, but no output tax because it is zero-rated (0%) – that means no tax can be levied on the final product for human consumption.

Supply of financial services, especially interest received and interest paid as well as educational services by the State, is exempt from VAT. Neither input nor output tax can be claimed on these services.

- **How to calculate the VAT amount when the VAT inclusive amount is given**

Below is an explanation of how to calculate the VAT amount when the VAT inclusive amount is given.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{VAT exclusive} &= 100\% \\ \text{VAT} &= 14\% \\ \text{VAT inclusive} &= \underline{\underline{114\%}} \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{VAT amount} = \frac{\text{VAT inclusive amount}}{1} \times \frac{14}{114}$$

When you are given for example the VAT inclusive amount of R6 612 and asked to calculate the VAT amount, then it would be done as follows:

$$\frac{\text{R6 612}}{1} \times \frac{14}{114} = \text{R812}$$



Therefore the VAT exclusive amount will be R6 612 - R812 = R5 800.

- **How to calculate the VAT amount when the VAT exclusive amount is given**

Below is an explanation of how to calculate the VAT amount when the VAT exclusive amount is given.

$$\text{VAT exclusive} = 100\%$$

$$\text{VAT} = \frac{14\%}{100}$$

$$\text{VAT inclusive} = \frac{114\%}{100}$$

$$\text{VAT amount} = \frac{\text{VAT exclusive amount}}{1} \times \frac{14}{100}$$

When you are given for example the VAT exclusive amount of R5 800 and asked to calculate the VAT amount, then it would be done as follows:

$$\frac{\text{R5 800}}{1} \times \frac{14}{100} = \text{R812}$$

Therefore the VAT inclusive amount will be R5 800 + R812 = R6 612.

**You will use the same methods to calculate VAT output and VAT input.**

## 4.7 COMPREHENSIVE EXAMPLE

Consider the following transactions by BS Electrical:

### Transaction 1:

Mr B Sithole decided to deposit R100 000 in the entity's bank account to start the business. Mr B Sithole gave Mrs S Peterson a cheque for R100 000 to deposit into the current bank account of BS Electrical.

### Explanation:

Money is received. Therefore, the bank account (an asset) increases and must be debited. The money is received from the owner, Mr B Sithole, and the entity owes the money to him. Therefore, the capital account (equity) increases and must be credited.

### Source documents:

#### (a) Duplicate receipt

BS Electrical received the cheque from Mr B Sithole and Mrs S Peterson, the bookkeeper, must complete a receipt in duplicate by using carbon paper. The original receipt was handed to Mr B Sithole for the money received. Mrs S Peterson, the bookkeeper, used the duplicate in the book of receipts to do the entry in the books of BS Electrical.

No. 0001		Date: 2 January 20.6	
Received from: <i>Mr B Sithole</i>			
		<b>R</b>	<b>c</b>
Amount: Rand	<i>Hundred thousand rand only</i>		
Cent:	<i>None</i>	100 000	00
For:	<i>Capital contribution by the owner (cheque)</i>	<b>BS Electrical</b>	
Signature:	<i>S Peterson</i>		

**(b) Duplicate deposit slip**

The deposit slip provided by the bank was completed in duplicate. The bank kept the original deposit slip and Mrs S Peterson received the duplicate deposit slip. The bank deposit slip is a supporting document.

The cheque was deposited into the bank account of BS Electrical. If it is not a bank guaranteed cheque: the money deposited cannot be withdrawn immediately because BS Electrical must wait for the bank to clear the cheque. That means the bank first has to determine whether Mr B Sithole had the amount of money available in his current bank account when he wrote out the cheque. The clearance period of a cheque is 10 working days. Mrs S Peterson could ask for a special clearance, which means that the clearance period is shorter.

<b>Helping Bank Limited</b>											Cheque Account Deposit Slip				
<b>Helpende Bank Beperk</b>											Tjekrekeningdepositostrokio				
Credit											Date				
Krediteer											Datum				
Acc no											2 January 20.6				
Rek nr															
9 0 0 0 - 1 2 3 4 5 6															
Name/Naam <i>BS Electrical</i>															
Bank notes							Banknote								
Nickel							Nikkel								
Bronze							Brons								
Money and postal orders							Poswissels en posorders								
SUBTOTAL/SUBTOTAAL															
Drawer's name				Bank				Branch no							
Trekker se naam								Taknr							
1	<i>Mr B Sithole</i>			<i>Helping Bank Limited</i>			<i>90-00-00</i>			<i>100 000 00</i>					
2															
3															
4															
5															
6															
7															
										<b>Total/Totaal</b>		<i>100 000 00</i>			
Cheques etc, as above, for collection to be available as cash when paid. While acting in good faith and exercising responsible care, the Bank will not accept responsibility for ensuring that depositors/ account holders have lawful title to cheques, etc collected.											* For bank use * Vir bank gebruik				
Tjeks ens, soos bo, ingehandig vir invordering wat na betaling as kontant beskikbaar sal wees. Alhoewel die Bank in goeie trou handel en alle redelike voorsorgmaatreëls tref, sal die Bank nie die verantwoordelikheid aanvaar om te verseker dat deposante/rekeninghouers regmatige titel op ingevorderde tjeks, ens het nie.															
Deposited by/Gedeponeer deur: <i>S Peterson</i>															

**Transaction 2:**

On 2 January 20.6 BS Electrical bought a toolbox and tools to be used by Mr B Sithole from Big Builders for R10 000 (VAT inclusive) and paid by cheque number 0001.

**Explanation:**

Tools and equipment (an asset) increases and must be debited.

Paid by cheque; bank (an asset) decreases and must be credited.

**A cheque is an instruction to the bank to pay a sum of money to a certain person or entity. The amount of money in the current bank account is reduced by the amount of each cheque that is written out.**

**Source documents:**

**(a) Cheque counterfoil**

Mrs S Peterson issued a cheque to Big Builders. The cheque was handed over to the cashier at Big Builders and the cheque counterfoil remained in the chequebook. The cheque counterfoil was used by Mrs S Peterson to do the entry in the books of BS Electrical.

To avoid fraud there are usually two persons responsible for the signing of cheques in an entity. Mrs S Peterson has to sign the cheque and Mr B Sithole will have to authorise the payment for Big Builders by also signing the cheque.

Another way of avoiding fraud is to cross a cheque. Crossing a cheque means Mrs S Peterson has to draw two parallel lines and write the words "NOT TRANSFERABLE" between the lines. The words "or Bearer" are also crossed out. This means the cheque must be deposited into the bank account of Big Builders only and nobody else's account and that the cheque cannot be exchanged for cash.

Date	02/01/20.6	90-00-00-01	
To	Big Builders	<b>NOT TRANSFERABLE</b>	
For	Tools and equipment	Helping Bank Limited Pretoria	Date: 2 January 20.6
Balance	R		
Deposit	R	Pay: Big Builders	<del>or Bearer</del>
Subtotal	R	The sum of: Ten thousand rand only	10 000,00
This cheque	R10 000,00		
Balance	R		
		B Sithole	S Peterson
		<b>For: BS Electrical</b>	
0001		0001:900000•9000 123456!!• 01	

**(b) Original cash invoice**

Mrs S Peterson received the cash invoice from Big Builders after payment for the tools and equipment bought. The cash invoice is a supporting document.

<b>BIG BUILDERS</b>			
900 Narrow Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 333–1615		VAT registration number 5590223986	P O Box 2176 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 333–1616
<b>Date:</b> 2 January 20.6		<b>TAX INVOICE</b>	<b>No:</b> 0273
<b>To:</b> BS Electrical 499 Tshwane Drive Pretoria VAT registration number 8960225750			<u>Payment method</u> <b>Cheque/debit card</b> Cash Credit card Account
Code	Description	Qty	Total price
IBM1334	Tool box	1	4 626,75
IBM2043	Electrician tool kit	1	4 000,00
IBM6033	Screw driver	1	145,18
	Vat @ 14%		8 771,93 1 228,07
<b>Invoice total</b>			10 000,00
<b>Amount tendered</b>			10 000,00
<b>Change</b>			0,00
<b>VAT included @ 14%</b>			1 228,07
<b>E &amp; OE*</b>			

\* E & OE = Errors and omissions excluded. The entity has the right to make corrections and to inform the client thereof, if any error or omission were to be made on the invoice.

### Calculation:

#### VAT on R8 771,93

$$\frac{R8\,771,93}{1} \times \frac{14}{100} = R1\,228,0702 = R1\,228,07$$

The amount of **R1 228,0702** must be rounded off to the nearest cent. In the case of the amount of R1 228,0702 we must decide whether the 7 must change to a 8 or will remain a 7 to get rid of the extra 02.

#### The general rules for the rounding off of an amount are:

- If the number after the amount you have to round off is equal to 5 or is greater than 5 the amount that must be rounded off must be changed to the next amount. For example, R4,567 must be rounded off to R4,57
- If the number after the amount you have to round off is smaller than 5 the amount that must be rounded off will remain the same.

In this case the second rule for rounding of an amount applies because the 0 is smaller than 5 and the 7 must therefore remain a 7. The amount is now R1 228,07.

### Transaction 3:

On 2 January 20.6 BS Electrical bought a cash register for R3 349,50 (VAT inclusive) by cheque number 0002, from Wiseman Traders. Received cash invoice number 0578 from Wiseman Traders to be retained for guarantee purposes. Mrs S Peterson negotiated for a discount of 10% because the cash register was paid for by cheque.

### Explanation:

Tools and equipment (an asset) increases and must be debited.

Paid by cheque; bank (an asset) decreases and must be credited.

### Source documents:

#### (a) Cheque counterfoil

Mrs S Peterson issued a cheque to Wiseman Traders. The cheque was handed over to the cashier at Wiseman Traders and the cheque counterfoil remained in the chequebook. The cheque counterfoil was used by Mrs S Peterson to effect the entry in the books of BS Electrical. The cheque amount is the original price of the cash register (R3 349,50) less the cash discount (R3 349,50 x 10% = R334,95), that is R3 349,50 – R334,95 = R3 014,55.

Date	02/01/20.6	90-00-00-01	
To	Wiseman Traders	<b>NOT TRANSFERABLE</b>	
For	Tools and equipment	Helping Bank Limited Pretoria	Date: 2 January 20.6
Balance	R		
Deposit	R	Pay: Wiseman Traders	<b>or Bearer</b>
Subtotal	R	The sum of: Three thousand and fourteen Rand and fifty five Cents	3 014,55
This cheque	R3 014,55		
Balance	R		
		B Sithole	S Peterson
		For: BS Electrical	
0002		0002:900000::9000 123456!!• 01	

#### (b) Original cash invoice

Mrs S Peterson received the original cash invoice after payment of the cash register (equipment) bought. The cash invoice is a supporting document. Only the price paid after the cash discount will be entered into the books of BS Electrical.

If an entity gets a cash discount, the discount is subtracted from the original price payable and only the final amount (original amount less cash discount) will be entered into the books of the entity. The cash discount will not be shown in the books of the entity.

WISEMAN TRADERS			
700 Straight Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 335–1515		VAT registration number 6702336097	P O Box 1165 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 335–1629
<b>Date:</b> 2 January 20.6		<b>TAX INVOICE</b>	<b>No:</b> 0578
<b>To:</b> Cash		<u>Payment method</u> <b>Cheque/debit card</b> Cash Credit card Account	
Code	Description	Qty	Total price
FCR1268	Fancy cash register -10% discount	1	2 938,16 (293,82)
	VAT @ 14%		2 644,34 370,21
<b>Invoice total</b>			3 014,55
<b>Amount tendered</b>			3 014,55
<b>Change</b>			0,00
<b>VAT included @ 14%</b>			370,21
<b>E &amp; OE</b>			

### Calculations:

#### Selling price (VAT exclusive)

$$\frac{R3\,349,50}{1} \times \frac{100}{114} = R2\,938,16$$

#### Cash discount

$$\frac{R2\,938,16}{1} \times \frac{10}{100} = R293,816 = R293,82$$

The amount of **R293,816** must be rounded off to the nearest cent. That means in the amount of R293,816 we must decide whether the 1 must change to a 2 or will remain a 1 to get rid of the extra 6.

In this case the first rule for rounding of an amount applies because the 6 is greater than 5 and the 1 must be changed to a 2. The amount is now R293,82.

**VAT on R2 644,34**

$$\frac{R2\,644,34}{1} \times \frac{14}{100} = R370,2076 = R370,21$$

**Transaction 4:**

On 3 January 20.6 Mrs S Peterson issued cheque number 0003 for R300 as the cash float for the cash register. The cheque was cashed for small change to be kept in the cash register.

**Explanation:**

Cash float (an asset) increases and must be debited.

Paid by cheque; bank (an asset) decreases and must be credited.

**Source documents:****(a) Cheque counterfoil**

A cash cheque was issued by Mrs S Peterson. She has taken the cheque to Helping Bank Limited to cash it in. She asked them to pay out the R300 in small change of:

- 1 x R50 = R50
- 2 x R20 = R40
- 5 x R10 = R50
- 10 x R 5 = R50
- 10 x R 2 = R20
- 20 x R 1 = R20
- 40 x 50c = R20
- 100 x 20c = R20
- 200 x 10c = R20
- 200 x 5c = R10
- R300

At the end of each day the cash float will be restored and kept in the cash register for the next day.

Mrs S Peterson used the cheque counterfoil to do the entry in the books of BS Electrical.

A cash cheque cannot be crossed. If an unauthorised person gets hold of a cash cheque they can cash it (ie exchange it for cash at a bank). An entity should try and avoid the issuing of cash cheques. The words "or Bearer" can also not be crossed out on a cash cheque.



Date	03/01/20.6	90-00-00-01	
To	Cash	<b>Helping Bank Limited</b>	
For	Cash float	<b>Pretoria</b>	<b>Date: 3 January 20.6</b>
Balance	R		
Deposit	R	<b>Pay: Cash</b>	<b>or Bearer</b>
Subtotal	R	<b>The sum of: Three hundred rand only</b>	300,00
This cheque	R300,00		
Balance	R		
		<i>B Sithole</i>	<i>S Peterson</i>
		<b>For: BS Electrical</b>	
0003		<b>0003:900000•9000 123456!!• 01</b>	

**Transaction 5:**

The company received an invoice from Mr B Sithole for the rent for January. The rent of R2 000 (VAT inclusive) for occupying part of a building situated on Mr B Sithole's land was paid by issuing cheque number 0004 on 4 January 20.6.

**Explanation:**

Rent paid is an expense that decreases the profit for the year therefore equity decreases and rent paid account must be debited.

Paid money for rent; therefore the bank account (an asset) decreases and must be credited.

**Source documents:****(a) Cheque counterfoil**

Date	04/01/20.6	90-00-00-01	
To	Mr B Sithole	<u>NOT TRANSFERABLE</u>	
For	Rent paid	<b>Helping Bank Limited</b>	
Balance	R	<b>Pretoria</b>	<b>Date: 4 January 20.6</b>
Deposit	R	<b>Pay: Mr Bingole Sithole</b>	<b>or Bearer</b>
Subtotal	R	<b>The sum of: Two thousand rand only</b>	2 000,00
This cheque	R2 000,00		
Balance	R		
		<i>B Sithole</i>	<i>S Peterson</i>
		<b>For: BS Electrical</b>	
0004		<b>0004:900000•9000 123456!!• 01</b>	

**Transaction 6:**

On 10 January 20.6, Mr B Sithole rendered services to three different clients, Mr P Lucky, Mrs V Happy and Mr T Busy. Original sales invoices number 0001, 0002 and 0003 were issued to them respectively. They have paid the amounts and receipt number 0002 and 0003 were issued to Mr P Lucky and Mrs V

Happy respectively. Mrs S Peterson only deposited these amounts into the bank account on 11 January 20.6.

### Explanation:

Received money for services rendered. Therefore, the bank account (an asset) increases and must be debited.

Services rendered are an income that increases the profit for the year. Therefore, equity increases and the services rendered account must be credited.

### Source documents:

#### (a) Duplicate cash sales invoices

Mr B Sithole issued original cash sale invoices to the customers after he finished the jobs. Mrs S Peterson kept copies of these cash invoices and used it to do the entries in the books of BS Electrical.

<b>BS ELECTRICAL</b>			
499 Tshwane Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 429-3111		VAT registration number 8960225750	P O Box 392 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 429-3424
<b>Date:</b> 10 January 20.6	<b>TAX INVOICE</b>		<b>No:</b> 0001
<b>To:</b> Cash	<u>Payment method</u> Cheque/debit card <b>Cash</b> Credit card Account		
Code	Description	Qty	Total price
SR001	<i>Electrical services -10% cash discount</i>	2 hours	1 140,36 (114,04)
	VAT @ 14%		1 026,32 143,68
<b>Invoice total</b>			1 170,00
<b>Amount tendered</b>			1 200,00
<b>Change</b>			30,00
<b>VAT included @ 14%</b>			143,68
<b>E &amp; OE</b>			

### Calculations:

#### Cash discount

$$\frac{R1\ 140,36}{1} \times \frac{10}{100} = R114,036 = R114,04$$

**VAT on R1 026,31**

$$\frac{R1\,026,31}{1} \times \frac{14}{100} = R143,6834 = R143,68$$

<b>BS ELECTRICAL</b>			
499 Tshwane Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 429-3111		VAT registration number 8960225750	P O Box 392 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 429-3424
<b>Date:</b> 10 January 20.6	<b>TAX INVOICE</b>		<b>No:</b> 0002
<b>To:</b> Cash		<b>Payment method</b> <b>Cheque/debit card</b> Cash Credit card Account	
Code	Description	Qty	Total price
SR001	<i>Electrical services -10% cash discount</i>	5 hours	2 850,88 (285,09)
	VAT @ 14%		2 565,79 359,21
<b>Invoice total</b>			2 925,00
<b>Amount tendered</b>			2 925,00
<b>Change</b>			0,00
<b>VAT included @ 14%</b>			359,21
<b>E &amp; OE</b>			

**Calculations:****Cash discount**

$$\frac{R2\,850,88}{1} \times \frac{10}{100} = R285,088 = R285,09$$

**VAT on R2 565,79**

$$\frac{R2\,565,79}{1} \times \frac{14}{100} = R359,2106 = R359,21$$

<b>BS ELECTRICAL</b>			
499 Tshwane Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 429-3111		VAT registration number 8960225750	P O Box 392 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 429-3424
<b>Date:</b> 10 January 20.6		<b>TAX INVOICE</b>	<b>No:</b> 0003
<b>To:</b> Cash		<u>Payment method</u> Cheque/debit card Cash <b>Credit card</b> Account	
Code	Description	Qty	Total price
SR001	Electrical services -5% Cash discount	6 hours	3 421,05 (171,05)
	VAT @ 14%		3 250,00 455,00
<b>Invoice total</b>			3 705,00
<b>Amount tendered</b>			3 705,00
<b>Change</b>			0,00
<b>VAT included @ 14%</b>			455,00
<b>E &amp; OE</b>			

**Calculations:****Cash discount:**

$$\frac{R3\,421,05}{1} \times \frac{5}{100} = R171,0525 = R171,05$$

**VAT on R3 250,00**

$$\frac{R3\,250,00}{1} \times \frac{14}{100} = R455,00$$

**(b) Duplicate receipts**

Mrs S Peterson issued receipts to Mr P Lucky, who paid cash and Mrs V Happy, who paid per cheque. The original receipts were given to Mr P Lucky and Mrs V Happy and Mrs S Peterson used the duplicates to do the entries in the books of BS Electrical.

No. 0002		Date: 10 January 20.6	
Received from: <i>Mnr P Lucky</i>		<b>R</b>	<b>c</b>
Amount: Rand	<i>One thousand one hundred and seventy rand only</i>		
Cent	<i>None</i>	1 170	00
For	<i>Services rendered (cash)</i>	<b>BS Electrical</b>	
Signature	<i>S Peterson</i>		

No. 0003		Date: 10 January 20.6	
Received from: <i>Mrs V Happy</i>		<b>R</b>	<b>c</b>
Amount: Rand	<i>Two thousand nine hundred and twenty five rand only</i>		
Cent	<i>None</i>	2 925	00
Vir	<i>Services rendered (cheque)</i>	<b>BS Electrical</b>	
Signature	<i>S Peterson</i>		

**(c) Credit card slip**

Mr T Busy paid by credit card. The transaction was automatically processed by the bank and the money was transferred to BS Electrical's account from Mr T Busy's account. Only 5% discount was granted to Mr T Busy because the bank charges a fee, a negotiated 3% of the sales amount, for this service. The cost will appear on the bank statement that BS Electrical will receive at the end of the month from Helping Bank Limited. Mrs S Peterson will keep the original credit card transaction slip signed by Mr T Busy and the copy of the credit card transaction slip was given to Mr T Busy.

CARD TRANSACTION
Pretoria <b>BS Electrical</b>
NO.: *****20X7 0 EXP DATE: 04/10
AMOUNT: R3 705-00 CARD NAME: LIVING BANK VISA CARD 10/03/20.6 9:30 AUTH: 641055 EPS No. 173 <div style="text-align: right; padding-right: 50px;">0415 017 8044288 0039</div>
<div style="margin: 0 auto; width: 200px;"> <u>                  <i>T Busy</i>                  </u> </div> CUSTOMER SIGNATURE

**(d) Duplicate deposit slip**

The money received from Mr P Lucky and Mrs V Happy were deposited in the bank account of BS Electrical by Mrs S Peterson. The cashier at Helping Bank Limited kept the original deposit slip and handed the duplicate to Mrs S Peterson. The duplicate deposit slip is a supporting document.

Helping Bank Limited Helpende Bank Beperk											Cheque Account Deposit Slip Tjekrekeningdeposiostrokie					
Credit Krediteer	Acc no Rek nr	9	0	0	0	-	1	2	3	4	5	6	Date Datum	11 January 20.6		
Name/Naam <i>BS Electrical</i>																
Bank notes		Banknote				1		170				00				
Nickel		Nikkel														
Bronze		Brons														
Money and postal orders		Poswissels en posorders														
SUBTOTAL/SUBTOTAAL											1		170		00	
	Drawer's name Trekker se naam	Bank		Branch no Taknr												
1	<i>Mrs V Happy</i>	<i>Growing Bank Limited</i>		<i>90-05-60</i>								2 925 00				
2																
3																
4																
5																
6																
7																
		<b>Total/Totaal</b>										4 095 00				
Cheques etc, as above, for collection to be available as cash when paid. While acting in good faith and exercising responsible care, the Bank will not accept responsibility for ensuring that depositors/account holders have lawful title to cheques, etc collected.											* For bank use * Vir bankgebruik					
Tjeks ens, soos bo, ingehandig vir invordering wat na betaling as kontant beskikbaar sal wees. Alhoewel die Bank in goeie trou handel en alle redelike voorsorgmaatreëls tref, sal die Bank nie die verantwoordelikheid aanvaar om te verseker dat deposante/rekeninghouers regmatige titel op ingevorderde tjeks, ens het nie.																
Deposited by/Gedeponeer deur: <i>S Peterson</i>																

### Transaction 7:

On 15 January 20.6 Mr B Sithole decided that he would buy the different types of cables and other fittings necessary for the services he renders and keep it in BS Electrical's inventory. Clients could then buy the necessary cable and fittings from BS Electrical and Mr B Sithole could advise them on what is needed for a specific service rendered. BS Electrical would get a 20% discount if the entity buys at bulk from Huge Wholesalers.

Mr B Sithole handed Mrs S Peterson the following list of items she has to order from Huge Wholesalers:

- 1 000 m of two-phase electric cable
- 1 000 m of three-phase electric cable
- 1 box of 100 rolls of insulation tape
- 2 boxes of 100 light fittings each
- 1 box of 100 fluorescent light fittings

- 2 boxes of 100 light switches each
- 2 boxes of 100 plug switches each

The total amount of the order was R48 125,10 before discount. This amount includes VAT at 14%. Mrs S Peterson placed an order and made an internet payment of R38 500,08 directly into the bank account of Huge Wholesalers. After she faxed the proof in the form of a notice of payment through to Mr P Moodley, the sales manager at Huge Wholesalers, they delivered the goods ordered.

The delivered goods were checked by Mrs S Peterson and she signed the delivery note. The original delivery note and original cash invoice were handed to her and the delivery man kept the duplicate, signed delivery note and cash invoice.

### Explanation:

**Anything bought by BS Electrical to be sold, that is trading inventory, is called “purchases”. We refer to this type of transaction as the purchase of merchandise, goods or inventory. Purchases are an expense that decreases the profit for the year. Therefore, equity decreases and purchases account must be debited.**

Purchases is an expense that decreases the profit for the year therefore equity decreases and the Purchases account must be debited. (This will depend on the inventory system used; in this case the periodic inventory system. These inventory systems will be discussed in detail in a later learning unit .) Paid by internet, bank (an asset) decreases and must be credited.

### Source documents:

#### (a) Delivery note

Huge Wholesalers will send a detailed delivery note when they deliver the goods to make it possible for Mrs S Peterson to check whether everything was delivered. She will then sign the delivery note and keep the original delivery note. The delivery man will take the duplicate of the signed delivery note back to Huge Wholesalers.



HUGE WHOLESALERS							
1167 Marine Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 336-3433		VAT registration number 5591223986		P O Box 1550 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 336-3434			
<b>Date:</b> 15 January 20.6		<b>DELIVERY NOTE</b>		<b>No:</b> SP6058			
<b>Supplied to:</b> BS Electrical 499 Tshwane Drive Pretoria				P O Box 392 PRETORIA 0001			
Code	Description	Qty	Unit price (excl VAT)		Total price		Checked
EC1002	Two-phase electric cable	1 000 m	10	00	10 000	00	√
EC1003	Three-phase electric cable	1 000 m	13	00	13 000	00	√
IT1001	Insulation tape	1 box	300	00	300	00	√
LF1002	Light fittings	2 boxes	3 245	00	6 490	00	√
FLF1002	Fluorescent light fittings	1 box	7 999	00	7 999	00	√
LS1002	Light switches	2 boxes	998	00	1 996	00	√
PS1002	Plug switches	2 boxes	1 215	00	2 430	00	√
VAT @ 14%					42 215	00	
					5 910	10	
<b>Total</b>					48 125	10	
<b>VAT included @ 14%</b>					5 910	10	
<b>Note:</b> Discount of 20% applicable							
Checked by : Mrs S Peterson Signature: S Peterson				Date: 15 January 20.6			
<b>E &amp;OE</b>							

**Calculations:****VAT on R42 215**

$$\frac{R42\,215,00}{1} \times \frac{14}{100} = R5\,910,10$$

**(b) Original cash invoice**

If the delivery note was correct, an original cash invoice for the final amount payable would have been handed to Mrs S Peterson. The original cash invoice was used to read in the different inventory items into the computer. The cash register is linked to the computer and the computer would “control” the trading inventory because it would automatically subtract the number of goods sold from the number of goods purchased; it can even alert buyers as to when the next order is due.

<b>HUGE WHOLESALERS</b>			
1667 Marine Drive PRETORIA Tel: (012) 336-343		VAT registration number 5591223986	P O Box 1550 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 336-3434
<b>Date:</b> 15 January 20.6		<b>TAX INVOICE</b>	<b>No:</b> 5996
<b>To:</b> BS Electrical 499 Tshwane Drive Pretoria VAT registration number 8960225750		<u>Payment method</u> Cheque/debit card <b>Cash</b> Credit card Account	
Code	Description	Qty	Total price
EC1002	Two-phase electric cable	1 000 m	10 000,00
EC1003	Three-phase electric cable	1 000 m	13 000,00
IT1001	Insulation tape	1 box	300,00
LF1002	Light fittings	2 boxes	6 490,00
FLF1002	Fluorescent light fittings	1 box	7 999,00
LS1002	Light switches	2 boxes	1 996,00
PS1002	Plug switches	2 boxes	2 430,00
-20% cash discount			42 215,00 (8 443,00)
VAT @ 14%			33 772,00 4 728,08
<b>Invoice total</b>			<b>38 500,08</b>
<b>Amount tendered</b>			<b>38 500,08</b>
<b>Change</b>			<b>0,00</b>
<b>VAT included @ 14%</b>			<b>4 728,08</b>
<b>E &amp; OE</b>			

**Calculations:****Cash discount**

R10 000,00 + R13 000,00 + R300,00 + R6 490,00 + R7 999,00 + R1 996,00 + R2 430,00 = R42 215,00

$$\frac{R42\,215,00}{1} \times \frac{20}{100} = R8\,443,00$$

**VAT on R33 772,00**

$$\frac{R33\,772,00}{1} \times \frac{14}{100} = R4\,728,08$$

**(c) Internet banking: notice of payment**

Mrs S Peterson printed a notice of payment after she paid Huge Wholesalers via the internet, and faxed it through to Huge Wholesalers. This notice of payment was used by Mrs S Peterson to do the

entries in the books of BS Electrical. Mrs S Peterson received an SMS as confirmation of the payment made to Huge Wholesalers.

Mrs S Peterson will create a creditor (name of entity to be paid) on the internet banking system of BS Electrical, for Huge Wholesalers. If she wants to pay them she will just have to click on the name for the bank details to appear; she then enters the amount to be paid. On the bank statement of BS Electrical, received from Helping Bank Limited at the end of the month, the name Huge Wholesalers will appear together with the amount paid to them.

The bank statement received from Helping Bank Limited is a summary of all the cash transactions (payment and receipts) that went through the current bank account of BS Electrical during the month.

The internet bank transaction was done only as an example but it will not be discussed further during this course.

<b>HELPING BANK LIMITED</b>	
<b>Internet Banking: Notice of Payment</b>	<b>15 January 20.6</b>
Dear BS Electrical	
<b>Subject: Notice of Payment: Huge Wholesalers</b>	
Please be advised that a payment has been made as indicated below.	
.	
Transaction number:	<b>905520X611363667435578</b>
Payment date:	<b>20.6/01/15</b>
Payment made by:	<b>BS Electrical</b>
Payment made to:	<b>Huge Wholesalers</b>
Beneficiary account number:	<b>9000522968</b>
For the amount of:	<b>R38 500,08</b>
Reference on beneficiary statement:	<b>BS Electrical</b>
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p>Please remember that the following apply to internet banking payments on non Helping bank accounts</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Payments made on weekdays before 15:30 will be credited to the receiving bank account by midnight of the same day.</li> <li>● Payments made on weekdays after 15:30 will be credited by midnight the following day.</li> <li>● Payments made on a Saturday, Sunday or public holiday will be credited to the account by midnight of the 1st following weekday.</li> </ul> </div>	
If you need more information or assistance, please call Helping Bank Limited on 08600 08600 or +27 11 276 7900 (international calls).	
Yours sincerely	
<b>General Manager: Digital Channel</b>	
This document is intended for use by the addressee and is privileged and confidential. If the transmission has been misdirected to you, please contact us immediately. Thank you.	
Helping Bank Limited, Reg No 19X0/005959/05	

### Transaction 8:

On 16 January 20.6, Mrs S Peterson issued a cash cheque number 0005 for R200 as the impress amount to start the petty cash float of BS Electrical. The cheque was cashed and the money was kept by Mrs S Peterson who acted as petty cashier.

**Explanation:**

An entity may need to pay cash for certain smaller items such as postage, day-workers' wages and cleaning materials. For this, most entities keep a petty cash float. Petty cash is the same as cash on hand and is an asset.

A cheque for a predetermined amount known as a petty cash float is drawn and cashed for this purpose. The float is then kept entirely separate from the monies received by the entity in the normal course of its business. Usually the petty cash float is restored to its original balance at the end of the month.

Petty cash (an asset) increases and must be debited.

Paid by cheque, bank (an asset) decreases and must be credited.

**Source documents:****(a) A cheque counterfoil**

A cash cheque was issued by Mrs S Peterson. She took the cheque to Helping Bank Limited to cash it in. Mrs S Peterson used the cheque counterfoil to do the entry in the books of BS Electrical.

Date	16/01/20.6	90-00-00-01	
To	Cash	<b>Helping Bank Limited</b>	
For	Petty cash	Pretoria	Date: 16 January 20.6
Balance	R		
Deposit	R	<b>Pay: Cash</b>	<b>or Bearer</b>
Subtotal	R	<b>The sum of: Two hundred Rand only</b>	200,00
This cheque	R200,00		
Balance	R		
		<i>B Sithole</i>	<i>S Peterson</i>
		<b>For: BS Electrical</b>	
0005		<b>0005:900000•9000 123456!!• 01</b>	

**Transaction 9:**

On 17 January 20.6, Mrs S Peterson bought postage stamps and took R50 (VAT inclusive) out of petty cash to pay for it.

**Explanation:**

Postage is an expense that decreases the profit for the year, therefore equity decreases and postage account must be debited.

Petty cash (an asset) decreases and must be credited.

**Source documents:****(a) Petty cash voucher**

Mrs S Peterson will complete a petty cash voucher (not in duplicate) for the postage amount of R50. The petty cash voucher is the only source document that is not completed in duplicate. Mr B Sithole must authorise this payment. Mrs S Peterson will then attach the cash slip received from the Post Office to the petty cash voucher as proof that she actually bought the stamps with the R50 taken from petty cash.

To avoid fraud there are usually two persons responsible for the cash in an entity; that is why Mr B Sithole will authorise the payment for the postage stamps out of petty cash.

<b>PETTY CASH VOUCHER</b>	<b>No. 001</b>	
<b>Date:</b> 17 January 20.6	<b>Amount</b>	
<b>Required for:</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>c</b>
<i>Postmaster – postage stamps</i>	50	00
<b>Signature:</b> S Peterson		
<b>Authorised by:</b> B Sithole		

**Transaction 10:**

On 17 January 20.6, Mr T Wiseman bought electric cables and fittings to be installed by Mr B Sithole in his new home. He purchased:

- 50 m two phase electric cable, R712,50
- 4 rolls insulation tape, R17,10
- 27 plug switches, R233,93
- 20 light switches, R142,27
- 20 light fittings, R924,77
- 3 fluorescent light fittings, R341,96

Mr B Sithole delivered and installed the electric cables and fittings. Original tax invoice number 0004 was issued to Mr T Wiseman. Mr T Wiseman paid the amounts for the equipment and the service by cheque (Growing Bank Limited – branch code 90–05–60). Mrs Peterson issued receipt number 0005. The amount was deposited into the current bank account on 18 January 20.6.

**Explanation:**

**Any trading inventory (inventory bought to be sold) sold is called sales. Sales is an income that increases the profit for the year. Therefore, equity increases and sales account must be credited.**

Received money, therefore the bank account (an asset) increases and must be debited with the total amount of R2 372,53 (cables and fittings) + R9 750,00 (services rendered) = R12 122,53.

Sales is an income that increases the profit for the year. Therefore, equity increases and the sales account must be credited with R2 372,53.

Services rendered is an income that increases the profit for the year. Therefore, equity increases and services rendered account must be credited with R9 750,00.

### **Source documents:**

#### **(a) Cash register roll**

The cash slip given to Mr T Wiseman is illustrated below. The cash slip will be given to Mr Wiseman as proof of payment and only the cash register roll in the cash register, with a copy of each cash slip, remains for Mrs S Peterson to do the entry in the books of BS Electrical.

Usually only one entry for the total cash sales of the specific day will be entered in the books of BS Electrical. At the end of the day the cash register roll will indicate the total cash sales for the day and Mrs S Peterson will enter this in the books of BS Electrical.

Cheque fraud is on the increase and most entities will only accept bank guaranteed cheques or cheques from people they know well.

In big businesses each cashier will have their own password and code as well as their own cash floats. At the end of the cashiers shift the cash register will add all the sales by the specific cashier. The total of the sales must correspond with the cash less the amount for the cash float in the cash register of the cashier. One of the ways in which fraud can be eliminated is by keeping each cashier responsible for their own cash register.

<b>BS ELECTRICAL</b>	
17/01/20.6	
Till 01	
Two-phase electric cable 50 m @ R14,25 EC1002	712,50
Insulation tape 4 @ R4,275 IT1001	17,10
Plug switches 27 @ R8,664 PS1002	233,93
Light switches 20 @ R7,1136 LS1002	142,27
Light fittings 20 @ R46,2384 LF1002	924,77
Fluorescent light fittings 3 @ R113,9886 FLF1002	341,96
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>2 372,53</b>
Cash	2 372,53
Change	0,00
14% VAT	R291,36
Slip no 0001	
VAT no 8960225750	
Thank you	

**Calculation:****VAT**

$$R2\,372,53 \times \frac{14}{114} = R291,36$$

**(b) Duplicate cash invoice**

Mr B Sithole issued original cash sale invoices to the customers after he finished the jobs. Mrs S Peterson kept copies of these cash invoices and used it to do the entries in the books of BS Electrical.

<b>BS ELECTRICAL</b>			
499 Tshwane Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 429-3111		VAT registration number 8960225750	P O Box 392 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 429-3424
<b>Date:</b> 17 January 20.6		<b>TAX INVOICE</b>	<b>No:</b> 0004
<b>To:</b> Mr T Wiseman 25 Park Street Pretoria VAT registration number 4301235678		<u>Payment method</u> <b>Cheque/debit card</b> Cash Credit card Account	
Code	Description	Qty	Total price
SR001	Electrical services VAT @ 14%	15	8 552,63 1 197,37
<b>Invoice total</b>			9 750,00
<b>Amount tendered</b>			9 750,00
<b>Change</b>			0,00
<b>VAT included @ 14%</b>			1 197,37
<b>E &amp; OE</b>			

**(c) Duplicate receipt**

Mrs S Peterson issued a receipt to Mr Wiseman who paid by cheque. The original receipt was given to Mr Wiseman and Mrs Peterson used the duplicate to do the entries in the books of BS Electrical. On the receipt the till slip number as well as the invoice number for which the payment were made must be indicated.

No. 0005		Date: 17 January 20.6	
Received from: Mr T Wiseman		<b>R</b>	<b>c</b>
Amount: Twelve thousand one hundred and twenty two rand Rand			
Cent: Fifty three cents		12 122	53
For: Inventory (Cash slip no 0001 – R2 372,53) Services rendered (Cash invoice no 0004 – R9 750,00) (cheque)		<b>BS Electrical</b>	
Signature S Peterson			

**(d) Duplicate deposit slip**

The deposit slip, provided by the bank, was completed in duplicate. The bank kept the original deposit slip and Mrs S Peterson received the duplicate deposit slip.



Helping Bank Limited Helpende Bank Beperk											Cheque Account Deposit Slip Tjekrekeningdeposiostrokie				
Credit Krediteer	Acc no Rek nr	9	0	0	0	-	1	2	3	4	5	6	Date Datum	18 January 20.6	
Name/Naam <i>BS Electrical</i>															
Bank notes		Banknote													
Nickel		Nikkel													
Bronze		Brons													
Money and postal orders		Poswissels en posorders													
SUBTOTAL/SUBTOTAAL															
	Drawer's name Trekker se naam	Bank		Branch no Taknr											
1	<i>Mr T Wiseman</i>	<i>Growing Bank Limited</i>		<i>90-05-60</i>										<i>12 122</i>	<i>53</i>
2															
3															
4															
5															
6															
7															
		<b>Total/Totaal</b>												<b>12 122</b>	<b>53</b>
Cheques etc, as above, for collection to be available as cash when paid. While acting in good faith and exercising responsible care, the Bank will not accept responsibility for ensuring that depositors/account holders have lawful title to cheques, etc collected.													* For bank use * Vir bank gebruik		
Tjeks ens, soos bo, ingehandig vir invordering wat na betaling as kontant beskikbaar sal wees. Alhoewel die Bank in goeie trou handel en alle redelike voorsorgmaatreëls tref, sal die Bank nie die verantwoordelikheid aanvaar om te verseker dat deposante/rekeninghouers regmatige titel op ingevorderde tjeks, ens het nie.															
Deposited by/Gedeponeer deur: <i>S Peterson</i>															

## 4.8 EXERCISES AND SOLUTIONS

### EXERCISE 1

Consider the following transactions of BS Electrical:

- (1) On 16 January 20.6 BS Electrical bought a computer for R16 269 (VAT inclusive) and paid by cheque number 0006. They received TAX invoice number B145 from Computer World.

<b>COMPUTER WORLD</b>			
590 Delphi Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 435-1615		VAT registration number 7704337090	P O Box 5116 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 435-1639
<b>Date:</b>	16 January 20.6	<b>TAX INVOICE</b>	<b>Invoice No:</b> B145
<b>To:</b>	BS Electrical 499 Tshwane Drive Pretoria VAT registration number 8960225750		<u>Payment method</u> <b>Cheque/debit card</b> Cash Credit card Account
Code	Description	Qty	Total price
C755	Compy 755 computer VAT @ 14%	1	14 271,05 1 997,95
<b>Invoice total</b>			16 269,00
<b>Amount tendered</b>			16 269,00
<b>Change</b>			0,00
<b>VAT included @ 14%</b>			1 997,95
<b>E &amp; OE</b>			

- (2) On 16 January 20.6 the entity bought an accounting computer program to manage their inventory from IT Perfect for R15 600 (VAT inclusive). They received original tax invoice number 1569 from IT Perfect and paid IT Perfect by cheque number 0007.

<b>IT PERFECT</b>			
730 Windows Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 997-1010		VAT registration number 6805736098	P O Box 1069 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 997-1111
<b>Date:</b>	16 January 20.6	<b>TAX INVOICE</b>	<b>No:</b> 1569
<b>To:</b>	BS Electrical 499 Tshwane Drive Pretoria VAT registration number 8960225750		<u>Payment method</u> <b>Cheque/debit card</b> Cash Credit card Account
Code	Description	Qty	Total price
PE101	Point of sales inventory programme VAT @ 14%	1	13 684,21 1 915,79
<b>Invoice total</b>			15 600,00
<b>Amount tendered</b>			15 600,00
<b>Change</b>			0,00
<b>VAT included @ 14%</b>			1 915,79
<b>E &amp; OE</b>			

- (3) On 18 January 20.6 Mr B Sithole rendered services to Mrs B Mini and issued original tax invoice number 0005 to her. Mrs B Mini paid R2 600 (VAT inclusive) cash and receipt number 0006 was issued to her. Mrs S Peterson deposited the money received into the bank account on 19 January 20.6.
- (4) On 20 January 20.6 Mr S Big bought electric switches, fittings and insulation tape. He has purchased:
- 5 rolls of insulation tape (IT1001) @ R4,275 per roll
  - 10 plug switches (PS1002) @ R8,664 per switch
  - 6 light switches (LS1002) @ R7,1136 per switch
  - 6 light fittings (LF1002) @ R46,2384 per fitting

He paid R430 cash, which will be deposited by Mrs S Peterson on 21 January 20.6.

(5) On 21 January 20.6 Mr B Strong bought electric cable and fittings to be installed in his new home. He purchased:

- 40 m of three-phase cable (EC1003) @ R18,525 per meter
- 10 rolls of insulation tape (IT1001) @ R4,275 per roll
- 50 plug switches (PS1002) @ R8,664 per switch
- 45 light switches (LS1002) @ R7,1136 per switch
- 30 light fittings (LF1002) @ R46,2384 per fitting
- 10 fluorescent light fittings (FLF1002) @ R113,9886 per fitting

Mr B Sithole installed the electric cable and fittings in Mr B Strong's new home and issued original tax invoice number 0006 to him for R2 600,00. Mr B Strong paid the amount for the electric cable and fittings, R4 064,10 and the service rendered, R2 600,00 cash and receipt number 0007 was issued to him. The money will be deposited on 22 January 20.6.

(6) On 22 January 20.6 the entity ordered some fittings and switches from Huge Wholesalers. Since the first payment was made via the internet and it was for the significant amount of R38 500,08, they will now accept cheques from BS Electrical. Mrs S Peterson received the following delivery and paid by cheque number 0008.

<b>HUGE WHOLESALERS</b>							
1667 Marine Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 336-3433		VAT registration number 5591223986			P O Box 1550 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 336-3434		
<b>Date:</b> 22 January 20.6		<b>DELIVERY NOTE</b>			<b>No:</b> SP6058		
<b>Supplied to:</b> BS Electrical 499 Tshwane Drive Pretoria					P O Box 392 PRETORIA 0001		
Code	Description	Qty	Unit price (excl.)		Total price		Checked
IT1001	Insulation tape	1 box	300	00	300	00	√
LF1002	Light fittings	2 boxes	3 245	00	6 490	00	√
FLF1002	Fluorescent light fittings	1 box	7 999	00	7 999	00	√
LS1002	Light switches	2 boxes	998	00	1 996	00	√
PS1002	Plug switches	2 boxes	1 215	00	2 430	00	√
	VAT @ 14%				19 215	00	
					2 690	10	
<b>Total</b>					21 905	10	
<b>VAT included @ 14%</b>					2 690	10	
<b>Note:</b> Discount of 20% if paid on delivery.							
Checked by: Mrs S Peterson		Signature: S Peterson			Date: 22 January 20.6		
<b>E &amp; OE</b>							

<b>HUGE WHOLESALERS</b>			
1667 Marine Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 336-3433		VAT registration number 5591223986	P O Box 1550 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012)336-3434
<b>Date:</b> 22 January 20.6		<b>TAX INVOICE</b>	<b>No:</b> 5996
<b>To:</b> <i>BS Electrical</i> 499 Tshwane Drive Pretoria VAT registration number 8960225750		Payment method <b>Cheque/debit card</b> Cash Credit card Account	
Code	Description	Qty	Total price
<i>IT1001</i>	<i>Insulation tape</i>	<i>1 box</i>	<i>300,00</i>
<i>LF1002</i>	<i>Light fittings</i>	<i>2 boxes</i>	<i>6 490,00</i>
<i>FLF1002</i>	<i>Fluorescent light fittings</i>	<i>1 box</i>	<i>7 999,00</i>
<i>LS1002</i>	<i>Light switches</i>	<i>2 boxes</i>	<i>1 996,00</i>
<i>PS1002</i>	<i>Plug switches</i>	<i>2 boxes</i>	<i>2 430,00</i>
			<i>19 215,00</i>
			<i>(3 843,00)</i>
			<i>15 372,00</i>
			<i>2 152,08</i>
<b>Invoice total</b>			<i>17 524,08</i>
<b>Amount tendered</b>			<i>17 524,08</i>
<b>Change</b>			<i>0,00</i>
<b>VAT included @ 14%</b>			<i>2 152,08</i>
<b>E &amp; OE</b>			

(7) On 23 January 20.6 Mrs S Peterson took R56 from the petty cash to buy stationery from Pen and Pencils.

<b>PEN AND PENCILS</b>	
23/01/20.6	
Till 02	
Pens 2 @ R14.00 BPI1001	28,00
Printing paper PP1003	28,00
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>56,00</b>
Cash	56,00
Change	0,00
14% BTW	R6,88
Slip no 0012	
VAT no 5690233875	
Thank you	

- (8) On 25 January Mrs S Peterson's salary was paid to her by issuing cheque number 0009 for R12 300.
- (9) On 29 January Mrs S Peterson issued cheque number 0010 for R106 to restore the petty cash impress amount to R200.

**Internal documents to be completed:**

Date		90-00-00-01	
To		<b>Helping Bank Limited</b>	
For		<b>Pretoria</b>	<b>Date:</b>
Balance	R		
Deposit	R	<b>Pay:</b>	<b>or Bearer</b>
Subtotal	R	<b>The sum of:</b>	
This cheque	R		
Balance	R		
		<i>B Sithole</i>	<i>S Peterson</i>
			<b>For: BS Electrical</b>
0006		<b>0006:900000•:9000 123456!!• 01</b>	

Date		90-00-00-01	
To		<b>Helping Bank Limited</b>	
For		<b>Pretoria</b>	<b>Date:</b>
Balance	R		
Deposit	R	<b>Pay:</b>	<b>or Bearer</b>
Subtotal	R	<b>The sum of:</b>	
This cheque	R		
Balance	R		
		<i>B Sithole</i>	<i>S Peterson</i>
			<b>For: BS Electrical</b>
0007		<b>0007:900000•:9000 123456!!• 01</b>	

Date		90-00-00-01	
To		<b>Helping Bank Limited</b>	
For		<b>Pretoria</b>	<b>Date:</b>
Balance	R		
Deposit	R	<b>Pay:</b>	<b>or Bearer</b>
Subtotal	R	<b>The sum of:</b>	
This cheque	R		
Balance	R		
		<i>B Sithole</i>	<i>S Peterson</i>
			<b>For: BS Electrical</b>
0008		<b>0008:900000•:9000 123456!!• 01</b>	

Date		90-00-00-01	
To		<b>Helping Bank Limited</b>	
For		<b>Pretoria</b>	<b>Date:</b>
Balance	R		
Deposit	R	<b>Pay:</b>	<b>or Bearer</b>
Subtotal	R	<b>The sum of:</b>	
This cheque	R		
Balance	R		
		<i>B Sithole</i>	<i>S Peterson</i>
		<b>For: BS Electrical</b>	
0009		<b>0009:900000•:9000 123456!!• 01</b>	

Date		90-00-00-01	
To		<b>Helping Bank Limited</b>	
For		<b>Pretoria</b>	<b>Date:</b>
Balance	R		
Deposit	R	<b>Pay:</b>	<b>or Bearer</b>
Subtotal	R	<b>The sum of:</b>	
This cheque	R		
Balance	R		
		<i>B Sithole</i>	<i>S Peterson</i>
		<b>For: BS Electrical</b>	
00010		<b>00010:900000•:9000 123456!!• 01</b>	

<b>BS ELECTRICAL</b>			
499 Tshwane Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 429-3111		VAT registration number 8960225750	
		P O Box 392 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 429-3424	
<b>Date:</b>	<b>TAX INVOICE</b>	<b>No: 0005</b>	
<b>To:</b>		<u>Payment method</u> Cheque/debit card Cash Credit card Account	
<b>Code</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Qty</b>	<b>Total price</b>
<b>Invoice total</b>			
<b>Amount tendered</b>			
<b>Change</b>			
<b>VAT included @ 14%</b>			
<b>E &amp; OE</b>			

<b>BS ELECTRICAL</b>			
499 Tshwane Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 429-3111		VAT registration number 8960225750	P O Box 392 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 429-3424
<b>Date:</b>		<b>TAX INVOICE</b>	<b>No: 0006</b>
<b>To:</b>		<u>Payment method</u> Cheque/debit card Cash Credit card Account	
<b>Code</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Qty</b>	<b>Total price</b>
<b>Invoice total</b>			
<b>Amount tendered</b>			
<b>Change</b>			
<b>VAT included @ 14%</b>			
<b>E &amp; OE</b>			

No. 0006		Date:	
Received from:			
		<b>R</b>	<b>c</b>
Amount: Rand			
Cent:			
For:		<b>BS Electrical</b>	
Signature			

No. 0007		Date:	
Received from:		R	c
Amount: Rand			
Cent:			
For:		<b>BS Electrical</b>	
Signature			

<b>Helping Bank Limited</b>										Cheque Account Deposit Slip	
<b>Helpende Bank Beperk</b>										Tjekrekeningdeposiostrokie	
Credit Krediteer	Acc no Rek nr									Date Datum	
Name/Naam											
Bank notes		Banknote									
Nickel		Nikkel									
Bronze		Brons									
Money and postal orders		Poswissels en posorders									
SUBTOTAL/SUBTOTAAL											
	Drawer's name Trekker se naam	Bank		Branch no Taknr							
1											
2											
3											
4											
5											
6											
7											
		<b>Total/Totaal</b>									
<p>Cheques etc, as above, for collection to be available as cash when paid. While acting in good faith and exercising responsible care, the Bank will not accept responsibility for ensuring that depositors/ account holders have lawful title to cheques, etc collected.</p> <p>Tjeks ens, soos bo, ingehandig vir invordering wat na betaling as kontant beskikbaar sal wees. Alhoewel die Bank in goeie trou handel en alle redelike voorsorgmaatreëls tref, sal die Bank nie die verantwoordelikheid aanvaar om te verseker dat deposante/rekeninghouers regmatige titel op ingevorderde tjeks, ens het nie.</p>										<p>* For bank use</p> <p>* Vir bank gebruik</p>	
Deposited by/Gedeponeer deur:											



<b>Helping Bank Limited</b>										<b>Cheque Account Deposit Slip</b>	
<b>Helpende Bank Beperk</b>										<b>Tjekrekeningdeposiostrokie</b>	
Credit Krediteer	Acc no Rek nr									Date Datum	
Name/Naam											
Bank notes		Banknote									
Nickel		Nikkel									
Bronze		Brons									
Money and postal orders		Poswissels en posorders									
SUBTOTAL/SUBTOTAAL											
	Drawer's name Trekker se naam	Bank		Branch no Taknr							
1											
2											
3											
4											
5											
6											
7											
		<b>Total/Totaal</b>									
<p>Cheques etc, as above, for collection to be available as cash when paid. While acting in good faith and exercising responsible care, the Bank will not accept responsibility for ensuring that depositors/account holders have lawful title to cheques, etc collected.</p> <p>Tjeks ens, soos bo, ingehandig vir invordering wat na betaling as kontant beskikbaar sal wees. Alhoewel die Bank in goeie trou handel en alle redelike voorsorgmaatreëls tref, sal die Bank nie die verantwoordelikheid aanvaar om te verseker dat deposante/rekeninghouers regmatige titel op ingevorderde tjeks, ens het nie.</p>										<p>* For bank use</p> <p>* Vir bank gebruik</p>	
Deposited by/Gedeponeer deur:											

<b>Helping Bank Limited</b>													<b>Cheque Account Deposit Slip</b>				
<b>Helpende Bank Beperk</b>													<b>Tjekrekeningdepositostrokie</b>				
Credit Krediteer		Acc no Rek nr														Date Datum	
Name/Naam																	
Bank notes				Banknote													
Nickel				Nikkel													
Bronze				Brons													
Money and postal orders				Poswissels en posorders													
SUBTOTAL/SUBTOTAAL																	
	Drawer's name Trekker se naam			Bank			Branch no Taknr										
1																	
2																	
3																	
4																	
5																	
6																	
7																	
				<b>Total/Totaal</b>													
<p>Cheques etc, as above, for collection to be available as cash when paid. While acting in good faith and exercising responsible care, the Bank will not accept responsibility for ensuring that depositors/ account holders have lawful title to cheques, etc collected.</p> <p>Tjeks ens, soos bo, ingehandig vir invordering wat na betaling as kontant beskikbaar sal wees. Alhoewel die Bank in goeie trou handel en alle redelike voorsorgmaatreëls tref, sal die Bank nie die verantwoordelikheid aanvaar om te verseker dat deposante/rekeninghouers regmatige titel op ingevorderde tjeks, ens het nie.</p>													<p>* For bank use</p> <p>* Vir bank gebruik</p>				
Deposited by/Gedeponeer deur:																	

<b>BS ELECTRICAL</b>	
Till 01	
TOTAL	
Cash	
Change	
14% VAT	
Slip no 0002	
VAT no: 8960225750	
Thank you	

<b>BS ELECTRICAL</b>	
Till 01	
TOTAL	
Cash	
Change	
14% VAT	
Slip no 0003	
VAT no: 8960225750	
Thank you	

<b>PETTY CASH VOUCHER</b>	<b>No.</b>	
<b>Date:</b>	<b>Amount</b>	
<b>Required for:</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>c</b>
<b>Signature:</b>		
<b>Authorised by:</b>		

**REQUIRED**

After considering the above transactions by BS Electrical you must give an explanation of the transaction and complete the internal source documents of BS Electrical.

**SOLUTION: EXERCISE 1****1. Explanation:**

Computer equipment (an asset) increases and must be debited.

Paid by cheque; bank (an asset) decreases and must be credited.

Date	16/01/20.6	90-00-00-01	
To	Computer World	<u>NOT TRANSFERABLE</u>	
For	Computer equipment	Helping Bank Limited Pretoria	Date: 16 January 20.6
Balance	R		
Deposit	R	Pay: Computer World	<b>or-Bearer</b>
Subtotal	R	The sum of: Sixteen thousand two hundred and sixty nine rand only	16 269,00
This cheque	R16 269,00		
Balance	R		
		B Sithole	S Peterson
		<b>For: BS Electrical</b>	
0006		0006:900000•9000 123456!!• 01	

**2. Explanation:**

Computer equipment (an asset) increases and must be debited.

Paid by cheque; bank (an asset) decreases and must be credited.

Date	16/01/20.6	90-00-00-01	
To	IT Perfect	<u>NOT TRANSFERABLE</u>	
For	Computer equipment	Helping Bank Limited Pretoria	Date: 16 January 20.6
Balance	R		
Deposit	R	Pay: IT Perfect	<b>or-Bearer</b>
Subtotal	R	The sum of: Fifteen thousand six hundred rand only	15 600,00
This cheque	R15 600,00		
Balance	R		
		B Sithole	S Peterson
		<b>For: BS Electrical</b>	
0007		0006:900000•9000 123456!!• 01	

**3. Explanation:**

Received money for services rendered, therefore the bank account (an asset) increases and must be debited.

Services rendered is an income that increases the profit for the year. Therefore, equity increases and services rendered account must be credited.

<b>BS ELECTRICAL</b>			
499 Tshwane Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 429-3111		VAT registration number 8960225750	P O Box 392 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 429-3424
<b>Date:</b> 18 January 20.6	<b>TAX INVOICE</b>		<b>No:</b> 0005
<b>To:</b> Cash	<u>Payment method</u> Cheque/debit card <b>Cash</b> Credit card Account		
Code	Description	Qty	Total price
SR001	Electrical services VAT @ 14%	4 hrs	2 280,70 319,30
<b>Invoice total</b>			2 600,00
<b>Amount tendered</b>			2 600,00
<b>Change</b>			0,00
<b>VAT included @ 14%</b>			319,30
<b>E &amp; OE</b>			

**Calculations:****VAT on R2 280,70**

$$\frac{R2\ 280,70}{1} \times \frac{14}{100} = R319,30$$

No. 0006		Date: 18 January 20.6	
Received from:	Mrs B Mini		
		<b>R</b>	<b>c</b>
Amount: Rand	Two thousand six hundred rand only		
Cent:	None		2 600 00
For:	Services rendered (cash)		
Signature	S Peterson		<b>BS Electrical</b>

Helping Bank Limited Helpende Bank Beperk												Cheque Account Deposit Slip Tjekrekeningdeposiostrokie			
Credit Krediteer	Acc no Rek nr	9	0	0	0	-	1	2	3	4	5	6	Date Datum	19 January 20.6	
Name/Naam <i>BS Electrical</i>															
Bank notes		Banknote				2 600		00							
Nickel		Nikkel													
Bronze		Brons													
Money and postal orders		Poswissels en posorders													
SUBTOTAL/SUBTOTAAL												2 600		00	
	Drawer's name Trekker se naam	Bank		Branch no Taknr											
1															
2															
3															
4															
5															
6															
7															
		<b>Total/Totaal</b>				2 600		00							
Cheques etc, as above, for collection to be available as cash when paid. While acting in good faith and exercising responsible care, the Bank will not accept responsibility for ensuring that depositors/account holders have lawful title to cheques, etc collected.												* For bank use * Vir bank gebruik			
Tjeks ens, soos bo, ingehandig vir invordering wat na betaling as kontant beskikbaar sal wees. Alhoewel die Bank in goeie trou handel en alle redelike voorsorgmaatreëls tref, sal die Bank nie die verantwoordelikheid aanvaar om te verseker dat deposante/rekeninghouders regmatige titel op ingevorderde tjeks, ens het nie.															
Deposited by/Gedeponeer deur: <i>S Peterson</i>															

**4. Explanation:**

Received money; therefore the bank account (an asset) increases and must be debited.

Sales are an income that increases the profit for the year. Therefore, equity increases and sales account must be credited.

<b>BS Electrical</b>	
20/01/20.6	
Till 01	
Insulation tape 5 @ R4,275 IT1001	21,38
Plug switches 10 @ R8,664 PS1002	86,64
Light switches 6 @ R7,1136 LS1002	42,68
Light fittings 6 @ R46,2384 LF1002	277,43
TOTAL	428,13
Cash	430,00
Change	1,87
14% VAT	R52,58
Slip no 0002	
VAT no 8960225750	
Thank you	

**Calculations:**

- (a) 5 x R4,275 = R21,375 = R21,38  
 (b) 10 x R8,664 = R86,64  
 (c) 6 x R7,1136 = R42,6816 = R42,68  
 (d) 6 x R46,2384 = R277,4304 = R277,43

**VAT**

$$\frac{R428,13}{1} \times \frac{14}{114} = R52,5774 = R52,58$$

Helping Bank Limited Helpende Bank Beperk												Cheque Account Deposit Slip Tjekrekeningdeposiostrokie			
Credit Krediteer	Acc no Rek nr	9	0	0	0	-	1	2	3	4	5	6	Date Datum	21 January 20.6	
Name/Naam <i>BS Electrical</i>															
Bank notes		Banknote										420	00		
Nickel		Nikkel										8	00		
Bronze		Brons										0	13		
Money and postal orders		Poswissels en posorders													
SUBTOTAL/SUBTOTAAL												428	13		
	Drawer's name Trekker se naam	Bank						Branch no Taknr							
1															
2															
3															
4															
5															
6															
7															
<b>Total/Totaal</b>												428	13		
Cheques etc, as above, for collection to be available as cash when paid. While acting in good faith and exercising responsible care, the Bank will not accept responsibility for ensuring that depositors/ account holders have lawful title to cheques, etc collected.												* For bank use * Vir bank gebruik			
Tjeks ens, soos bo, ingehandig vir invordering wat na betaling as kontant beskikbaar sal wees. Alhoewel die Bank in goeie trou handel en alle redelike voorsorgmaatreëls tref, sal die Bank nie die verantwoordelikheid aanvaar om te verseker dat deposante/rekeninghouders regmatige titel op ingevorderde tjeks, ens het nie.															
Deposited by/Gedeponeer deur: <i>S Peterson</i>															

The amount of R428,13 consist of notes of R420,00, nickel of R8,00 (1 x R5, 1 x R2 and 1 x R1) and 13 cents bronze (1 x 10c, 1 x 2c and 1x 1c). Most of the cash registers will round the amount off to the nearest 5c because 1c and 2c are not available anymore. The amount will be R428,10.

### 5. Explanation:

Received money, therefore the bank account (an asset) increases and must be debited with the total amount of R4 064,10 + R2 600,00 = R6 664,10.

Sales is an income that increases the profit for the year. Therefore, equity increases and sales account must be credited with R4 064,10.

Services rendered is an income that increases the profit for the year. Therefore, equity increases and services rendered account must be credited with R2 600,00.



<b>BS Electrical</b>	
<b>21/01/20.6</b>	
<b>Till 01</b>	
Three-phase electric cable 40 m @ R18,525 EC1003	741,00
Insulation tape 10 @ R4,275 IT1001	42,75
Plug switches 50 @ R8,664 PS1002	433,20
Light switches 45 @ R7,1136 LS1002	320,11
Light fittings 30 @ R46,2384 LF1002	1 387,15
Fluorescent light fittings 10 @ R113,9886 FLF1002	1 139,89
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>4 064,10</b>
Cash	4 064,10
Change	0,00
14% VAT	R499,10
Slip no 0003	
VAT no 8960225750	
Thank you	

**Calculations:**

- (a) 40 x R18,525 = R741,00  
 (b) 10 x R4,275 = R42,75  
 (c) 50 x R8,664 = R433,20  
 (d) 45 x R7,1136 = R320,1120 = R320,11  
 (e) 30 x R46,2384 = R1 387,1520 = R1 387,15  
 (f) 10 x R113,9886 = R1 139,886 = R1 139,89

**VAT**

$$\frac{R4\ 064,10}{1} \times \frac{14}{114} = R499,10$$

<b>BS ELECTRICAL</b>			
499 Tshwane Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 429-3111		VAT registration number 8960225750	P O Box 392 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 429-3424
<b>Date:</b> 21 January 20.6		<b>TAX INVOICE</b>	
<b>To:</b> Cash		<b>Payment method</b> Cheque/debit card <b>Cash</b> Credit card Account	
Code	Description	Qty	Total price
SR001	Electrical services VAT @ 14%	4 hrs	2 280,70 319,30
<b>Invoice total</b>			2 600,00
<b>Amount tendered</b>			2 600,00
<b>Change</b>			0,00
<b>VAT included @ 14%</b>			319,30
<b>E &amp; OE</b>			

No. 0007		Date: 21 January 20.6	
Received from: Mr B Strong		<b>R</b>	<b>c</b>
Amount: Six thousand six hundred and sixty four rand Rand			
Cent: Ten cents		6 664	10
For: Inventory (Cash slip no. 0003 – R4 064,10) Services rendered (Cash invoice no 0006 – R2 600,00) (cash)		<b>BS Electrical</b>	
Signature S Peterson			

Helping Bank Limited Helpende Bank Beperk													Cheque Account Deposit Slip Tjekrekeningdeposiostrokie			
Credit Krediteer	Acc no Rek nr	9	0	0	0	-	1	2	3	4	5	6	Date Datum	22 January 20.6		
Name/Naam <i>BS Electrical</i>																
Bank notes		Banknote											6 660	00		
Nickel		Nikkel											4	00		
Bronze		Brons											0	10		
Money and postal orders		Poswissels en posorders														
SUBTOTAL/SUBTOTAAL													6 664	10		
	Drawer's name Trekker se naam	Bank					Branch no Taknr									
1																
2																
3																
4																
5																
6																
7																
<b>Total/Totaal</b>													6 664	10		
Cheques etc, as above, for collection to be available as cash when paid. While acting in good faith and exercising responsible care, the Bank will not accept responsibility for ensuring that depositors/account holders have lawful title to cheques, etc collected.													* For bank use * Vir bank gebruik			
Tjeks ens, soos bo, ingehandig vir invordering wat na betaling as kontant beskikbaar sal wees. Alhoewel die Bank in goeie trou handel en alle redelike voorsorgmaatreëls tref, sal die Bank nie die verantwoordelikheid aanvaar om te verseker dat deposante/rekeninghouers regmatige titel op ingevorderde tjeks, ens het nie.																
Deposited by/Gedeponeer deur: <i>S Peterson</i>																

## 6. Explanation:

Purchases is an expense that decreases the profit for the year. Therefore, equity decreases and the purchases account must be debited.

Paid by cheque; bank (an asset) decreases and must be credited.

Date	22/01/20.6	90-00-00-01	
To	Huge Wholesalers	<b>NOT TRANSFERABLE</b>	
For	Trading inventory	<b>Helping Bank Limited</b>	<b>Date: 22 January 20.6</b>
Balance	R	<b>Pretoria</b>	
Deposit	R	<b>Pay: Huge Wholesalers</b>	<b>or-Bearer</b>
Subtotal	R	<b>The sum of: Seventeen thousand five hundred and twenty four rand and eight cents</b>	17 524,08
This cheque	R17 524,08		
Balance	R		
		<i>B Sithole</i>	<i>S Peterson</i>
		<b>For: BS Electrical</b>	
0008		<b>0008:900000•:9000 123456!!• 01</b>	

### 7. Explanation:

Stationery is an expense that decreases the profit for the year. Therefore, equity decreases and the stationery account must be debited.

Petty cash (an asset) decreases and must be credited.

<b>PETTY CASH VOUCHER</b>	<b>No. 002</b>	
<b>Date:</b> 23 January 20.6	<b>Amount</b>	
<b>Required for:</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>c</b>
<i>Pen and Pencils – stationery</i>	56	00
<b>Signature:</b> <i>S Peterson</i>		
<b>Authorised by:</b> <i>B Sithole</i>		

### 8. Explanation:

Salary is an expense that decreases the profit for the year. Therefore, equity decreases and salaries account must be debited.

Paid by cheque; bank (an asset) decreases and must be credited.

Date	25/01/20.6	90-00-00-01	
To	Mrs S Peterson	<b>NOT TRANSFERABLE</b>	
For	Salary	<b>Helping Bank Limited</b> <b>Pretoria</b>	<b>Date: 25 January 20.6</b>
Balance	R		
Deposit	R	<b>Pay: Mrs S Peterson</b>	<b>or-Bearer</b>
Subtotal	R	<b>The sum of: Twelve thousand three hundred rand alone</b>	12 300,00
This cheque	R12 300,00		
Balance	R		
		<i>B Sithole</i>	<i>S Peterson</i>
		<b>For: BS Electrical</b>	
0009		<b>0009:900000•9000 123456!!• 01</b>	

### 9. Explanation:

Petty cash (an asset) increases and must be debited.

Paid by cheque; bank (an asset) decreases and must be credited.


Date	29/01/20.6	90-00-00-01	
To	Cash	<b>NOT TRANSFERABLE</b>	
For	Petty Cash	<b>Helping Bank Limited</b> <b>Pretoria</b>	<b>Date: 29 January 20.6</b>
Balance	R		
Deposit	R	<b>Pay: Cash</b>	<b>or-Bearer</b>
Subtotal	R	<b>The sum of: Hundred and six rand only</b>	106,00
This cheque	R106,00		
Balance	R		
		<i>B Sithole</i>	<i>S Peterson</i>
		<b>For: BS Electrical</b>	
0010		<b>0010:900000•9000 123456!!• 01</b>	

## EXERCISE 2

- Define a cash transaction.
- Define a source document.
- Name two types of source documents.
- Define internal source documents.
- Give examples of internal source documents.
- Define external source documents.
- Give examples of external source documents.

**SOLUTION: EXERCISE 2**

- (a) When transactions take place the entity will either receive or pay out money.
- (b) When a transaction takes place it is necessary to have a document as proof of the transaction, indicating details of the transaction.
- (c) Internal source documents and external source documents
- (d) Internal source documents are the documents prepared by the entity itself to record transactions with external clients.
- (e) Cash register rolls  
Duplicate cash sales invoices  
Duplicate receipts  
Cheque counterfoils  
Duplicate petty cash vouchers  
Duplicate bank deposit slips  
Telephone banking: Notice of payment  
Signed credit card slip
- (f) External source documents are the documents prepared by the other party to the transaction and received by the entity as proof that the transaction did take place.
- (g) Original cash purchases invoices  
Original receipts  
Cheques  
Cash slips

	<h3>SELF-ASSESSMENT</h3> <p>After you have worked through this learning unit, are you able to:</p>			
	• define a cash transaction?	☺	☹	☹
	• define a source document?	☺	☹	☹
	• name two types of source documents?	☺	☹	☹
	• define internal source documents?	☺	☹	☹
	• give examples of internal source documents?	☺	☹	☹
	• define external source documents?	☺	☹	☹
	• give examples of external source documents?	☺	☹	☹
	• explain the applicable source documents involved in different cash transactions?	☺	☹	☹
	• complete different internal source documents?	☺	☹	☹

If you have marked all ☺ you may continue to the next learning unit .

If you have marked any ☹ you have to *revise* that specific section.

If you have marked any ☹ you have to **re-study** that specific section.

**FAC1501**

**LEARNING UNIT 5**

**THE RECORDING OF  
CASH TRANSACTIONS**



**Introductory Financial  
Accounting**

## OVERVIEW

Learning outcomes .....	116
Key concepts .....	116
Assessment criteria .....	117
5.1 Introduction .....	117
5.2 The financial accounting cycle .....	117
5.3 Books of first entry: Journals.....	117
5.4 Cash journals .....	118
5.5 Posting to the general ledger .....	158
5.6 Exercise and solution.....	162
Self-assessment.....	189

## LEARNING OUTCOMES

After studying this learning unit you should be able to:

- prepare a cash receipts journal
- prepare a cash payments journal
- prepare a petty cash journal
- post from the cash receipts journal, cash payments journal and petty cash journal to the general ledger

## KEY CONCEPTS

- Books of first entry
- Cash journals
- Cash receipts journal
- Cash payments journal
- Petty cash journal
- Posting to the general ledger
- Grouping of general ledger accounts
- Drawings
- Split cheque





## ASSESSMENT CRITERIA

- The ability to record the cash transactions of a sole proprietor, in various journals applicable to cash transactions from source documents, is demonstrated.
- The ability to post to the general ledger accounts, after the journals applicable to cash transactions are closed off, is demonstrated.

## 5.1 INTRODUCTION

So far you have learned that financial accounting data are processed within a definite framework, which is known as the financial accounting cycle. For each transaction specific source documents are completed to do the necessary entries in the books of an entity. These documents must, after use, be filed for reference purposes for at least five years. These activities form part of the input activity of the financial accounting cycle.

The next step in the financial accounting cycle is the processing of data by recording the transactions.

## 5.2 THE FINANCIAL ACCOUNTING CYCLE

According to the diagram in learning unit 1 there must first be a transaction and then there must be proof that a transaction did take place, which must take the form of a source document. The source documents are used to record transactions in the books of first entry, namely the subsidiary journals. This is the first step in the processing phase. At the end of each month the subsidiary journals are closed off and posted to the applicable ledger accounts in the general ledger. In this learning unit we will focus on the processing of transaction data for cash transactions.

## 5.3 BOOKS OF FIRST ENTRY: JOURNALS

Although the ledger is the most important book in financial accounting for recording daily transactions, it would be impossible for an entity to enter every transaction directly into the ledger. This will make the ledger very bulky and unmanageable. In a manual system it also means that only one person can write up the books.

Therefore a system of subsidiary books, called *books of first entry*, is used. These subsidiary books enable a number of clerks to record transactions simultaneously on a daily basis from the source documents into the different subsidiary books. From these subsidiary books (called *journals*) data is posted daily or monthly to the appropriate ledger accounts.

All transactions are sorted and recorded in the relevant subsidiary book, for example cash transactions together, credit sales transactions together and credit purchases transactions together.

One of the principles of accounting is that **no entry is made in the ledger unless it has first been entered in a subsidiary book**. An entry in the ledger will therefore always have its origin in one of the subsidiary books. Even if a computerised system is used the transactions are first recorded in subsidiary journals before it is posted to the ledger.

In this learning unit you will concentrate on the subsidiary journals for cash transactions only. For cash transactions you will need:

- cash receipts journal for the receipt of money
- cash payment journal for the payment of money
- petty cash journal for the cash payment of small expenses within the entity

## 5.4 CASH JOURNALS

Consider the transactions with source documents discussed in learning unit 4. Determine whether the transaction is a receipt or a payment in the bank or the petty cash to determine whether it must be entered into the cash receipt journal, cash payment journal or petty cash journal.

### Transaction 1:

Mr B Sithole decided to deposit R100 000 in the entity's bank account to start the business. Mr B Sithole gave Mrs S Peterson a cheque for R100 000 to deposit into the current bank account of BS Electrical.

### Explanation:

Money is received and therefore the bank account (an asset) increases and must be debited.

The money is received from the owner, Mr B Sithole, and the entity owes the money to him. Therefore, the capital account (equity) increases and must be credited.

**Money received; therefore this transaction will be entered into the cash receipts journal.**

### Source documents:

- Duplicate receipt

No. 0001	Date: 2 January 20.6	
Received from: <i>Mr B Sithole</i>		
	<b>R</b>	<b>c</b>
Amount: <i>Hundred thousand rand only</i> Rand		
Cent: <i>None</i>	<i>100 000</i>	<i>00</i>
For: <i>Capital contribution by the owner (cheque)</i>	<b>BS Electrical</b>	
Signature: <i>S Peterson</i>		

- Duplicate deposit slip

Helping Bank Limited Helpende Bank Beperk													Cheque Account Deposit Slip Tjekrekeningdeposiostrokie			
Credit Krediteer	Acc no Rek nr	9	0	0	0	-	1	2	3	4	5	6	Date Datum	2 January 20.6		
Name/Naam <i>BS Electrical</i>																
Bank notes		Banknote														
Nickel		Nikkel														
Bronze		Brons														
Money and postal orders		Poswissels en posorders														
SUBTOTAL/SUBTOTAAL																
	Drawer's name Trekker se naam	Bank			Branch no Taknr											
1	<i>Mr B Sithole</i>	<i>Helping Bank Limited</i>			<i>90-00-00</i>								<i>100 000</i>	<i>00</i>		
2																
3																
4																
5																
6																
7																
													<b>Total/Totaal</b>		<i>100 000</i>	<i>00</i>
Cheques etc, as above, for collection to be available as cash when paid. While acting in good faith and exercising responsible care, the Bank will not accept responsibility for ensuring that depositors/account-holders have lawful title to cheques, etc collected.													* For bank use * Vir bank gebruik			
Tjeks ens, soos bo, ingehandig vir invordering wat na betaling as kontant beskikbaar sal wees. Alhoewel die Bank in goeie trou handel en alle redelike voorsorgmaatreëls tref, sal die Bank nie die verantwoordelikheid aanvaar om te verseker dat deposante/rekeninghouers regmatige titel op ingevorderde tjeks, ens het nie.																
Deposited by/Gedeponeer deur: <i>S Peterson</i>																

### Transaction 2:

On 2 January 20.6 BS Electrical bought a toolbox and tools to be used by Mr B Sithole from Big Builders for R10 000 (VAT inclusive) and paid by cheque number 0001.

### Explanation:

Tools and equipment (an asset) increases and must be debited.

Paid by cheque; bank (an asset) decreases and must be credited.

**Paid by cheque; therefore this transaction will be entered into the cash payments journal.**

**Source documents:**

- **Original cash invoice**

<b>BIG BUILDERS</b>			
900 Narrow Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 333–1615		VAT registration number 5590223986	P O Box 2176 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 333–1616
<b>Date:</b> 2 January 20.6		<b>TAX INVOICE</b>	<b>No:</b> 0273
<b>To:</b> BS Electrical 499 Tshwane Drive Pretoria VAT registration number 8960225750		<u>Payment method</u> <b>Cheque/debit card</b> Cash Credit card Account	
Code	Description	Qty	Total price
IBM1334	Tool box	1	4 626,75
IBM2043	Electrician tool kit	1	4 000,00
IBM6033	Screw driver	1	145,18
	VAT @ 14%		8 771,93 1 228,07
<b>Invoice total</b>			10 000,00
<b>Amount tendered</b>			10 000,00
<b>Change</b>			0,00
<b>VAT included @ 14%</b>			1 228,07
<b>E &amp; OE</b>			

- **Cheque counterfoil**

Date	02/01/20.6	<b>NOT TRANSFERABLE</b>		90–00–00–01
To	Big Builders	<b>Helping Bank Limited</b>		
For	Tools and equipment	<b>Pretoria</b>	<b>Date:</b> 2 January 20.6	
Balance	R			
Deposit	R	<b>Pay: Big Builders</b>	<b>or Bearer</b>	
Subtotal	R	<b>The sum of: Ten thousand rand only</b>		10 000,00
This cheque	R10 000,00			
Balance	R			
		<i>B Sithole</i>	<i>S Peterson</i>	
		<b>For: BS Electrical</b>		
0001		<b>0001:900000•9000 123456!!• 01</b>		

**Transaction 3:**

On 2 January 20.6 BS Electrical bought a cash register for R3 349,50 (VAT inclusive) by cheque number 0002, from Wiseman Traders and received cash invoice number 0578 from Wiseman Traders

to be retained for guarantee purposes. Mrs S Peterson negotiated for a discount of 10% because the cash register was paid by cheque.

### Explanation:

Tools and equipment (an asset) increases and must be debited.

Paid by cheque; bank (an asset) decreases and must be credited.

**Paid by cheque; therefore this transaction will be entered into the cash payments journal.**

### Source documents:

- **Original cash invoice**

<b>WISEMAN TRADERS</b>			
700 Straight Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 335-1515		VAT registration number 6702336097	P O Box 1165 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 335-1629
<b>Date:</b> 2 January 20.6		<b>TAX INVOICE</b>	<b>No:</b> 0578
<b>To:</b> Cash		<u>Payment method</u> <b>Cheque/debit card</b> Cash Credit card Account	
Code	Description	Qty	Total price
FCR1268	Fancy cash register – 10% discount	1	2 938,16 (293,82)
	VAT @ 14%		2 644,34 370,21
<b>Invoice total</b>			3 014,55
<b>Amount tendered</b>			3 014,55
<b>Change</b>			0,00
<b>VAT included @ 14%</b>			370,21
<b>E &amp; OE</b>			

● **Cheque counterfoil**

Date	02/01/20.6	90-00-00-01	
To	Wiseman Traders	<b>NOT TRANSFERABLE</b>	
For	Tools and equipment	<b>Helping Bank Limited</b>	<b>Date: 2 January 20.6</b>
Balance	R	<b>Pretoria</b>	
Deposit	R	<b>Pay: Wiseman Traders</b>	<b>or Bearer</b>
Subtotal	R	<b>The sum of: Three thousand and fourteen rand and fifty-five cents</b>	3 014,55
This cheque	R3 014,55		
Balance	R		
		<i>B Sithole</i>	<i>S Peterson</i>
		<b>For: BS Electrical</b>	
0002		<b>0002:900000::9000 123456!!• 01</b>	

**Transaction 4:**

On 3 January 20.6 Mrs S Peterson issued cheque number 0003 for R300 to be the cash float for the cash register. The cheque was cashed for small change to be kept in the cash register.

**Explanation:**

Cash float (an asset) increases and must be debited.

Paid by cheque; bank (an asset) decreases and must be credited.

**Paid by cheque; therefore this transaction will be entered into the cash payments journal.**

**Source documents:**

● **Cheque counterfoil**

Date	03/01/20.6	90-00-00-01	
To	Cash	<b>NOT TRANSFERABLE</b>	
For	Cash float	<b>Helping Bank Limited</b>	<b>Date: 3 January 20.6</b>
Balance	R	<b>Pretoria</b>	
Deposit	R	<b>Pay: Cash</b>	<b>or Bearer</b>
Subtotal	R	<b>The sum of: Three hundred rand only</b>	300,00
This cheque	R300,00		
Balance	R		
		<i>B Sithole</i>	<i>S Peterson</i>
		<b>For: BS Electrical</b>	
0003		<b>0003:900000::9000 123456!!• 01</b>	

**Transaction 5:**

Received an invoice from Mr B Sithole for the rent for January. The rent of R2 000 (VAT inclusive) for occupying part of a building situated on Mr B Sithole's land was paid by issuing cheque number 0004 on 4 January 20.6

**Explanation:**

Rent paid is an expense that decreases the profit for the year. Therefore, equity decreases and rent paid account must be debited.

Paid money for rent, therefore, the bank account (an asset) decreases and must be credited.

**Paid by cheque; therefore this transaction will be entered into the cash payments journal.**

**Source documents:**

- Cheque counterfoil

Date	04/01/20.6	90-00-00-01	
To	Mr B Sithole	<b>NOT TRANSFERABLE</b>	
For	Rent paid	Date: 4 January 20.6	
Balance	R		
Deposit	R	Helping Bank Limited Pretoria	
Subtotal	R	Pay: Mr B Sithole <b>or Bearer</b>	
This cheque	R2 000,00	The sum of: Two thousand rand only	
Balance	R	2 000,00	
		B Sithole                      S Peterson	
		For: BS Electrical	
0004		0004:900000•:9000 123456!!• 01	

**Transaction 6:**

On 10 January 20.6, Mr B Sithole rendered services to three different clients, Mr P Lucky, Mrs V Happy and Mr T Busy. Original sales invoices number 0001, 0002, and 0003 were issued to them respectively. They have paid the amounts and receipt numbers 0002 and 0003 were issued to Mr P Lucky and Mrs V Happy respectively. Mrs S Peterson only deposited these amounts into the bank account on 11 January 20.6.

**Explanation:**

Received money for services rendered. Therefore, the bank account (an asset) increases and must be debited.

Services rendered is an income that increases the profit for the year. Therefore, equity increases and services rendered account must be credited.

Money received; therefore this transaction will be entered into the cash receipts journal.

**Source documents:**

- Duplicate cash sales invoices

<b>BS ELECTRICAL</b>			
499 Tshwane Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 429–3111		VAT registration number 8960225750	P O Box 392 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 429–3424
<b>Date:</b> 10 January 20.6		<b>TAX INVOICE</b>	<b>No:</b> 0001
<b>To:</b> Cash		<u>Payment method</u> Cheque/debit card <b>Cash</b> Credit card Account	
Code	Description	Qty	Total price
SR001	<i>Electrical services – 10% cash discount</i>	2 hours	1 140,36 (114,04)
	VAT @ 14%		1 026,32 143,68
<b>Invoice total</b>			1 170,00
<b>Amount tendered</b>			1 200,00
<b>Change</b>			30,00
<b>VAT included @ 14%</b>			143,68
<b>E &amp; OE</b>			



<b>BS ELECTRICAL</b>			
499 Tshwane Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 429-3111		VAT registration number 8960225750	P O Box 392 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 429-3424
<b>Date:</b> 10 January 20.6		<b>TAX INVOICE</b>	<b>No:</b> 0002
<b>To:</b> Cash		Payment method <b>Cheque/debit card</b> Cash Credit card Account	
Code	Description	Qty	Total price
SR001	Electrical services – 10% cash discount  VAT @ 14%	5 hours	2 850,88 (285,09)
			2 565,79 359,21
<b>Invoice total</b>			2 925,00
<b>Amount tendered</b>			2 925,00
<b>Change</b>			0,00
<b>VAT included @ 14%</b>			359,21
<b>E &amp; OE</b>			

<b>BS ELECTRICAL</b>			
499 Tshwane Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 429-3111		VAT registration number 8960225750	P O Box 392 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 429-3424
<b>Date:</b> 10 January 20.6		<b>TAX INVOICE</b>	<b>No:</b> 0003
<b>To:</b> Cash		Payment method Cheque/debit card Cash <b>Credit card</b> Account	
Code	Description	Qty	Total price
SR001	Electrical services – 5% cash discount  VAT @ 14%	6 hours	3 421,05 (171,05)
			3 250,00 455,00
<b>Invoice total</b>			3 705,00
<b>Amount tendered</b>			3 705,00
<b>Change</b>			0,00
<b>VAT included @ 14%</b>			455,00
<b>E &amp; OE</b>			



- Duplicate deposit slip

Helping Bank Limited Helpende Bank Beperk													Cheque Account Deposit Slip Tjekrekeningdepositostrokie			
Credit Krediteer	Acc no Rek nr	9	0	0	0	-	1	2	3	4	5	6	Date Datum	11 January 20.6		
Name/Naam <i>BS Electrical</i>																
Bank notes		Banknote											1 170		00	
Nickel		Nikkel														
Bronze		Brons														
Money and postal orders		Poswissels en posorders														
SUBTOTAL/SUBTOTAAL													1 170		00	
	Drawer's name Trekker se naam	Bank			Branch no Taknr											
1	<i>Mrs V Happy</i>	<i>Growing Bank Limited</i>			<i>90-05-60</i>							2 925		00		
2																
3																
4																
5																
6																
7																
<b>Total/Totaal</b>													4 095		00	
Cheques etc, as above, for collection to be available as cash when paid. While acting in good faith and exercising responsible care, the Bank will not accept responsibility for ensuring that depositors/account holders have lawful title to cheques, etc collected.													* For bank use * Vir bank gebruik			
Tjeks ens, soos bo, ingehandig vir invordering wat na betaling as kontant beskikbaar sal wees. Alhoewel die Bank in goeie trou handel en alle redelike voorsorgmaatreëls tref, sal die Bank nie die verantwoordelikheid aanvaar om te verseker dat deposante/rekeninghouders regmatige titel op ingevorderde tjeks, ens het nie.																
Deposited by/Gedeponeer deur: <i>S Peterson</i>																

### Transaction 7:

On 15 January 20.6 Mr B Sithole decided that he would buy the different types of cables and other fittings necessary for the services he is rendering and keep it in the entity's inventory. Clients could then buy the necessary cable and fittings from BS Electrical and Mr B Sithole could advise them on what is needed for a specific service rendered. BS Electrical would get 20% discount if the entity buys at bulk from Huge Wholesalers.

Mr B Sithole handed Mrs S Peterson the following list of items she had to order from Huge Wholesalers:

- 1 000 m of two-phase electrical cable
- 1 000 m of three-phase electrical cable
- 1 box of 100 rolls of insulation tape

- 2 boxes of 100 light fittings each
- 1 box of 100 fluorescent light fittings
- 2 boxes of 100 light switches each
- 2 boxes of 100 plug switches each

The total amount of the order was R48 125,10 before discount. This amount included VAT at 14%. Mrs S Peterson placed an order and made an internet payment of R38 500,08 directly into the bank account of Huge Wholesalers. After she had faxed the proof in the form of a notice of payment through to Mr P Moodley, the sales manager at Huge Wholesalers, they delivered the goods ordered.

The delivered goods were checked by Mrs S Peterson to see if everything was delivered and she signed the delivery note. The original delivery note and original cash invoice were handed to her and the delivery guy kept the duplicate signed delivery note and cash invoice.

**Explanation:**

Purchases is an expense that decreases the profit for the year. Therefore, equity decreases and purchases account must be debited.

Paid by internet; bank (an asset) decreases and must be credited.

**Paid by internet; therefore this transaction will be entered into the cash payments journal.**

## Source documents:

- Original delivery note

HUGE WHOLESALERS							
1667 Marine Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 336-3433		VAT Registration number 5591223986			P O Box 1550 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 336-3434		
<b>Date:</b> 15 January 20.6		<b>DELIVERY NOTE</b>			<b>No:</b> SP6058		
<b>Supplied to:</b> BS Electrical 499 Tshwane Drive Pretoria					P O Box 392 PRETORIA 0001		
Code	Description	Qty	Unit price (VAT excl.)		Total price		Checked
EC1002	Two-phase electrical cable	1 000 m	10	00	10 000	00	√
EC1003	Three-phase electrical cable	1 000 m	13	00	13 000	00	√
IT1001	Insulation tape	1 box	300	00	300	00	√
LF1002	Light fittings	2 boxes	3 245	00	6 490	00	√
FLF1002	Fluorescent light fittings	1 box	7 999	00	7 999	00	√
LS1002	Light switches	2 boxes	998	00	1 996	00	√
PS1002	Plug switches	2 boxes	1 215	00	2 430	00	√
	VAT @ 14%				42 215	00	
					5 910	10	
<b>Total</b>					48 125	10	
<b>VAT included @ 14%</b>					5 910	10	
<b>Note:</b> Discount of 20% applicable							
Checked by: Mrs S Peterson		Signature: S Peterson			Date: 15 January 20.6		
<b>E &amp; OE</b>							

- Original cash invoice

HUGE WHOLESALERS			
1667 Marine Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 336–3433		VAT registration number 5591223986	P O Box 1550 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 336–3434
<b>Date:</b> 15 January 20.6		<b>TAX INVOICE</b>	<b>No:</b> 5996
<b>To:</b> BS Electrical 499 Tshwane Drive Pretoria VAT registration number 8960225750		<u>Payment method</u> Cheque/debit card <b>Cash</b> Credit card Account	
Code	Description	Qty	Total price
EC1002	Two-phase electrical cable	1 000 m	10 000,00
EC1003	Three-phase electrical cable	1 000 m	13 000,00
IT1001	Insulation tape	1 box	300,00
LF1002	Light fittings	2 boxes	6 490,00
FLF1002	Fluorescent light fittings	1 box	7 999,00
LS1002	Light switches	2 boxes	1 996,00
PS1002	Plug switches	2 boxes	2 430,00
			42 215,00
	– 20% cash discount		(8 443,00)
	VAT @ 14%		33 772,00 4 728,08
<b>Invoice total</b>			38 500,08
<b>Amount tendered</b>			38 500,08
<b>Change</b>			0,00
<b>VAT included @ 14%</b>			4 728,08
<b>E &amp; OE</b>			

- **Internet banking: Notice of payment**

<b>HELPING BANK LIMITED</b>	
<b>Internet Banking: Notice of Payment</b>	<b>15 January 20.6</b>
Dear BS Electrical	
<b>Subject: Notice of Payment: Huge Wholesalers</b>	
Please be advised that a payment has been made as indicated below.	
Transaction number:	<b>905520X611363667435578</b>
Payment date:	<b>20.6/01/15</b>
Payment made by:	<b>BS Electrical</b>
Payment made to:	<b>Huge Wholesalers</b>
Beneficiary account number:	<b>9000522968</b>
For the amount of	<b>R38 500,08</b>
Reference on beneficiary statement:	<b>BS Electrical</b>
<p>Please remember that the following apply to internet banking payments to non-Helping bank accounts.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Payments made on weekdays before 15:30 will be credited to the receiving bank account by midnight of the same day.</li> <li>• Payments made on weekdays after 15:30 will be credited by midnight the following day.</li> <li>• Payments made on a Saturday, Sunday or Public holiday will be credited to the account by midnight of the 1st following weekday.</li> </ul>	
<p>If you need more information or assistance, please call Helping Bank Limited on 08600 08600 or +27 11 276 7900 (International calls).</p>	
<p>Yours sincerely  <b>General Manager: Digital Channel</b></p>	
<p>This document is intended for use by the addressee and is privileged and confidential. If the transmission has been misdirected to you, please contact us immediately. Thank you.</p>	
<p>Helping Bank Limited, Reg No 19X0/005959/05</p>	

### Transaction 8:

On 16 January 20.6, Mrs S Peterson issued cheque number 0005 for R200 as the impress amount to start the petty cash float of BS Electrical. The cheque was cashed and the money is kept by Mrs S Peterson who acted as petty cashier.

### Explanation:

Petty cash (an asset) increases and must be debited.

Paid by cheque; bank (an asset) decreases and must be credited.

**Money received – petty cash; therefore this transaction will be entered into the petty cash journal.**

**Paid by cheque; therefore this transaction will be entered into the cash payments journal.**

**Source documents:**

• **Cheque counterfoil**

Date	16/01/20.6	90-00-00-01	
To	Cash	<b>Helping Bank Limited</b>	
For	Petty cash	<b>Pretoria</b>	<b>Date: 16 January 20.6</b>
Balance	R		
Deposit	R	<b>Pay: Cash</b>	<b>or Bearer</b>
Subtotal	R	<b>The sum of: Two hundred rand only</b>	
This cheque	R200,00		200,00
Balance	R		
		<i>B Sithole</i>	<i>S Peterson</i>
		<b>For: BS Electrical</b>	
0005		<b>0005:900000-9000 123456!!- 01</b>	

**Transaction 9:**

On 16 January 20.6 BS Electrical bought a computer worth R16 269 (VAT included) for which it paid by cheque number 0006 and received tax invoice number B145 from Computer World.

**Explanation:**

Computer equipment (an asset) increases and must be debited.

Paid by cheque; bank (an asset) decreases and must be credited.

**Paid by cheque; therefore this transaction will be entered into the cash payments journal.**



## Source documents:

- Original cash invoice

COMPUTER WORLD			
590 Delphi Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 435-1615		VAT registration number 7704337090	P O Box 5116 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 435-1639
<b>Date:</b> 16 January 20.6		<b>TAX INVOICE</b>	<b>No:</b> B145
<b>To:</b> BS Electrical 499 Tshwane Drive Pretoria VAT registration number 8960225750			<u>Payment method</u> <b>Cheque/debit card</b> Cash Credit card Account
Code	Description	Qty	Total price
C755	Compy 755 computer VAT @ 14%	1	14 271,05 1 997,95
<b>Invoice total</b>			16 269,00
<b>Amount tendered</b>			16 269,00
<b>Change</b>			0,00
<b>VAT included @ 14%</b>			1 997,95
<b>E &amp; OE</b>			

- Cheque counterfoil

Date	16/01/20.6	90-00-00-01	
To	Computer World	<b><u>NOT TRANSFERABLE</u></b>	
For	Computer equipment	Helping Bank Limited Pretoria	Date: 16 January 20.6
Balance	R		
Deposit	R	Pay: Computer World	<b>or Bearer</b>
Subtotal	R	<b>The sum of:</b> Sixteen thousand two hundred and sixty nine rand only	16 269,00
This cheque	R16 269,00		
Balance	R		
		B Sithole	S Peterson
		<b>For: BS Electrical</b>	
0006		0006:900000•:9000 123456!!• 01	

**Transaction 10:**

On 16 January 20.6 the entity bought an accounting computer program to manage their inventory from IT Perfect for R15 600 (VAT included). It received original tax invoice number 1569 from IT Perfect and paid IT Perfect by cheque number 0007.

**Explanation:**

Computer equipment (an asset) increases and must be debited.

Paid by cheque; bank (an asset) decreases and must be credited.

**Paid by cheque; therefore this transaction will be entered into the cash payments journal.**

**Source documents:**

- **Original cash invoice**

IT PERFECT			
730 Windows Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 997-1010		VAT registration number 6805736098	P O Box 1069 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 997-1111
<b>Date:</b> 16 January 20.6		<b>TAX INVOICE</b>	<b>No:</b> 1569
<b>To:</b> BS Electrical 499 Tshwane Drive Pretoria VAT registration number 8960225750			<b>Payment method</b> <b>Cheque/debit card</b> Cash Credit card Account
Code	Description	Qty	Total price
PE101	Point of sales inventory programme VAT @ 14%	1	13 684,21 1 915,79
<b>Invoice total</b>			15 600,00
<b>Amount tendered</b>			15 600,00
<b>Change</b>			0,00
<b>VAT included @ 14%</b>			1 915,79
<b>E &amp; OE</b>			

- **Cheque counterfoil**

Date	16/01/20.6	90-00-00-01	
To	IT Perfect	<b>NOT TRANSFERABLE</b>	
For	Computer equipment	Helping Bank Limited	Date: 16 January 20.6
Balance	R	Pretoria	
Deposit	R	Pay: IT Perfect	<b>or-Bearer</b>
Subtotal	R	The sum of: Fifteen thousand six hundred rand only	15 600,00
This cheque	R15 600,00		
Balance	R		
		B Sithole	S Peterson
		<b>For: BS Electrical</b>	
0007		0007:900000•9000 123456!!• 01	

### Transaction 11:

On 17 January 20.6, Mrs S Peterson bought postage stamps and took R50 (VAT inclusive) out of petty cash to pay for it.

### Explanation:

Postage is an expense that decreases the profit for the year. Therefore, equity decreases and postage account must be debited.

Petty cash (an asset) decreases and must be credited.

**Money paid cash – petty cash; therefore this transaction will be entered into the petty cash journal.**

### Source documents:

- Petty cash voucher

<b>PETTY CASH VOUCHER</b>	<b>No. 001</b>	
<b>Date:</b> 17 January 20.6	<b>Amount</b>	
<b>Required for:</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>c</b>
Postmaster – postage stamps	50	00
<b>Signature:</b> S Peterson		
<b>Authorised by:</b> B Sithole		

**Transaction 12:**

On 17 January 20.6, Mr T Wiseman bought electrical cables and fittings to be installed by Mr B Sithole in his new home. He purchased:

- 50 m two phase electrical cable, R712,50
- 4 rolls insulation tape, R17,10
- 27 plug switches, R233,93
- 20 light switches, R142,27
- 20 light fittings, R924,77
- 3 fluorescent light fittings, R341,96

Mr B Sithole delivered and installed the electrical cables and fittings. Original tax invoice number 0004 was issued to Mr T Wiseman. Mr T Wiseman paid both amounts by cheque (Growing Bank Limited – branch code 90–05–60). Mrs S Peterson issued receipt no 0005. The amount was deposited into the current bank account on 18 January 20.6.

**Explanation:**

Received money; therefore the bank account (an asset) increases and must be debited with the total amount of  $R2\,372,53 + R9\,750,00 = R12\,122,53$ .

Sales is an income that increases the profit for the year. Therefore, equity increases and sales account must be credited with R2 081,17.

Services rendered is an income that increases the profit for the year. Therefore, equity increases and services rendered account must be credited with R8 552,63.

**Money received; therefore this transaction will be entered into the cashreceipts journal.**

**Source documents:**

- Cash register roll

<b>BS ELECTRICAL</b>	
17/01/20.6	
Till 01	
Two-phase electrical cable 50 m EC1002	712,50
Insulation tape 4 rolls IT1001	17,10
Plug switches 27 PS1002	233,93
Light switches 20 LS1002	142,27
Light fittings 20 LF1002	924,77
Fluorescent light fittings 3 FLF1002	341,96
TOTAL	2 372,53
Cash	2 372,53
Change	0,00
14% VAT	R291,36
Slip no 0001	
VAT no 8960225750	
Thank you	

- Duplicate cash sales invoice

BS ELECTRICAL			
499 Tshwane Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 429-3111		VAT registration number 8960225750	
		P O Box 392 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 429-3424	
<b>Date:</b> 17 January 20.6		<b>TAX INVOICE</b>	
		<b>No:</b> 0004	
<b>To:</b> Mr T Wiseman 25 Park Street Pretoria VAT registration number 4301235678		<u>Payment method</u> <b>Cheque/debit card</b> Cash Credit card Account	
Code	Description	Qty	Total price
SR001	Electrical services VAT @ 14%	15	8 552,63 1 197,37
<b>Invoice total</b>			9 750,00
<b>Amount tendered</b>			9 750,00
<b>Change</b>			0,00
<b>VAT included @ 14%</b>			1 197,37
<b>E &amp; OE</b>			

- Duplicate receipt

No. 0005		Date: 17 January 20.6	
Received from: Mr T Wiseman			
		<b>R</b>	<b>c</b>
Amount: Twelve thousand one hundred and twenty two rand Rand			
Cent: Fifty three cents		12 122	53
For: Inventory (Cash slip no. 0001 – R2 372,53) Services rendered (Cash invoice no. 0004 – R9 750,00) (cheque)		<b>BS Electrical</b>	
Signature: S Peterson			

- Duplicate deposit slip

Helping Bank Limited Helpende Bank Beperk													Cheque Account Deposit Slip Tjekrekeningdepositostrokie			
Credit Krediteer	Acc no Rek nr	9	0	0	0	-	1	2	3	4	5	6	Date Datum	18 January 20.6		
Name/Naam <i>BS Electrical</i>																
Bank notes				Banknote												
Nickel				Nikkel												
Bronze				Brons												
Money and postal orders				Poswissels en posorders												
SUBTOTAL/SUBTOTAAL																
	Drawer's name Trekker se naam			Bank			Branch no Taknr									
1	<i>Mr T Wiseman</i>			<i>Growing Bank Limited</i>			<i>90-05-60</i>							<i>12 122</i>	<i>53</i>	
2																
3																
4																
5																
6																
7																
										<b>Total/Totaal</b>				<i>12 122</i>	<i>53</i>	
Cheques etc, as above, for collection to be available as cash when paid. While acting in good faith and exercising responsible care, the Bank will not accept responsibility for ensuring that depositors/account holders have lawful title to cheques, etc collected.													* For bank use * Vir bank gebruik			
Tjeks ens, soos bo, ingehandig vir invordering wat na betaling as kontant beskikbaar sal wees. Alhoewel die Bank in goeie trou handel en alle redelike voorsorgmaatreëls tref, sal die Bank nie die verantwoordelikheid aanvaar om te verseker dat deposante/rekeninghouders regmatige titel op ingevorderde tjeks, ens het nie.																
Deposited by/Gedeponeer deur: <i>S Peterson</i>																

### Transaction 13:

On 18 January 20.6 Mr B Sithole rendered services to Mrs B Mini and issued original tax invoice number 0005 to her. Mrs B Mini paid R2 600 (VAT inclusive) cash and Mrs S Peterson issued receipt number 0006 to her. Mrs S Peterson deposited the money received into the bank account on 19 January 20.6.

### Explanation:

Received money for services rendered; therefore the bank account (an asset) increases and must be debited.

Services rendered is an income that increases the profit for the year. Therefore, equity increases and services rendered account must be credited.

**Money received; therefore this transaction will be entered into the cash receipts journal.**

**Source documents:**

- Duplicate cash sales invoice

<b>BS ELECTRICAL</b>			
499 Tshwane Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 429-3111		VAT registration number 8960225750	P O Box 392 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 429-3424
<b>Date:</b> 18 January 20.6		<b>TAX INVOICE</b>	<b>No:</b> 0005
<b>To:</b> Cash		<u>Payment method</u> Cheque/debit card <b>Cash</b> Credit card Account	
Code	Description	Qty	Total price
SR001	Electrical services VAT @ 14%	4	2 280,70 319,30
<b>Invoice total</b>			2 600,00
<b>Amount tendered</b>			2 600,00
<b>Change</b>			0,00
<b>VAT included @ 14%</b>			319,30
<b>E &amp; OE</b>			



- Duplicate receipt

No. 0006		Date: 18 January 20.6	
Received from: <i>Mrs B Mini</i>		<b>R</b>	<b>c</b>
Amount: <i>Two thousand six hundred rand only</i> Rand			
Cent: <i>None</i>		2 600	00
For: <i>Services rendered (cash)</i>		<b>BS Electrical</b>	
Signature: <i>S Peterson</i>			

- Duplicate deposit slip

<b>Helping Bank Limited</b>										Cheque Account Deposit Slip					
<b>Helpende Bank Beperk</b>										Tjekrekeningdeposiostrokke					
Credit Krediteer	Acc no Rek nr	9	0	0	0	-	1	2	3	4	5	6	Date Datum	19 January 20.6	
Name/Naam <i>BS Electrical</i>															
Bank notes		Banknote										2 600		00	
Nickel		Nikkel													
Bronze		Brons													
Money and postal orders		Poswissels en posorders													
SUBTOTAL/SUBTOTAAL												2 600		00	
	Drawer's name Trekker se naam	Bank		Branch no Taknr											
1															
2															
3															
4															
5															
6															
7															
		<b>Total/Totaal</b>										2 600		00	
Cheques etc, as above, for collection to be available as cash when paid. While acting in good faith and exercising responsible care, the Bank will not accept responsibility for ensuring that depositors/account holders have lawful title to cheques, etc collected.												* For bank use * Vir bank gebruik			
Tjeks ens, soos bo, ingehandig vir invordering wat na betaling as kontant beskikbaar sal wees. Alhoewel die Bank in goeie trou handel en alle redelike voorsorgmaatreëls tref, sal die Bank nie die verantwoordelikheid aanvaar om te verseker dat deposante/rekeninghouers regmatige titel op ingevorderde tjeks, ens het nie.															
Deposited by/Gedeponeer deur: <i>S Peterson</i>															

**Transaction 14:**

On 20 January 20.6, Mr S Big bought electric switches, fittings and insulation tape. He purchased:

- 5 rolls of insulation tape (IT1001) for a total of R21,38
- 10 plug switches (PS1002) for a total of R86,64
- 6 light switches (LS1002) for a total of R42,68
- 6 light fittings (LF1002) for a total of R277,43

He paid with R430 cash and the money was deposited by Mrs S Peterson on 21 January 20.6.

**Explanation:**

Received money; therefore the bank account (an asset) increases and must be debited.

Sales is an income that increases the profit for the year. Therefore, equity increases and sales account must be credited.

**Money received; therefore this transaction will be entered into the cash receipts journal.**

**Source documents:**

- **Cash register roll**

<b>BS ELECTRICAL</b>	
20/01/20.6	
Till 01	
Insulation tape 5 rolls IT1001	21,38
Plug switches 10 PS1002	86,64
Light switches 6 LS1002	42,68
Light fittings 6 LF1002	277,43
<b>TOTAL</b>	<b>428,13</b>
Cash	430,00
Change	1,87
14% VAT	R52,58
Slip no 0002	
VAT no 8960225750	
Thank you	

**Note:** In practice, due to the fact that 2 cent coins and 1 cent coins are not part of our currency anymore, entities round down or round up an amount to the nearest 5 cents to make it possible to give change when paid in cash. We will however not adopt this principle in this module.

• Duplicate deposit slip

<b>Helping Bank Limited</b>											Cheque Account Deposit Slip						
<b>Helpende Bank Beperk</b>											Tjekrekeningdepositostrokio						
Credit Krediteer	Acc no Rek nr	9	0	0	0	-	1	2	3	4	5	6	Date Datum	21 January 20.6			
Name/Naam <i>BS Electrical</i>																	
Bank notes		Banknote		*	420		00										
Nickel		Nikkel		*	8		00										
Bronze		Brons		*	0		13										
Money and postal orders		Poswissels en posorders															
SUBTOTAL/SUBTOTAAL											428		13				
	Drawer's name Trekker se naam	Bank		Branch no Taknr													
1																	
2																	
3																	
4																	
5																	
6																	
7																	
		<b>Total/Totaal</b>												428		13	
Cheques etc, as above, for collection to be available as cash when paid. While acting in good faith and exercising responsible care, the Bank will not accept responsibility for ensuring that depositors/account holders have lawful title to cheques, etc collected.											* For bank use * Vir bank gebruik						
Tjeks ens, soos bo, ingehandig vir invordering wat na betaling as kontant beskikbaar sal wees. Alhoewel die Bank in goeie trou handel en alle redelike voorsorgmaatreëls tref, sal die Bank nie die verantwoordelikheid aanvaar om te verseker dat deposante/rekeninghouders regmatige titel op ingevorderde tjeks, ens het nie.																	
Deposited by/Gedeponeer deur: <i>S Peterson</i>																	

**\*Note:** These can vary as long as the subtotal is R428,13

**Transaction 15:**

On 21 January 20.6, Mr B Strong bought electrical cable and fittings to be installed in his new home. He purchased:

- 40 m of three-phase electrical cable (EC1003) for R741,00
- 10 rolls of insulation tape (IT1001) for R42,75
- 50 plug switches (PS1002) for R433,20
- 45 light switches (LS1002) for R320,11
- 30 light fittings (LF1002) for R1 387,15
- 10 fluorescent light fittings (FLF1002) for R1 139,89

Mr B Sithole installed the electrical cable and fittings in Mr B Strong's new home and issued original tax invoice number 0006 to him for R2 600,00. He paid the amount of R4 064,10 for the electrical cable and fittings, and the service rendered for R2 600,00 cash. Mrs S Peterson issued receipt number 0007 to him. The money was deposited on 22 January 20.6.

**Explanation:**

Received money; therefore the bank account (an asset) increases and must be debited with the total amount of  $R4\ 064,10 + R2\ 600,00 = R6\ 664,10$ .

Sales is an income that increases the profit for the year. Therefore, equity increases and sales account must be credited with R3 565,00.

Services rendered is an income that increases the profit for the year. Therefore equity increases and services rendered account must be credited with R2 280,70.

**Money received; therefore this transaction will be entered into the cash receipts journal.**

**Source documents:**

- Cash register roll

<b>BS ELECTRICAL</b>	
21/01/20.6	
Till 01	
Three-phase electrical cable 40m EC1003	741,00
Insulation tape 10 rolls IT1001	42,75
Plug switches 50 PS1002	433,20
Light switches 45 LS1002	320,11
Light fittings 30 LF1002	1 387,15
Fluorescent light fittings 10 FLF1002	1 139,89
TOTAL	4 064,10
Cash	4 064,10
Change	0,00
14% VAT	R499,10
Slip no 0003	
VAT no 8960225750	
Thank you	

- Duplicate cash sales invoice

BS ELECTRICAL			
499 Tshwane Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 429–3111		VAT registration number 8960225750	
		P O Box 392 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 429–3424	
<b>Date:</b> 21 January 20.6		<b>TAX INVOICE</b>	
		<b>No:</b> 0006	
<b>To:</b> Cash		<u>Payment method</u> Cheque/debit card <b>Cash</b> Credit card Account	
Code	Description	Qty	Total price
SR001	Electrical services	4	2 280,70
	VAT @ 14%		319,30
<b>Invoice total</b>			2 600,00
<b>Amount tendered</b>			2 600,00
<b>Change</b>			0,00
<b>VAT included @ 14%</b>			319,30
<b>E &amp; OE</b>			

- Duplicate receipt

No. 0007	Date: 21 January 20.6	
Received from: <i>Mr B Strong</i>	<b>R</b>	<b>c</b>
Amount: <i>Six thousand six hundred and sixty four rand</i> Rand		
Cent: <i>Ten cents</i>	6 664	10
For: <i>Inventory (Cash slip no. 0003 – R4 064,10)</i> <i>Services rendered (Cash invoice no. 0006 – R2 600,00) (cash)</i>	<b>BS Electrical</b>	
Signature: <i>S Peterson</i>		

- Duplicate deposit slip

Helping Bank Limited Helpende Bank Beperk													Cheque Account Deposit Slip Tjekrekeningdeposiostrokie				
Credit Krediteer	Acc no Rek nr	9	0	0	0	-	1	2	3	4	5	6	Date Datum	22 January 20.6			
Name/Naam <i>BS Electrical</i>																	
Bank notes		Banknote											6	660	00		
Nickel		Nikkel												4	00		
Bronze		Brons												0	10		
Money and postal orders		Poswissels en posorders															
SUBTOTAL/SUBTOTAAL													6	664	10		
	Drawer's name Trekker se naam	Bank					Branch no Taknr										
1																	
2																	
3																	
4																	
5																	
6																	
7																	
													<b>Total/Totaal</b>		6	664	10
Cheques etc, as above, for collection to be available as cash when paid. While acting in good faith and exercising responsible care, the Bank will not accept responsibility for ensuring that depositors/account holders have lawful title to cheques, etc collected.													* For bank use * Vir bank gebruik				
Tjeks ens, soos bo, ingehandig vir invordering wat na betaling as kontant beskikbaar sal wees. Alhoewel die Bank in goeie trou handel en alle redelike voorsorgmaatreëls tref, sal die Bank nie die verantwoordelikheid aanvaar om te verseker dat deposante/rekeninghouders regmatige titel op ingevorderde tjeks, ens het nie.																	
Deposited by/Gedeponeer deur: <i>S Peterson</i>																	

### Transaction 16:

On 22 January 20.6 the entity ordered some fittings and switches from Huge Wholesalers. Since the first payment was made via the internet and it was for a significant amount of R38 500,08 they will now accept cheques from BS Electrical. Mrs S Peterson received the following delivery and paid per cheque number 0008.

### Explanation:

Purchases is an expense that decreases the profit for the year. Therefore, equity decreases and purchases account must be debited.

Paid by cheque; bank (an asset) decreases and must be credited.

**Paid by cheque; therefore this transaction will be entered into the cash payments journal.**

**Source documents:**

- **Original delivery note**

<b>HUGE WHOLESALERS</b>							
1667 Marine Drive PRETORIA Tel: (012) 336–3433		VAT Registration number 5591223986		P O Box 1550 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 336–3434			
<b>Date:</b> 22 January 20.6		<b>DELIVERY NOTE</b>		<b>No:</b> SP6068			
<b>Supplied to:</b> BS Electrical 499 Tshwane Drive Pretoria				P O Box 392 PRETORIA 0001			
Code	Description	Qty	Unit price (VAT excl.)		Total price		Checked
IT1001	Insulation tape	1 box	300	00	300	00	√
LF1002	Light fittings	2 boxes	3 245	00	6 490	00	√
FLF1002	Fluorescent light fittings	1 box	7 999	00	7 999	00	√
LS1002	Light switches	2 boxes	998	00	1 996	00	√
PS1002	Plug switches	2 boxes	1 215	00	2 430	00	√
	VAT @ 14%				19 215	00	
					2 690	10	
<b>Total</b>					21 905	10	
<b>VAT included @ 14%</b>					2 690	10	
<b>Note:</b> Discount of 20% applicable							
Checked by: Mrs S Peterson			Signature: S Peterson		Date: 22 January 20.6		
<b>E &amp; OE</b>							



• Original cash invoice

HUGE WHOLESALERS			
1667 Marine Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 336–3433		VAT registration number 5591223986	P O Box 1550 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 336–3434
<b>Date:</b> 22 January 20.6		<b>TAX INVOICE</b>	<b>No:</b> 6096
<b>To:</b> BS Electrical 499 Tshwane Drive Pretoria VAT registration number 8960225750		<u>Payment method</u> <b>Cheque/debit card</b> Cash Credit card Account	
Code	Description	Qty	Total price
IT1001	Insulation tape	1 box	300,00
LF1002	Light fittings	2 boxes	6 490,00
FLF1002	Fluorescent light fittings	1 box	7 999,00
LS1002	Light switches	2 boxes	1 996,00
PS1002	Plug switches	2 boxes	2 430,00
			19 215,00 (3 843,00)
			15 372,00 2 152,08
<b>Invoice total</b>			17 524,08
<b>Amount tendered</b>			17 524,08
<b>Change</b>			0,00
<b>VAT included @ 14%</b>			2 152,08
<b>E &amp; OE</b>			

• Cheque counterfoil

Date	22/01/20.6	90–00–00–01	
To	Huge Wholesalers	<b>NOT TRANSFERABLE</b>	
For	Trading inventory	<b>Helping Bank Limited Pretoria</b>	
Balance	R	<b>Date:</b> 22 January 20.6	
Deposit	R	<b>Pay:</b> Huge Wholesalers <b>or Bearer</b>	
Subtotal	R	<b>The sum of:</b> Seventeen thousand five hundred and twenty four rand and eight cent	
This cheque	R17 524,08	17 524,08	
Balance	R		
		<i>B Sithole</i> <i>S Peterson</i>	
		<b>For: BS Electrical</b>	
0008		<b>0008:900000•:9000 123456!!• 01</b>	

**Transaction 17:**

On 23 January 20.6 Mrs S Peterson took R56 from the petty cash to buy stationery from Pen and Pencils.

**Explanation:**

Stationery is an expense that decreases the profit for the year. Therefore, equity decreases and stationery account must be debited.

Petty cash (an asset) decreases and must be credited.

**Money paid cash – petty cash; therefore this transaction will be entered into the petty cash journal.**

**Source documents:**

- Cash slip

<b>PEN AND PENCILS</b>	
23/01/20.6	
Till 02	
Pens 2 @ R14,00 BPI1001	28,00
Printing paper PP1003	28,00
TOTAL	56,00
Cash	56,00
Change	0,00
14% VAT	R6,88
Slip no 0012	
VAT no 5690233875	
Thank you	

- Petty cash voucher

<b>PETTY CASH VOUCHER</b>	<b>No. 002</b>	
<b>Date:</b> 23 January 20.6	<b>Amount</b>	
<b>Required for:</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>c</b>
<i>Pen and Pencils – stationery</i>	56	00
<b>Signature:</b> S Peterson		
<b>Authorised by:</b> B Sithole		

**Transaction 18:**

On 25 January Mrs S Peterson's salary was paid to her by issuing cheque number 0009 for R12 300.

**Explanation:**

Salary is an expense that decreases the profit for the year. Therefore, equity decreases and salaries account must be debited.

Paid by cheque; bank (an asset) decreases and must be credited.

**Paid by cheque; therefore this transaction will be entered into the cash payments journal.**

**Source documents:**

- Cheque counterfoil**

Date	25/01/20.6	90-00-00-01	
To	Mrs S Peterson	<b>NOT TRANSFERABLE</b>	
For	Salary	Helping Bank Limited Pretoria	Date: 25 January 20.6
Balance	R		
Deposit	R	Pay: Mrs S Peterson	<b>or Bearer</b>
Subtotal	R	The sum of: Twelve thousand three hundred rand only	12 300,00
This cheque	R12 300,00		
Balance	R		
		B Sithole	S Peterson
		<b>For: BS Electrical</b>	
0009		<b>0009:900000-:9000 123456!!- 01</b>	

**Transaction 19:**

On 29 January Mrs S Peterson wrote out cheque number 0010 for R106 to restore the petty cash impress amount to R200.

**Explanation:**

Petty cash (an asset) increases and must be debited.

Paid by cheque; bank (an asset) decreases and must be credited.

**Money received – petty cash; therefore this transaction will be entered into the petty cash journal.**

**Paid by cheque; therefore this transaction will be entered into the cash payments journal.**

**Source documents:**

- Cheque counterfoil**

Date	29/01/20.6	90-00-00-01	
To	Cash	<b>Helping Bank Limited</b>	
For	Petty cash	<b>Pretoria</b>	<b>Date: 29 January 20.6</b>
Balance	R		
Deposit	R	<b>Pay: Cash</b>	<b>or Bearer</b>
Subtotal	R	<b>The sum of: Hundred and six rand only</b>	106,00
This cheque	R106,00		
Balance	R		
		<i>B Sithole</i>	<i>S Peterson</i>
		<b>For: BS Electrical</b>	
0010		<b>0010:900000•9000 123456!!• 01</b>	

**5.4.1 Cash receipts journal**

The cash receipts journal is a subsidiary book in which the cash receipts of an entity are recorded. All moneys received are recorded in the cash receipts journal. At the end of the month only one amount, which represents the entire month's cash receipts, is debited to the bank account in the general ledger.

Different columns are used to analyse the different types of receipts and to find the total of each for a certain period. The number and headings of these columns will be determined by the type of entity and the frequency of transactions that can be grouped together. It is, however, not possible to provide individual columns for every type of receipt. Therefore, the less frequent receipts (once or twice a month) will be entered in a column for sundry accounts.

Entries in the cash receipts journal are recorded from:

- duplicates of receipts issued (when money was received)
- the cash register roll (when cash was received for sales)
- the duplicate deposit slip (when money was deposited at the bank)
- the original credit card/debit card slip (money will be automatically banked by the bank on our account)
- internet banking: notice of payment faxed to self (money deposited directly into bank account)

Provision is made for a VAT output column in the cash receipts journal (tax collected by the entity on behalf of the South African Revenue Service). See paragraph 4.6 for a discussion of VAT.

**BS ELECTRICAL**

**CASH RECEIPTS JOURNAL – JANUARY 20.6**

CRJ1

Doc No.	Day	Details	Fol	Analysis of receipts	Bank	Sales	Services rendered	VAT output	Sundry accounts	
									Amount	Fol
R0001	2	Mr B Sithole		R 100 000,00	R 100 000,00				R 100 000,00	B1 Capital
R0002	10	Mr P Lucky		1 170,00			R 1 026,32	R 143,68		
R0003		Mrs V Happy		2 925,00	4 095,00		R 2 565,79	R 359,21		
R0004		Mr T Busy		3 705,00	3 705,00		R 3 250,00	R 455,00		
R0005	17	Mr T Wiseman		12 122,53	12 122,53	2 081,17	R 8 552,63	R 1 488,73		
R0006	18	Mrs B Mini		2 600,00	2 600,00		R 2 280,70	R 319,30		
CRR0002	20	Cash sales		428,13	428,13	375,55		R 52,58		
CRR0003	21	Cash sales		6 664,10	6 664,10	3 565,00	R 2 280,70	R 818,40		
					129 614,76	6 021,72	R 19 956,14	R 3 636,90	R 100 000,00	
					B2	N2	N1	B7		

- The folio numbers B2, N2, N1, B7 and B1 are for reference purposes and will be discussed in paragraph 5.5.
- At the end of the month the cash receipts journal is closed off by totalling each column.
- The analysis of receipts column does not have a total because all the cash, cheques and credit card payments received have been deposited as soon as possible. The amount is entered into the analysis of receipts column when the money is received and it will be entered into the bank column when it is deposited. If two amounts are deposited together, the amounts are added and only the total of the deposit slip will be entered in the bank column.
- The internet payments received will be entered directly into the bank column because it is deposited automatically into the bank account of the entity.
- On the 17th and 21st the VAT of the sales and the services rendered were added and only one amount was entered in the VAT column.
- The sales amount and services rendered amounts are the total amounts on the invoices less the VAT received because the VAT has to be paid over to the South African Revenue Service.
- The total of the bank column must be equal to the sum of the totals of the other columns, that is  $R6\ 021,72 + R19\ 956,14 + R3\ 636,90 + R100\ 000 = R129\ 614,76$ .
- The totals of the columns must be posted to the appropriate accounts in the general ledger at the end of the month. Each transaction in the sundry accounts column will be posted individually to the appropriate account identified in the details column in the general ledger at the date of the transaction.

#### 5.4.2 Cash payments journal

The cash payments journal is a subsidiary book in which the cash payments of an entity are recorded. All payments are made by cheque, via the internet or by credit card and each amount must be recorded in the bank column as well as in one of the analysis columns.

Different columns are used to analyse the different types of payment and to find the total of each for a certain period. The number and heading of these columns will be determined by the type of entity and will include those transactions that occur frequently during the month. It is, however, not possible to provide individual columns for every type of payment. Therefore, the less frequent payments (once or twice a month) will be entered in the column for sundry accounts.

Entries in the cash payments journal are made from:

- cheque counterfoils (payments made by cheque)
- internet banking: notice of payment send to them (money paid directly into the bank account of another person or entity)

Provision is made for a VAT input column in the cash payments journal to record any input VAT associated with purchases.

- The folio numbers B2, N3, B8, B3, B4, N4, B5, N5 and PCJ1 are for reference purposes and will be discussed in paragraph 5.5.
- At the end of the month the cash payments journal is closed off by totalling each column.
- The purchases amount, tools and equipment amount and computer equipment amount are the total amounts on the invoices less the VAT paid because the VAT input are claimed back from the South African Revenue Service.
- The amount entered in the bank column is the total amount paid (price + VAT).

**BS ELECTRICAL**  
**CASH PAYMENTS JOURNAL – JANUARY 20.6**

CPJ1

Doc No.	Day	Name of payee	Fol	Bank	Purchases	VAT input	Tools and equipment	Computer equipment	Salaries	Sundry accounts	
										Amount	Fol
				R	R	R	R	R	R	R	
0001	2	Big Builders		10 000,00		1 228,07	8 771,93				
0002		Wiseman Traders		3 014,55		370,21	2 644,34				
0003	3	Cash		300,00						300,00	B5 Cash float
0004	4	Mr B Sithole		2 000,00		245,61				1 754,39	N5 Rental expenses
BS01	15	Huge Wholesalers		38 500,08	33 772,00	4 728,08				200,00	PCJ1 Petty cash
0005	16	Cash		200,00							
0006		Computer World		16 269,00		1 997,95		14 271,05			
0007		IT Perfect		15 600,00		1 915,79		13 684,21			
0008	22	Huge Wholesalers		17 524,08	15 372,00	2 152,08			12 300,00		
0009	25	Mrs S Peterson		12 300,00							
0010	29	Cash		106,00						106,00	PCJ1 Petty cash
				115 813,71	49 144,00	12 637,79	11 416,27	27 955,26	12 300,00	2 360,39	
				B2	N3	B8	B3	B4	N4		

- The total of the bank column must be equal to the sum of the totals of the other columns, that is R49 144,00 + R12 637,79 + R11 416,27 + R27 955,26 + R12 300,00 + R2 360,39 = R115 813,71.
- The total of the columns must be posted to the appropriate accounts in the general ledger at the end of the month. Each transaction in the sundry accounts column will be posted individually to the appropriate account identified in the details column in the general ledger at the date of the transaction.
- If more than one person was paid a salary, a salaries journal must be opened to record all the salaries. Only the total amount for salaries will then be posted to the cash payments journal.

### 5.4.3 Petty cash journal

It is normal practice to bank all cash receipts (coins, notes, postal orders and cheques) daily. This is done to control all money received. Payments must also be controlled and are therefore made by cheque. However, when small payments, for example, expenses such as postage, telegrams, wages to casual labourers, small repairs and small donations are paid out, it is more convenient to make payments in cash rather than the drawing of a cheque.

All payments from petty cash are recorded in the petty cash journal. The number of analysis columns will vary according to the type of entity and the frequency of payments for a certain item/service. It is, however, not possible to provide individual columns for every type of payment. Therefore, the less frequent payments (once or twice a month) will be entered in the column for sundry accounts.

Before any payment can be made out of petty cash the payment must be authorised by a person appointed to do so. The signature of the person who authorises the payment must appear on the petty cash voucher. These vouchers will be numbered in sequence and filed with the external source document (mostly cash slips) received on payment.

When a payment is recorded in the petty cash journal, the amount is entered in the petty cash column as well as in the appropriate analysis column.

The imprest system is most widely used. In terms of this system, an amount that should cover petty cash requirements for a month is estimated. This amount is then given to the petty cashier as the imprest amount – an amount in advance.

The petty cashier is reimbursed – usually at the end of the month – by means of a cheque which is equal to the amount that he/she has spent. Thus the petty cashier starts each month with the same amount of petty cash on hand.

If the petty cashier runs short of money, because of additional expenses, he/she receives a cheque. The amount the petty cashier will receive at the end of the month to restore the “imprest” amount will be equal to expense less amounts received during the month.

Provision is made for a VAT input column in the petty cash journal because it is the VAT paid by the entity to another person or entity (the person or entity must be a registered VAT vendor).



**BS ELECTRICAL**  
**PETTY CASH JOURNAL – JANUARY 20.6**  
 PCJ1

Receipts			Payments						Sundry accounts			
Day	Fol	Amount	Day	Details	No	Fol	Total	VAT input	Postage	Amount	Fol	Details
16	CPJ1	R 200,00	17	Post office	001		R 50,00	R 6,14	R 43,86	R		
29	CPJ1	106,00	23	Pen and Pencils	002		56,00	6,88		49,12	N7	Stationery
		306,00					106,00	13,02	43,86	49,12		
		B6					B6	B8	N6			

- The folio numbers B6, B8, N6 and N7 are for reference purposes and will be discussed in paragraph 5.5.
- At the end of the month the petty cash journal is closed off by totalling each column.
- The stationery amount is the total amount on the cash slips less the VAT paid because the VAT is claimed from the South African Revenue Service.
- The amount entered in the total column is the total amount paid (price + VAT).
- The total of the total column must be equal to the sum of the totals of the other columns, that is  $R13,02 + R43,86 + R49,12 = R106,00$ .
- The total of the columns must be posted to the appropriate accounts in the general ledger at the end of the month. Each transaction in the sundry accounts column will be posted individually to the appropriate account identified in the details column in the general ledger at the date of the transaction.

## 5.5 POSTING TO THE GENERAL LEDGER

All cash transactions are entered into one of the subsidiary journals (books of first entry). At the end of the month the totals of these journals must be posted to the appropriate accounts in the general ledger.

In the general ledger accounts are grouped as follows:

- All the assets, liabilities and equity accounts are grouped together in the financial position section in the general ledger and indicated by the reference *B*. These accounts will have balances at the end of the financial year and will be reported in the statement of financial position.
- All the income and expense accounts are grouped together in the nominal accounts section in the general ledger and indicated by the reference *N*. These accounts will all be closed off at the end of the year (ie they will not have balances). These accounts are closed off to the profit or loss account.

The entries in the cash receipts journal are posted to the general ledger as follows:

- The total of the bank column is debited to the bank account. In the bank account the words “total receipts” are written as cross-reference. The reason for the words “total receipts” is because different accounts will be credited (sales account, services rendered account, capital account and VAT output account).
- The total of the sales column is credited to the sales account. In the sales account the word “bank” is written as cross-reference.
- The total of the services rendered column is credited to the services rendered account. In the services rendered account the word “bank” is written as cross-reference.
- The total of the VAT output column is credited to the VAT output account. In the VAT output account the word “bank” is written as cross-reference.
- The amounts in the column for sundry accounts are credited individually to the appropriate accounts in the general ledger as indicated in the column for details. For example, the capital account is credited using the cross-reference “bank”.
- In the general ledger accounts the folio reference *CRJ* (for cash receipts journal) and the number of the cash receipts journal is used. In the cash receipts journal the folio reference *B* and the number of the account or *N* and the number of the account is used.

The entries in the cash payments journal are posted to the general ledger as follows:

- The total of the bank column is credited to the bank account. In the bank account the words “total payments” are written as cross-reference. The reason for the words “total payments” is because different accounts will be debited (purchases account, VAT input account, tools and equipment account, computer equipment account, salaries account, cash float account, rent expenses account and petty cash account).
- The total of the purchases column is debited to the purchases account. In the purchases account the word “bank” is written as cross-reference.

- The total of the VAT input column is debited to the VAT input account. In the VAT input account the word “bank” is written as cross-reference.
- The total of the tools and equipment column is debited to the tools and equipment account. In the tools and equipment account the word “bank” is written as cross-reference.
- The total of the computer equipment column is debited to the computer equipment account. In the computer equipment account the word “bank” is written as cross-reference.
- The total of the salaries column is debited to the salaries account. In the salaries account the word “bank” is written as cross-reference.
- The amounts in the column for sundry accounts are debited individually to the appropriate accounts in the general ledger as indicated in the column for details. For example, the cash float account is debited using the cross-reference “bank”.
- In the general ledger accounts the folio reference *CPJ* (for cash payments journal) and the number of the cash payments journal is used. In the cash payments journal the folio reference *B* and the number of the account or *N* and the number of the account or *PCJ* (for petty cash journal) and the number of the petty cash journal is used.

The entries in the petty cash journal are posted to the general ledger as follows:

- The total of the receipts side of the petty cash journal is debited to the petty cash account. In the petty cash account the words “total receipts” are written as cross-reference.
- The total of the total column on the payments side of the petty cash journal is credited to the petty cash account. In the petty cash account the words “total payments” are written as cross-reference. The reason for the words “total payments” is because different accounts will be debited (VAT input account, postage account and stationery account).
- The total of the VAT input column is debited to the VAT input account. In the VAT input account the words “petty cash” are written as cross-reference.
- The total of the postage column is debited to the postage account. In the postage account the words “petty cash” are written as cross-reference.
- The amounts in the column for sundry accounts are debited individually to the appropriate accounts in the general ledger as indicated in the column for details. For example, the stationery account is debited using the cross-reference “petty cash”.
- In the general ledger accounts the folio reference *PCJ* (for petty cash journal) and the number of the petty cash journal is used. In the petty cash journal the folio reference *B* and the number of the account or *N* and the number of the account or *CPJ* (for cash payments journal) and the number of the cash payments journal is used.

**BS ELECTRICAL  
GENERAL LEDGER  
FINANCIAL POSITION SECTION**

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Capital</b>						<b>B1</b>		<b>Cr</b>
							20.6			
							Jan 2	Bank	CRJ1	100 000 00

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Bank</b>						<b>B2</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.6							20.6				
Jan	31	Total receipts	CRJ1	129 614	76		Jan	31	Total payments Balance	CPJ1 c/d	115 813 71 13 801 05
				129 614	76						129 614 76
Feb	1	Balance	b/d	13 801	05						

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Tools and equipment</b>						<b>B3</b>		<b>Cr</b>
20.6										
Jan	31	Bank	CPJ1	11 416	76					

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Computer equipment</b>						<b>B4</b>		<b>Cr</b>
20.6										
Jan	31	Bank	CPJ1	27 955	26					

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Cash float</b>						<b>B5</b>		<b>Cr</b>
20.6										
Jan	3	Bank	CPJ1	300	00					

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Petty cash</b>						<b>B6</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.6							20.6				
Jan	31	Total receipts	PCJ1	306	00		Jan	31	Total payments Balance	PCJ1 c/d	106 00 200 00
				306	00						306 00
Feb	1	Balance	b/d	200	00						

<b>Dr</b>		<b>VAT output</b>						<b>B7</b>		<b>Cr</b>
							20.6			
							Jan 31	Bank	CRJ1	3 636 90

<b>Dr</b>		<b>VAT input</b>						<b>B8</b>		<b>Cr</b>
20.6										
Jan	31	Bank Petty cash	CPJ1 PCJ1	12 637 13	79 02					
				12 650	81					

At the end of the two month period the VAT return must be submitted to the South African Revenue Service, a VAT control account must be opened and the VAT input account as well as the VAT output account must be closed off to the VAT control account to determine whether an amount must be paid over to the Receiver of Revenue (VAT output is bigger than the VAT input) or an amount must be refunded by the Receiver of Revenue (VAT input is bigger than the VAT output).

**NOMINAL ACCOUNTS SECTION**

Dr		Services rendered						N1		Cr
						20.6				
						Jan 31	Bank	CRJ1	19 956	14

Dr		Sales						N2		Cr
						20.6				
						Jan 31	Bank	CRJ1	6 021	72

Dr		Purchases						N3		Cr
20.6										
Jan 31	Bank	CPJ1	49 144	00						

Dr		Salaries						N4		Cr
20.6										
Jan 31	Bank	CPJ1	12 300	00						

Dr		Rental expenses						N5		Cr
20.6										
Jan 4	Bank	CPJ1	1 754	39						

Dr		Postage						N6		Cr
20.6										
Jan 31	Petty cash	PCJ1	43	86						

Dr		Stationery						N7		Cr
20.6										
Jan 23	Petty cash	PCJ1	49	12						

## 5.6 EXERCISE AND SOLUTION

### EXERCISE 1

The following transactions must be recorded from the source documents of PP Traders:

No. 001	Date: 1 September 20.6
Received from: <i>P Benroy</i>	
	<b>R</b> <b>c</b>
Amount: <i>Eight hundred and fifty three thousand rand only</i> Rand	
Cent: <i>None</i>	853 000    00
For: <i>Capital contribution by the owner (cheque)</i>	
Signature: <i>P Bright</i>	<b>PP Traders</b>

<b>Easy Bank Limited</b>										Cheque Account Deposit Slip					
<b>Easy Bank Beperk</b>										Tjekrekeningdepositostrokies					
Credit Krediteer	Acc no Rek nr	8	0	0	0	-	1	1	2	3	4	5	Date Datum	1 September 20.6	
Name/Naam <i>PP Traders</i>															
Bank notes		Banknote													
Nickel		Nikkel													
Bronze		Brons													
Money and postal orders		Poswissels en posorders													
SUBTOTAL/SUBTOTAAL															
	Drawer's name Trekker se naam	Bank		Branch no Taknr											
1	<i>P Benroy</i>	<i>Easy Bank Limited</i>		<i>80-00-00</i>									853 000	00	
2															
3															
4															
5															
6															
7															
												<b>Total/Totaal</b>		853 000	00
Cheques etc, as above, for collection to be available as cash when paid. While acting in good faith and exercising responsible care, the Bank will not accept responsibility for ensuring that depositors/ account holders have lawful title to cheques, etc collected.												* For bank use * Vir bank gebruik			
Tjeks ens, soos bo, ingehandig vir invordering wat na betaling as kontant beskikbaar sal wees. Alhoewel die Bank in goeie trou handel en alle redelike voorsorgmaatreëls tref, sal die Bank nie die verantwoordelikheid aanvaar om te verseker dat deposante/rekeninghouders regmatige titel op ingevorderde tjeks, ens het nie.															
Deposited by/Gedeponeer deur: <i>P Bright</i>															

Date	<i>02/09/20.6</i>
To	<i>Astor Agency</i>
For	<i>Business vehicle</i>
Balance	R
Deposit	R
Subtotal	R
This cheque	<i>R50 000,00</i>
Balance	R
0001	

Date	<i>04/09/20.6</i>
To	<i>SR Manufacturers</i>
For	<i>Merchandise</i>
Balance	R
Deposit	R
Subtotal	R
This cheque	<i>R150 000,00</i>
Balance	R
0002	

Date	<i>05/09/20.6</i>
To	<i>Cash</i>
For	<i>Petty cash</i>
Balance	R
Deposit	R
Subtotal	R
This cheque	<i>R400,00</i>
Balance	R
0003	

<b>PETTY CASH VOUCHER</b>	<b>No. 1</b>	
<b>Date:</b> <i>8 September 20.6</i>	<b>Amount</b>	
<b>Required for:</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>c</b>
<i>Wages</i>	<i>120</i>	<i>00</i>
<b>Signature:</b> <i>P Bright</i>		
<b>Authorised by:</b> <i>P Benroy</i>		



Date	<i>11/09/20.6</i>
To	<i>Speedy Suppliers</i>
For	<i>Goods</i>
Balance	R
Deposit	R
Subtotal	R
This cheque	<i>R32 000,00</i>
Balance	R
0004	

Date	<i>13/09/20.6</i>
To	<i>CNA</i>
For	<i>Stationery</i>
Balance	R
Deposit	R
Subtotal	R
This cheque	<i>R320,00</i>
Balance	R
0005	

Date	<i>14/09/20.6</i>
To	<i>Protea Shopfitters</i>
For	<i>Cabinets and shelves</i>
Balance	R
Deposit	R
Subtotal	R
This cheque	<i>R14 000,00</i>
Balance	R
0006	

Date	<i>15/09/20.6</i>
To	<i>Cash</i>
For	<i>Cash float</i>
Balance	R
Deposit	R
Subtotal	R
This cheque	<i>R400,00</i>
Balance	R
0007	

On 18 September 20.6 the total cash sales as per cash register roll number 1 were R7 200,00.

Easy Bank Limited												Cheque Account Deposit Slip			
Easy Bank Beperk												Tjekrekeningdeposiitstrokie			
Credit Krediteer	Acc no Rek nr	8	0	0	0	-	1	1	2	3	4	5	Date Datum	19 September 20.6	
Name/Naam <i>PP Traders</i>															
Bank notes		Banknote										7 200		00	
Nickel		Nikkel													
Bronze		Brons													
Money and postal orders		Poswissels en posorders													
SUBTOTAL/SUBTOTAAL												7 200		00	
	Drawer's name Trekker se naam	Bank		Branch no Taknr											
1															
2															
3															
4															
5															
6															
7															
		<b>Total/Totaal</b>										7 200		00	
Cheques etc, as above, for collection to be available as cash when paid. While acting in good faith and exercising responsible care, the Bank will not accept responsibility for ensuring that depositors/account holders have lawful title to cheques, etc collected.												* For bank use * Vir bank gebruik			
Tjeks ens, soos bo, ingehandig vir invordering wat na betaling as kontant beskikbaar sal wees. Alhoewel die Bank in goeie trou handel en alle redelike voorsorgmaatreëls tref, sal die Bank nie die verantwoordelikheid aanvaar om te verseker dat deposante/rekeninghouers regmatige titel op ingevorderde tjeks, ens het nie.															
Deposited by/Gedeponeer deur: <i>P Bright</i>															

On 19 September 20.6 the total cash sales as per cash register roll number 2 were R28 000,00. The amount of R28 000,00 includes two cheques from:

- P Potgieter, Bridging Bank Limited (Branch code 80–10–00), for R1 400,00; and
- T Little, Easy Bank Limited (Branch code 80–00–00), for R720,00.

Easy Bank Limited												Cheque Account Deposit Slip			
Easy Bank Beperk												Tjekrekeningdeposiostrokie			
Credit Krediteer	Acc no Rek nr	8	0	0	0	-	1	1	2	3	4	5	Date Datum	20 September 20.6	
Name/Naam <i>PP Traders</i>															
Bank notes		Banknote										25 880		00	
Nickel		Nikkel													
Bronze		Brons													
Money and postal orders		Poswissels en posorders													
SUBTOTAL/SUBTOTAAL												25 880		00	
	Drawer's name Trekker se naam	Bank		Branch no Taknr											
1	<i>P Potgieter</i>	<i>Bridging Bank Limited</i>		<i>80-10-00</i>								1 400		00	
2	<i>T Little</i>	<i>Easy Bank Limited</i>		<i>80-00-00</i>								720		00	
3															
4															
5															
6															
7															
		<b>Total/Totaal</b>										28 000		00	
Cheques etc, as above, for collection to be available as cash when paid. While acting in good faith and exercising responsible care, the Bank will not accept responsibility for ensuring that depositors/account holders have lawful title to cheques, etc collected.												* For bank use * Vir bank gebruik			
Tjeks ens, soos bo, ingehandig vir invordering wat na betaling as kontant beskikbaar sal wees. Alhoewel die Bank in goeie trou handel en alle redelike voorsorgmaatreëls tref, sal die Bank nie die verantwoordelikheid aanvaar om te verseker dat deposante/rekeninghouders regmatige titel op ingevorderde tjeks, ens het nie.															
Deposited by/Gedeponeer deur: <i>P Bright</i>															

On 20 September 20.6 the total cash sales as per cash register roll number 3 were R21 210,00. The amount of R21 210,00 includes credit card payments to the value of R8 900,00.

Easy Bank Limited													Cheque Account Deposit Slip			
Easy Bank Beperk													Tjekrekeningdeposistrokio			
Credit Krediteer	Acc no Rek nr	8	0	0	0	-	1	1	2	3	4	5	Date Datum	21 September 20.6		
Name/Naam <i>PP Traders</i>																
Bank notes			Banknote						10 210			00				
Nickel			Nikkel													
Bronze			Brons													
Money and postal orders			Poswissels en posorders													
SUBTOTAL/SUBTOTAAL													10 210		00	
	Drawer's name Trekker se naam		Bank			Branch no Taknr										
1	<i>P Dollie</i>		<i>Good Bank Limited</i>			<i>80-20-00</i>						2 100 00				
2																
3																
4																
5																
6																
7																
<b>Total/Totaal</b>													12 310		00	
Cheques etc, as above, for collection to be available as cash when paid. While acting in good faith and exercising responsible care, the Bank will not accept responsibility for ensuring that depositors/account holders have lawful title to cheques, etc collected.													* For bank use * Vir bank gebruik			
Tjeks ens, soos bo, ingehandig vir invordering wat na betaling as kontant beskikbaar sal wees. Alhoewel die Bank in goeie trou handel en alle redelike voorsorgmaatreëls tref, sal die Bank nie die verantwoordelikheid aanvaar om te verseker dat deposante/rekeninghouders regmatige titel op ingevorderde tjeks, ens het nie.																
Deposited by/Gedeponeer deur: <i>P Bright</i>																

PETTY CASH VOUCHER		No. 2	
Date: 21 September 20.6		Amount	
Required for:		R	c
<i>Wages</i>		80	00
<b>Signature: P Bright</b>			
<b>Authorised by: P Benroy</b>			

On 21 September 20.6 the total cash sales as per cash register roll number 4 were R21 000,00. The amount of R21 000,00 includes credit card payments to the value of R8 900,00.

<b>Easy Bank Limited</b>													Cheque Account Deposit Slip			
<b>Easy Bank Beperk</b>													Tjekrekeningdeposiostrokie			
Credit Krediteer	Acc no Rek nr	8	0	0	0	-	1	1	2	3	4	5	Date Datum	22 September 20.6		
Name/Naam <i>PP Traders</i>																
Bank notes		Banknote										10 000		00		
Nickel		Nikkel														
Bronze		Brons														
Money and postal orders		Poswissels en posorders														
SUBTOTAL/SUBTOTAAL													10 000		00	
	Drawer's name Trekker se naam	Bank		Branch no Taknr												
1	<i>P Dollie</i>	<i>Good Bank Limited</i>		<i>80-20-00</i>								2 100		00		
2																
3																
4																
5																
6																
7																
<b>Total/Totaal</b>													12 100		00	
Cheques etc, as above, for collection to be available as cash when paid. While acting in good faith and exercising responsible care, the Bank will not accept responsibility for ensuring that depositors/account holders have lawful title to cheques, etc collected.													* For bank use * Vir bank gebruik			
Tjeks ens, soos bo, ingehandig vir invordering wat na betaling as kontant beskikbaar sal wees. Alhoewel die Bank in goeie trou handel en alle redelike voorsorgmaatreëls tref, sal die Bank nie die verantwoordelikheid aanvaar om te verseker dat deposante/rekeninghouers regmatige titel op ingevorderde tjeks, ens het nie.																
Deposited by/Gedeponeer deur: <i>P Bright</i>																

<b>PETTY CASH VOUCHER</b>	<b>No. 3</b>	
<b>Date:</b> <i>22 September 20.6</i>	<b>Amount</b>	
<b>Required for:</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>c</b>
<i>CNA – Stationery</i>	<i>56</i>	<i>00</i>
<b>Signature:</b> <i>P Bright</i>		
<b>Authorised by:</b> <i>P Benroy</i>		

Date	<i>22/09/20.6</i>
To	<i>CP Wholesalers</i>
For	<i>Merchandise</i>
Balance	R
Deposit	R
Subtotal	R
This cheque	<i>R76 000,00</i>
Balance	R
0008	

On 22 September 20.6 the total cash sales as per cash register roll number 5 were R35 000,00. The amount of R35 000,00 includes credit card payments to the value of R15 000,00.

<b>Easy Bank Limited</b>												Cheque Account Deposit Slip			
<b>Easy Bank Beperk</b>												Tjekrekeningdeposiostrokie			
Credit Krediteer	Acc no Rek nr	8	0	0	0	-	1	1	2	3	4	5		Date Datum	23 September 20.6
Name/Naam		PP Traders													
Bank notes		Banknote										15 000	00		
Nickel		Nikkel													
Bronze		Brons													
Money and postal orders		Poswissels en posorders													
SUBTOTAL/SUBTOTAAL												15 000	00		
	Drawer's name Trekker se naam	Bank			Branch no Taknr										
1	P Long	Easy Bank Limited			80-00-00							5 000	00		
2															
3															
4															
5															
6															
7															
<b>Total/Totaal</b>												20 000	00		
Cheques etc, as above, for collection to be available as cash when paid. While acting in good faith and exercising responsible care, the Bank will not accept responsibility for ensuring that depositors/account holders have lawful title to cheques, etc collected.												* For bank use * Vir bank gebruik			
Tjeks ens, soos bo, ingehandig vir invordering wat na betaling as kontant beskikbaar sal wees. Alhoewel die Bank in goeie trou handel en alle redelike voorsorgmaatreëls tref, sal die Bank nie die verantwoordelikheid aanvaar om te verseker dat deposante/rekeninghouers regmatige titel op ingevorderde tjeks, ens het nie.															
Deposited by/Gedeponeer deur: P Bright															



On 23 September 20.6 the total cash sales as per cash register roll number 6 were R14 140,00. The amount of R14 140,00 includes credit card payments to the value of R4 140,00.

No. 002		Date: 23 September 20.6	
Received from: <i>B Hasty</i>			
		<b>R</b>	<b>c</b>
Amount: <i>Four thousand five hundred and fifty rand only</i>			
Rand			
Cent: <i>None</i>		4 550	00
For: <i>Rent income (cheque)</i>		<b>PP Traders</b>	
Signature: <i>P Bright</i>			

<b>Easy Bank Limited</b>											Cheque Account Deposit Slip					
<b>Easy Bank Beperk</b>											Tjekrekeningdeposiitstrokie					
Credit Krediteer	Acc no Rek nr	8	0	0	0	-	1	1	2	3	4	5	Date Datum	26 September 20.6		
Name/Naam <i>PP Traders</i>																
Bank notes		Banknote												10 000 00		
Nickel		Nikkel														
Bronze		Brons														
Money and postal orders		Poswissels en posorders														
SUBTOTAL/SUBTOTAAL														10 000 00		
	Drawer's name Trekker se naam		Bank		Branch no Taknr											
1	<i>B Hasty</i>		<i>Good Bank Limited</i>		<i>80-20-00</i>										4 550 00	
2																
3																
4																
5																
6																
7																
<b>Total/Totaal</b>														<b>14 550 00</b>		
Cheques etc, as above, for collection to be available as cash when paid. While acting in good faith and exercising responsible care, the Bank will not accept responsibility for ensuring that depositors/account holders have lawful title to cheques, etc collected.														* For bank use * Vir bank gebruik		
Tjeks ens, soos bo, ingehandig vir invordering wat na betaling as kontant beskikbaar sal wees. Alhoewel die Bank in goeie trou handel en alle redelike voorsorgmaatreëls tref, sal die Bank nie die verantwoordelikheid aanvaar om te verseker dat deposante/rekeninghouders regmatige titel op ingevorderde tjeks, ens het nie.																
Deposited by/Gedeponeer deur: <i>P Bright</i>																

On 26 September 20.6 the total cash sales as per cash register roll number 7 were R24 500,00. The amount of R24 500,00 includes credit card payments to the value of R5 150,00.

<b>PETTY CASH VOUCHER</b>	<b>No. 4</b>	
<b>Date:</b> 26 September 20.6	<b>Amount</b>	
<b>Required for:</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>c</b>
Post office – postage	66	00
<b>Signature:</b> P Bright		
<b>Authorised by:</b> P Benroy		

<b>Easy Bank Limited</b>													Cheque Account Deposit Slip			
<b>Easy Bank Beperk</b>													Tjekrekeningdepositostrokio			
Credit Krediteer	Acc no Rek nr	8	0	0	0	-	1	1	2	3	4	5	Date Datum	27 September 20.6		
Name/Naam <i>PP Traders</i>																
Bank notes		Banknote												19 350 00		
Nickel		Nikkel														
Bronze		Brons														
Money and postal orders		Poswissels en posorders														
SUBTOTAL/SUBTOTAAL													19 350 00			
	Drawer's name Trekker se naam		Bank		Branch no Taknr											
1																
2																
3																
4																
5																
6																
7																
<b>Total/Totaal</b>													19 350 00			
Cheques etc, as above, for collection to be available as cash when paid. While acting in good faith and exercising responsible care, the Bank will not accept responsibility for ensuring that depositors/account holders have lawful title to cheques, etc collected.													* For bank use * Vir bank gebruik			
Tjeks ens, soos bo, ingehandig vir invordering wat na betaling as kontant beskikbaar sal wees. Alhoewel die Bank in goeie trou handel en alle redelike voorsorgmaatreëls tref, sal die Bank nie die verantwoordelikheid aanvaar om te verseker dat deposante/rekeninghouders regmatige titel op ingevorderde tjeks, ens het nie.																
Deposited by/Gedeponeer deur: <i>P Bright</i>																

On 27 September 20.6 the total cash sales as per cash register roll number 8 were R36 400,00.

Date	27/09/20.6
To	Telkom
For	Telephone
Balance	R
Deposit	R
Subtotal	R
This cheque	R820,00
Balance	R
0009	

<b>Easy Bank Limited</b>											Cheque Account Deposit Slip					
<b>Easy Bank Beperk</b>											Tjekrekeningdepositostrokie					
Credit Krediteer	Acc no Rek nr	8	0	0	0	-	1	1	2	3	4	5	Date Datum	28 September 20.6		
Name/Naam <i>PP Traders</i>																
Bank notes		Banknote										36 400		00		
Nickel		Nikkel														
Bronze		Brons														
Money and postal orders		Poswissels en posorders														
SUBTOTAL/SUBTOTAAL													36 400		00	
	Drawer's name Trekker se naam		Bank		Branch no Taknr											
1																
2																
3																
4																
5																
6																
7																
													<b>Total/Totaal</b>		36 400	00
Cheques etc, as above, for collection to be available as cash when paid. While acting in good faith and exercising responsible care, the Bank will not accept responsibility for ensuring that depositors/account holders have lawful title to cheques, etc collected.													* For bank use * Vir bank gebruik			
Tjeks ens, soos bo, ingehandig vir invordering wat na betaling as kontant beskikbaar sal wees. Alhoewel die Bank in goeie trou handel en alle redelike voorsorgmaatreëls tref, sal die Bank nie die verantwoordelikheid aanvaar om te verseker dat deposante/rekeninghouders regmatige titel op ingevorderde tjeks, ens het nie.																
Deposited by/Gedeponeer deur: <i>P Bright</i>																

Date	28/09/20.6
To	<i>Municipality</i>
For	– <i>Water and electricity, R3 200</i> – <i>Rates and taxes, R200</i>
Balance	R
Deposit	R
Subtotal	R
This cheque	<i>R3 400,00</i>
Balance	R
0010	

Date	28/09/20.6
To	<i>Cash</i>
For	<i>P Benroy (owner)</i>
Balance	R
Deposit	R
Subtotal	R
This cheque	<i>R1 000,00</i>
Balance	R
0011	

On 28 September 20.6 the total cash sales as per cash register roll number 9 were R42 642,00.

<b>Easy Bank Limited</b>												Cheque Account Deposit Slip				
<b>Easy Bank Beperk</b>												Tjekrekeningdepositostrokio				
Credit Krediteer	Acc no Rek nr	8	0	0	0	-	1	1	2	3	4	5		Date Datum	29 September 20.6	
Name/Naam		PP Traders														
Bank notes		Banknote										42 640		00		
Nickel		Nikkel										2		00		
Bronze		Brons														
Money and postal orders		Poswissels en posorders														
SUBTOTAL/SUBTOTAAL													42 642		00	
	Drawer's name Trekker se naam	Bank					Branch no Taknr									
1																
2																
3																
4																
5																
6																
7																
<b>Total/Totaal</b>													42 642		00	
Cheques etc, as above, for collection to be available as cash when paid. While acting in good faith and exercising responsible care, the Bank will not accept responsibility for ensuring that depositors/account holders have lawful title to cheques, etc collected.													* For bank use * Vir bank gebruik			
Tjeks ens, soos bo, ingehandig vir invordering wat na betaling as kontant beskikbaar sal wees. Alhoewel die Bank in goeie trou handel en alle redelike voorsorgmaatreëls tref, sal die Bank nie die verantwoordelikheid aanvaar om te verseker dat deposante/rekeninghouders regmatige titel op ingevorderde tjeks, ens het nie.																
Deposited by/Gedeponeer deur: P Bright																

On 29 September 20.6 the total cash sales as per cash register roll number 10 were R43 656,00.

Easy Bank Limited													Cheque Account Deposit Slip			
Easy Bank Beperk													Tjekrekeningdeposiostrokie			
Credit Krediteer	Acc no Rek nr	8	0	0	0	-	1	1	2	3	4	5	Date Datum	30 September 20.6		
Name/Naam <i>PP Traders</i>																
Bank notes			Banknote						43 650			00				
Nickel			Nikkel						6			00				
Bronze			Brons													
Money and postal orders			Poswissels en posorders													
SUBTOTAL/SUBTOTAAL													43 656		00	
	Drawer's name Trekker se naam	Bank			Branch no Taknr											
1																
2																
3																
4																
5																
6																
7																
<b>Total/Totaal</b>													43 656		00	
<p>Cheques etc, as above, for collection to be available as cash when paid. While acting in good faith and exercising responsible care, the Bank will not accept responsibility for ensuring that depositors/account holders have lawful title to cheques, etc collected.</p> <p>Tjeks ens, soos bo, ingehandig vir invordering wat na betaling as kontant beskikbaar sal wees. Alhoewel die Bank in goeie trou handel en alle redelike voorsorgmaatreëls tref, sal die Bank nie die verantwoordelikheid aanvaar om te verseker dat deposante/rekeninghouders regmatige titel op ingevorderde tjeks, ens het nie.</p>													* For bank use		* Vir bank gebruik	
Deposited by/Gedeponeer deur: <i>P Bright</i>																

Date	30/09/20.6
To	<i>Simi and Son</i>
For	– <i>Repairs, R210</i> – <i>Packing material, R320</i>
Balance	R
Deposit	R
Subtotal	R
This cheque	<i>R530,00</i>
Balance	R
0012	

Date	30/09/20.6
To	<i>Cash</i>
For	<i>Petty cash</i>
Balance	R
Deposit	R
Subtotal	R
This cheque	<i>R322,00</i>
Balance	R
0013	

On 30 September 20.6 the total cash sales as per cash register roll number 11 were R26 400,00. The amount of R26 400,00 includes credit card payments to the value of R10 000,00.

<b>Easy Bank Limited</b>													Cheque Account Deposit Slip			
<b>Easy Bank Beperk</b>													Tjekrekeningdepositostrok			
Credit Krediteer	Acc no Rek nr	8	0	0	0	-	1	1	2	3	4	5	Date Datum	1 October 20.6		
Name/Naam <i>PP Traders</i>																
Bank notes		Banknote												16 000 00		
Nickel		Nikkel												400 00		
Bronze		Brons														
Money and postal orders		Poswissels en posorders														
SUBTOTAL/SUBTOTAAL															16 400 00	
	Drawer's name Trekker se naam	Bank		Branch no Taknr												
1																
2																
3																
4																
5																
6																
7																
<b>Total/Totaal</b>															<b>16 400 00</b>	
Cheques etc, as above, for collection to be available as cash when paid. While acting in good faith and exercising responsible care, the Bank will not accept responsibility for ensuring that depositors/account holders have lawful title to cheques, etc collected.													* For bank use * Vir bank gebruik			
Tjeks ens, soos bo, ingehandig vir invordering wat na betaling as kontant beskikbaar sal wees. Alhoewel die Bank in goeie trou handel en alle redelike voorsorgmaatreëls tref, sal die Bank nie die verantwoordelikheid aanvaar om te verseker dat deposante/rekeninghouers regmatige titel op ingevorderde tjeks, ens het nie.																
Deposited by/Gedeponeer deur: <i>P Bright</i>																



**REQUIRED**

- (a) Prepare the:
- cash receipts journal of PP Traders for September 20.6 with columns for analysis of receipts, bank, sales, VAT output and sundry accounts
  - cash payments journal of PP Traders for September 20.6 with columns for bank, purchases, stationery, VAT input and sundry accounts
  - petty cash journal of PP Traders for September 20.6 with columns for total, wages, VAT input, postage and sundry accounts
- (b) At the end of September the journals must be closed off and the amounts posted to the general ledger of PP Traders.

**SOLUTION: EXERCISE 1**

**PP TRADERS**

**CASH RECEIPTS JOURNAL – SEPTEMBER 20.6**

CRJ1

Doc no	Day	Details	Fol	Analysis of receipts	Bank	Sales	VAT output	Sundry accounts		
								Amount	Fol	Details
R001	1	P Benroy		R 853 000,00	R 853 000,00		R	853 000,00	B1	Capital
CRR1	18	Cash sales		7 200,00	7 200,00	6 315,79	884,21			
CRR2	19	Cash sales		28 000,00	28 000,00	24 561,40	3 438,60			
CRR3	20	Credit card sales		8 900,00						
		Cash sales		12 310,00	21 210,00	18 605,26	2 604,74			
CRR4	21	Credit card sales		8 900,00						
		Cash sales		12 100,00	21 000,00	18 421,05	2 578,95			
CRR5	22	Credit card sales		15 000,00						
		Cash sales		20 000,00	35 000,00	30 701,75	4 298,25			
R002	23	B Hasty	***	4 550,00				3 991,23	N4	Rental income
CRR6		Credit card sales	***	4 140,00						
		Cash sales	***	10 000,00	18 690,00	12 403,51	1 736,49			
CPR7	26	Credit card sales		5 150,00						
		Cash sales		19 350,00	24 500,00	21 491,23	3 008,77			
CRR8	27	Cash sales		36 400,00	36 400,00	31 929,82	4 470,18			
CRR9	28	Cash sales		42 642,00	42 642,00	37 405,26	5 236,74			
CRR10	29	Cash sales		43 656,00	43 656,00	38 294,74	5 361,26			
CRR11	30	Credit card sales		10 000,00						
CRR11		Cash sales		16 400,00	26 400,00	23 157,89	3 242,11			
					1 157 698,00	263 287,70	37 419,07	856 991,23		
					B3	N1	B8			

\*\*\* The VAT output on the rental income will be calculated separately.

\*\*\* On 23 September 20.6 the credit card sales, R4 140,00 and the cash sales, R10 000,00 = R14 140,00.

VAT output is equal to: R14 140,00/1 x 14/114 = R1 736,49.

Sales: R14 140,00 – R1 736,49 = R12 403,51.

**The formula used to calculate VAT is:**

$$\frac{\% \text{-rate of VAT}}{100 + \% \text{-rate of VAT}} \times \frac{\text{Total amount}}{1}$$

**For example:**

$$\frac{14}{114} \times \frac{R7\,200,00}{1} = R884,21$$

The sales amount is:

$$R7\,200,00 \text{ (total amount of cheque)} - R884,21 \text{ (VAT)} = R6\,315,79$$

**PP TRADERS**  
**CASH PAYMENTS JOURNAL – SEPTEMBER 20.6**  
 CPJ1

Doc no	Day	Name of payee	Fol	Bank	Purchases	Stationery	VAT input	Sundry accounts	
								Amount	Fol
0001	2	Astor Agency		R 50 000,00			R 6 140,35	R 43 859,65	B4 Vehicles
0002	4	SR Manufacturers		R 150 000,00	R 131 578,95		R 18 421,05		
0003	5	Cash		R 400,00				R 400,00	PCJ1 Petty cash
0004	11	Speedy Suppliers		R 32 000,00	R 28 070,18		R 3 929,82		
0005	13	CNA		R 320,00		R 280,70	R 39,30		
0006	14	Protea Shopfitters		R 14 000,00			R 1 719,30	R 12 280,70	B5 Furniture and equipment
0007	15	Cash		R 400,00				R 400,00	B6 Cash float
0008	22	CP Wholesalers		R 76 000,00	R 66 666,67		R 9 333,33		
0009	27	Telkom		R 820,00			R 100,70	R 719,30	N5 Telephone expenses
0010	28	Municipality		R 3 400,00			R 392,98	R 2 807,02	N6 Water en electricity
0011		Cash		R 1 000,00				R 200,00	N7 Rates and taxes
0012	30	Simi and Son		R 530,00				R 1 000,00	B2 Drawings
								R 184,21	N8 Repairs
0013		Cash		R 322,00				R 280,70	N9 Packing material
								R 322,00	PCJ1 Petty cash
				R 329 192,00	R 226 315,80	R 280,70	R 40 141,92	R 62 453,58	
				B3	N2	N3	B9		

Cheque no 0011 is drawings of cash by the owner for his personal use. Because the owner provided the capital with which to start the business, he is entitled to the income earned by the entity. He therefore has the right to withdraw money for his personal use. The withdrawal results in a reduction of the amount in the bank and also in equity. The amount withdrawn by the owner is called drawings and the bank account will be credited and the drawings account will be debited. At the end of the financial period (usually a year) the drawings account will be closed off (credited) and the capital account will be debited with the amount, thus capital decreases.

Cheques no 0010 and 0012 are split cheques because each cheque was used to make more than one payment. The total amount of the cheque will be entered in the bank column, but all the expenses paid plus the amount paid for each must be indicated separately.

The formula used to calculate VAT is:

$$\frac{\% \text{ rate of VAT}}{100 + \% \text{ rate of VAT}} \times \frac{\text{Total amount}}{1}$$

For example:

$$\frac{14}{114} \times \frac{\text{R}50\,000,00}{1} = \text{R}6\,140,35$$

The vehicles amount is:

$$\text{R}50\,000,00 \text{ (total amount of cheque)} - \text{R}6\,140,35 \text{ (VAT)} = \text{R}43\,859,65$$

**PP TRADERS**

**PETTY CASH JOURNAL – SEPTEMBER 20.6**

PCJ1

Receipts				Payments								Sundry accounts	
Day	Fol	Amount	Day	Details	No	Fol	Total	Wages	VAT input	Postage	Amount	Fol	Details
5	CPJ1	R 400,00	8	Cash	1		R 120,00	R 120,00	R	R			
30	CPJ1	322,00	21	Cash	2		80,00	80,00	6,88		49,12	N3	Stationery
			22	CNA	3		56,00		8,11	57,89			
			26	Post office	4		66,00						
							322,00	200,00	14,99	57,89	49,12		
							B7	N11	B9	N10			

The formula used to calculate VAT is:

$$\frac{\% \text{ rate of VAT}}{100 + \% \text{ rate of VAT}} \times \frac{\text{Total amount}}{1}$$

For example:

$$\frac{14}{114} \times \frac{R56,00}{1} = R6,88$$

The stationery amount is:

$$R56,00 \text{ (total amount of cheque)} - R6,88 \text{ (VAT)} = R49,12$$

**PP TRADERS**  
**GENERAL LEDGER**  
**FINANCIAL POSITION SECTION**

Dr	Capital						B1	Cr
						20.6		
	Sep	1	Bank			CRJ1	853 000 00	

Dr	Drawings						B2	Cr
20.6	Sep	28	Bank	CPJ1	1 000 00			

Dr	Bank						B3	Cr
20.6	Sep	30	Total receipts	CRJ1	1 157 698 00	20.6		
						Sep	30	
						Total payments		
						Balance		
						CPJ1	329 192 00	
						c/d	828 506 00	
							1 157 698 00	
Oct	1	Balance	b/d		828 506 00			

Dr	Vehicles						B4	Cr
20.6	Sep	2	Bank	CPJ1	43 859 65			

Dr	Furniture and equipment						B5	Cr
20.6	Sep	14	Bank	CPJ1	12 280 70			

Dr	Cash float						B6	Cr
20.6	Sep	15	Bank	CPJ1	400 00			

Dr		Petty cash				B7				Cr
20.6					20.6					
Sep 30	Total receipts	PCJ1	722	00	Sep 30	Total payments	PCJ1	322	00	
						Balance	c/d	400	00	
			722	00				722	00	
Oct 1	Balance	b/d	400	00						

Dr		VAT output				B8				Cr
					20.6					
					Sep 30	Bank	CRJ1	37 419	07	

Dr		VAT input				B9				Cr
20.6										
Sep 30	Bank	CPJ1	40 141	92						
	Petty cash	PCJ1	14	99						
			40 156	91						

**NOMINAL ACCOUNTS SECTION**

Dr		Sales				N1				Cr
					20.6					
					Sep 30	Bank	CRJ1	263 287	70	

Dr		Purchases				N2				Cr
20.6										
Sep 30	Bank	CPJ1	226 315	80						

Dr		Stationery				N3				Cr
20.6										
Sep 22	Petty cash	PCJ1	49	12						
Sep 30	Bank	CPJ1	280	70						
			329	82						

Dr		Rental income				N4				Cr
					20.6					
					Sep 23	Bank	CRJ1	3 991	23	

Dr		Telephone expenses				N5				Cr
20.6										
Sep 27	Bank	CPJ1	719	30						



<b>Dr</b>		<b>Water and electricity</b>						<b>N6</b>		<b>Cr</b>
20.6										
Sep	28	Bank	CPJ1	2 807	02					


<b>Dr</b>		<b>Rates and taxes</b>						<b>N7</b>		<b>Cr</b>
20.6										
Sep	28	Bank	CPJ1	200	00					

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Repairs</b>						<b>N8</b>		<b>Cr</b>
20.6										
Sep	30	Bank	CPJ1	184	21					

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Packing material</b>						<b>N9</b>		<b>Cr</b>
20.6										
Sep	30	Bank	CPJ1	280	70					

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Postage</b>						<b>N10</b>		<b>Cr</b>
20.6										
Sep	30	Petty cash	PCJ1	57	89					

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Wages</b>						<b>N11</b>		<b>Cr</b>
20.6										
Sep	30	Petty cash	PCJ1	200	00					

	<h3>SELF-ASSESSMENT</h3> <p>After you have worked through this learning unit, are you able to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• define a split cheque?</li> <li>• define drawings?</li> <li>• prepare a cash receipts journal?</li> <li>• prepare a cash payments journal?</li> <li>• prepare a petty cash journal?</li> <li>• post to the general ledger from the cash receipts journal, cash payments journal or petty cash journal?</li> </ul>	<p>☺ ☺ ☺ ☺ ☺ ☺</p>	<p>☹ ☹ ☹ ☹ ☹ ☹</p>	<p>☹ ☹ ☹ ☹ ☹ ☹</p>
---	---	--	--	--

If you have marked all ☺ you may continue to the next learning unit .

If you have marked any ☹ you have to *revise* that specific section.

If you have marked any ☹ you have to **re-study** that specific section.

**FAC1501**

**LEARNING UNIT 6**

**CREDIT TRANSACTIONS**



**Introductory Financial  
Accounting**

## OVERVIEW

Learning outcomes .....	193
Key Concepts .....	193
Assessment criteria .....	193
6.1 Introduction .....	193
6.2 Purchases journal .....	194
6.3 Purchases returns journal .....	198
6.4 Creditors ledger.....	200
6.5 Payment to a creditor and settlement discount received.....	201
6.6 Creditors control account in the general ledger .....	201
6.7 Creditors reconciliation.....	202
6.8 Disclosure of creditors in the financial statements .....	202
6.9 Sales journal .....	203
6.10 Sales returns journal .....	205
6.11 Debtors ledger.....	208
6.12 Payment by a debtor and settlement discount granted .....	208
6.13 Debtors control account in the general ledger .....	208
6.14 Disclosure of debtors in the financial statements.....	210
6.15 General journal.....	210
6.15.1 Interest charged on overdue accounts .....	210
6.15.2 Credit losses.....	210
6.15.3 Correction of errors .....	211
Self-assessment.....	228

## LEARNING OUTCOMES

After studying this learning unit , you should be able to:

- prepare a purchases journal
- prepare a purchases returns journal
- prepare a creditors control account in the general ledger
- prepare a creditors ledger
- prepare a sales journal
- prepare a sales returns journal
- prepare a debtors control account in the general ledger
- prepare a debtors ledger
- record credit losses in the general journal and general ledger
- record VAT transactions that relate to credit transactions
- prepare a general journal

## KEY CONCEPTS

- Purchases journal
- Purchases returns journal
- Creditors ledger
- Creditors control account
- Sales journal
- Sales returns journal
- Debtors ledger
- Debtors control account
- Credit purchase invoice
- Credit sales invoice
- Credit note
- General journal



## ASSESSMENT CRITERIA

- Source documents applicable to credit transactions are identified using appropriate example from entities.
- The ability to complete business documents applicable to credit transactions from relevant financial data is demonstrated.
- The ability to record credit transactions of a sole proprietor in the appropriate subsidiary books and the various ledgers from source documents is demonstrated.
- The ability to identify incorrect entries made by the entity and correct these errors in the appropriate subsidiary journal.

## 6.1 INTRODUCTION

There are two types of transactions, namely cash transactions and credit transactions. In this learning unit, we deal only with credit transactions. In learning unit 4 we dealt with cash transactions.

If goods are sold or a service is rendered for cash, the transaction is recorded as follows:

Dr	Bank
Cr	Sales/Services rendered

What happens if a client is not able to pay cash for goods sold or a service rendered? The person selling the goods or rendering the service has the choice of granting credit to the client. Think of all the clothing, furniture and vehicles bought on credit. Due to the high risk associated with this, many business entities do not allow credit, as people may not have the money to pay their debts. It remains the entity's choice whether to allow goods to be bought on credit, but if the items sold by the entity are fairly expensive, for example vehicles, many buyers may not be able to afford buying the product for cash.

Just as individuals cannot afford to pay cash for all purchases, entities too (irrespective of their size), cannot always pay cash for transactions. So entities sometimes also need to make use of credit, mostly to purchase goods or to buy non-current assets. With credit purchases of this nature, it is very important that comprehensive records be kept, as the purchases must be settled at some stage and great care should be taken to ensure that the necessary funds are available to pay these liabilities.

This learning unit covers the purchases journal, creditors ledger, creditors control account in the general ledger, creditors reconciliation, disclosure of creditors in the financial statements, sales journal, debtors ledger and the debtors control account in the general ledger. It also covers entries in the general journal.

## 6.2 PURCHASES JOURNAL

This journal records credit transactions where goods have been purchased.

The implications of such credit purchases are important. If goods have been purchased and have not yet been paid for, it means that money is still owed to the entity it has been purchased from. An entity to which money is owed is known as a creditor and the entity remains responsible for that debt until it has been settled. A creditor's account has a credit balance, as it is a liability for the entity (a current liability).

All transactions where purchases are made on credit, are recorded in the purchases journal. If goods are purchased on credit, the entity from which they are purchased issues a credit invoice in duplicate. The entity from which the goods are purchased keeps the duplicate and gives the original to the purchasing entity. The entry is therefore made from the original invoice.

**EXAMPLE OF A CREDIT PURCHASES INVOICE**

<b>BS ELECTRICAL</b>			
499 Tshwane Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 429-3111 Email:accounts@bselectrical.co.za		VAT registration number 8960225750	P O Box 392 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 429-3424
<b>Date:</b>	<b>TAX INVOICE</b>	<b>No:</b>	
<b>To:</b>			
<b>Terms: 30 days less 10%</b>			
Code	Description	Qty	Total price (R)
<b>Subtotal</b>			
<b>VAT @ 14%</b>			
<b>Total</b>			
<b>Amount tendered</b>			
<b>Amount due</b>			
<b>E &amp; OE</b>			

**EXAMPLE OF A PURCHASES JOURNAL****PURCHASES JOURNAL – SEPTEMBER 20.1***PJ1*

Doc no	Day	Details	Fol	VAT input	Purchases	Creditors
				<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>

The source documents for the entries in the purchases journal are original invoices. Because these invoices come from different entities, they have different invoice numbers and formats.

Entries are recorded and analysed in date order in the purchases journal. The creditor's name and the amount for which purchases were made must be clearly shown. The amounts in the purchases and the creditors columns are different because VAT is also taken into consideration when determining the amount to be entered in the creditors column.

At the end of the month, the columns in the purchases journal are added up. The totals of the columns are posted to the relevant accounts in the general ledger and the individual entries are posted to the creditors accounts in the creditors ledger. This process is referred to as closing off the purchases journal. At the beginning of the next month, a new purchases journal is opened.

Where applicable, provision must be made for a VAT input column in the purchases journal. This column may not always be used, as the entity from which the goods were purchased might not be registered as a VAT vendor with SARS.

If, on the other hand, the entity is registered for VAT, VAT in the purchases journal must be accounted for at the current rate of 14%.

The entity, from which the merchandise was purchased, is responsible for paying the VAT to SARS. The VAT included in the purchase price by the entity is debited against the VAT input account when the purchases journal is closed off at the end of the month. The purchases column will only show the net amount of purchases. The net amount of purchases is the amount paid/payable for the purchases less the VAT that was added to the purchase price.

The purchases journal is closed off at the end of each month. The closing off procedure can be summarised as follows:

- Add the purchases and VAT columns of the purchases journal and make sure that the figures cross-balance with the total of the creditors column.
- Transfer the individual entries to the corresponding creditor's personal accounts in the creditors ledger.
- Post the column totals of the purchases journal to the relevant accounts in the general ledger, taking care to observe the golden rule of accounting: for each debit entry there must be an equal credit entry.
- Enter the folio numbers from the general ledger and creditors ledger in the appropriate column in the purchases journal.



## RECORDING OF TRANSACTIONS FROM CREDIT PURCHASES INVOICES

The following transactions took place in BS Electrical during September 20.1:

<b>RG WHOLESALERS</b>			
7 Smart Street PRETORIA Tel (012) 429-3931		VAT registration number 2277227756	P O Box 3336 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 429-3931
<b>Date:</b> 12 September 20.1		<b>TAX INVOICE</b>	<b>No:</b> A7712
<b>To:</b> BS Electrical 499 Tshwane Drive Pretoria VAT registration number 8960225750			
<b>Terms:</b> 30 days less 10%			
Code	Description	Qty	Total price (R)
LS025	Light fittings	5 boxes	12 000,00
<b>Subtotal</b>			12 000,00
<b>VAT @ 14%</b>			1 680,00
<b>Total</b>			13 680,00
<b>Amount tendered</b>			0,00
<b>Amount due</b>			13 680,00
<b>E &amp; OE</b>			

<b>ST WHOLESALERS</b>			
776 Wood Street JOHANNESBURG Tel (011) 429-3933		VAT registration number 7894561233	P O Box 635 JOHANNESBURG 1528 Fax (011) 429-3424
<b>Date:</b> 25 September 20.1		<b>TAX INVOICE</b>	<b>No:</b> B1821
<b>To:</b> BS Electrical 499 Tshwane Drive Pretoria VAT registration number 8960225750			
<b>Terms:</b> 30 days less 10%			
Code	Description	Qty	Total price (R)
C5623	Two phase electrical cable	2 000 m	15 000,00
<b>Subtotal</b>			15 000,00
<b>VAT @ 14%</b>			2 100,00
<b>Totaal</b>			17 100,00
<b>Amount tendered</b>			0,00
<b>Amount due</b>			17 100,00
<b>E &amp; OE</b>			

**REQUIRED**

Record the above transactions in the purchases journal of BS Electrical for the month of September 20.1.

**BS ELECTRICAL****PURCHASES JOURNAL – SEPTEMBER 20.1***PJ1*

<b>Doc no</b>	<b>Day</b>	<b>Details</b>	<b>FoI</b>	<b>VAT input</b>	<b>Purchases</b>	<b>Creditors</b>
				<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>
A7712	12	RG Wholesalers	CL1	1 680	12 000	13 680
B1821	25	ST Wholesalers	CL2	2 100	15 000	17 100

**6.3 PURCHASES RETURNS JOURNAL**

If an entity buys merchandise or other items on credit and are not entirely satisfied with their purchase, they are entitled to return these items. When an item is returned by an entity the transaction is recorded on a debit note. This debit note is sent together with the item to the entity it was purchased from. Upon receipt of the debit note and returned item the selling entity issues a credit note in duplicate. This credit note acknowledges that they received the returned goods and that they are crediting the account of the entity who returned the goods. Remember that the purchasing entity is a debtor in their book and when the goods are originally purchased their account was debited. By crediting their account with the amount of the returned goods they now owe the selling entity less. As in the case of the purchases journal, only goods in which the entity trades are recorded in the purchase returns journal, whereas all other items, for example stationery bought and returned, is recorded in the general journal.

A debit note is sent to the seller, together with the returned goods; that entity acknowledges receipt of the goods and issues a credit note. The entry is made from this credit note which is similar to the credit note illustrated in the section on sales returns.

## EXAMPLE OF A CREDIT NOTE

<b>BS ELECTRICAL</b>			
499 Tshwane Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 429-3111 Email:accounts@bselectrical.co.za	VAT registration number 8960225750	P O Box 392 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 429-3424	
<b>Date:</b>	<b>CREDIT NOTE</b>	<b>No:</b>	
<b>To:</b>			
<b>Code</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Qty</b>	<b>Amount credited (R)</b>
<b>Subtotal</b>			
<b>VAT @ 14%</b>			
<b>Total credit due</b>			
<b>E &amp; OE</b>			

## EXAMPLE OF A PURCHASES RETURNS JOURNAL

### PURCHASES RETURNS JOURNAL – SEPTEMBER 20.1

*PRJ1*

Doc no	Day	Details	Fol	VAT input	Purchases returns	Creditors
				<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>

The procedure at the end of the month is the same as for the purchases journal.

## RECORDING OF TRANSACTIONS FROM A CREDIT NOTE

The following transaction took place in BS Electrical during September 20.1:

RG WHOLESALERS			
7 Smart Street PRETORIA Tel (012) 429-3931	VAT registration number 2277227756	P O Box 3336 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 429-3424	
<b>Date:</b> 16 September 20.1		<b>CREDIT NOTE</b>	<b>No:</b> 5859
<b>To:</b> BS Electrical 499 Tshwane Drive Pretoria			
Code	Description	Qty	Amount credited (R)
LS025	Light fittings	1	2 400,00
<b>Subtotal</b>			2 400,00
<b>VAT @ 14%</b>			336,00
<b>Total credit due</b>			2 736,00
<b>E &amp; OE</b>			

### REQUIRED

Record the above transaction in the purchases returns journal of BS Electrical for the month of September 20.1.

#### BS ELECTRICAL

#### PURCHASES RETURNS JOURNAL – SEPTEMBER 20.1

*PRJ1*

Doc no	Day	Details	Fol	VAT input	Purchases returns	Creditors
5859	16	RG Wholesalers	CL1	R 336	R 2 400	R 2 736

### 6.4 CREDITORS LEDGER

Just as records of all transactions that the entity had, are kept in the general ledger, record need to be kept of all transactions with individual creditors. Apart from the general ledger, a subsidiary ledger called the creditors ledger, is kept. In this ledger an account is opened for each individual creditor. The transactions from the purchases journal and purchases returns journal are posted to these individual accounts. The purpose of this ledger is to enable the entity to, at any time, know what amount is payable to each individual creditor. It is also important that if the balances of the individual

accounts are added, they should correspond with the balance of the creditors control account in the general ledger.

## 6.5 PAYMENT TO A CREDITOR AND SETTLEMENT DISCOUNT RECEIVED

When creditors are paid within a specified period according to an agreement, the entity may get a discount on the outstanding amount. We refer to this discount as settlement discount received.

## 6.6 CREDITORS CONTROL ACCOUNT IN THE GENERAL LEDGER

The creditors control account in the general ledger must reflect a summary of all the transactions with creditors recorded in the creditors ledger. The creditors control account is prepared from the total of the creditors column in the purchases journal and the purchases returns journal. Creditors are recorded in two ledgers, namely as a control account in the general ledger and as individual accounts in the creditors ledger. An entity should be able to tell, at any time, what amount is owed to all outstanding creditors as a collective.

**ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLE OF POSTING FROM THE SUBSIDIARY JOURNALS FOR CREDIT PURCHASES TO THE CREDITORS CONTROL ACCOUNT IN THE GENERAL LEDGER**

### BS ELECTRICAL

#### PURCHASES JOURNAL – SEPTEMBER 20.1

*PJ1*

Doc no	Day	Details	Fol	VAT input	Purchases	Creditors
				R	R	R
A7712	12	RG Wholesalers	CL1	1 680	12 000	13 680
B1821	25	ST Wholesalers	CL2	2 100	15 000	17 100
				3 780	27 000	30 780
						B10

### BS ELECTRICAL

#### PURCHASES RETURNS JOURNAL – SEPTEMBER 20.1

*PRJ1*

Doc no	Day	Details	Fol	VAT input	Purchases returns	Creditors
				R	R	R
5859	16	RG Wholesalers	CL1	336	2 400	2 736
				336	2 400	2 736
						B10

**REQUIRED**

Post the creditors totals of the above journals to the creditors control account in the general ledger.

**BS ELECTRICAL  
GENERAL LEDGER**

Dr		Creditors control				B10		Cr	
20.1					20.1				
Sep	30	Purchases returns and VAT	PRJ1	2 736	Sep	30	Purchases and VAT	PJ1	30 780
		Balance	c/d	28 044					
				30 780					30 780
					Oct	1	Balance	b/d	28 044

## 6.7 CREDITORS RECONCILIATION

At the end of each month, an entity receives statements of account from each creditor, indicating the amounts owing. The balances shown on these statements should correspond with the creditors individual accounts in the creditors ledger. If not, an investigation will have to be carried out to determine the reasons for the difference. The easiest way to try to trace errors is by means of a creditors reconciliation.

This is done in the same way as a bank reconciliation, which will be dealt with in a later learning unit .

- Tick off all the corresponding items on the statement and on the creditor's personal account.
- Circle the items that do not correspond on the statement and the creditor's personal account.
- Correct the errors on the relevant creditor's account and the control account.

Rectifying of errors in a creditor's reconciliation:

- If errors appear in a creditor's account in the creditors ledger, these must be rectified in the general ledger (creditors control account). It will also be necessary to update the individual creditor's account.
- If errors appear on the statement received from a creditor, the creditor should be notified to enable him/her to correct his/her own records. In the entity's records, the errors will appear on the creditors reconciliation statement.

## 6.8 DISCLOSURE OF CREDITORS IN THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

- Creditors will be disclosed as trade and other payables in the statement of financial position under the heading "current liabilities".
- Purchases will appear in the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income as part of cost of sales.
- Purchases returns is deducted from purchases. This is done as a closing entry by way of the general journal and is discussed in a later learning unit .

## 6.9 SALES JOURNAL

All transactions in respect of goods sold or services rendered on credit are entered in the sales journal. When a client buys goods, an invoice is issued and the entry is made from the copy of the invoice (which remains in the invoice book, with the original invoice being issued to the client). The person who buys merchandise from the entity on credit is referred to as a debtor and he/she will remain as a debtor until he/she pays all the money he/she owes the entity.

### EXAMPLE OF A CREDIT SALES INVOICE

BS ELECTRICAL				
499 Tshwane Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 429–3111 Email:accounts@bselectrical.co.za		VAT registration number 8960225750		P O Box 392 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 429–3424
<b>Date:</b>	<b>TAX INVOICE</b>		<b>No:</b>	
<b>To:</b>				
<b>Terms: 30 days less 10%</b>				
Code	Description	Qty	Unit price (R)	Total price (R)
<b>Subtotal</b>				
<b>VAT @ 14%</b>				
<b>Total</b>				
<b>Amount tendered</b>				
<b>Amount due</b>				
<b>E &amp; OE</b>				

**Note:** There is no special difference between the invoice used for cash sales and the one used for credit sales. In most entities the layout of the cash and credit invoices are exactly the same.

### EXAMPLE OF A SALES JOURNAL

#### SALES JOURNAL – SEPTEMBER 20.1

*SJ1*

Doc no	Day	Details	Fol	VAT output	Sales	Debtors
				R	R	R

The source documents for the entries in the sales journal are the duplicates of sales invoices.

The debtor's name and the amount of the transaction should be clearly indicated. Entries are recorded and analysed in date order in the sales journal. The amounts in the sales and the debtors columns are different as we are taking VAT into consideration in the debtors column.

At the end of the month, the columns in the sales journal are added. The totals of the columns are posted to the relevant accounts in the general ledger and the individual entries are posted to the debtors accounts in the debtors ledger. This process is referred to as closing off the sales journal. At the beginning of the next month, a new sales journal is opened.

Where applicable, provision must be made for a VAT output column in the sales journal. VAT in the sales journal must be accounted for at the current rate of 14%.

The VAT included in the selling price by the entity is credited against the VAT output account when the sales journal is closed off at the end of the month.

The sales journal is closed off at the end of each month. This procedure can thus be summarised as follows:

- Add the sales and VAT output columns of the sales journal together and make sure that the figures cross-balance with the total of the debtors column.
- Transfer the individual entries to the corresponding debtor's personal account in the debtors ledger.
- Post the column totals of the sales journal to the relevant accounts in the general ledger, taking care to observe the golden rule of accounting: for each debit entry there must be an equal credit entry.
- Enter the folio numbers from the general ledger and debtors ledger in the appropriate column in the sales journal.

### ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLE OF RECORDING TRANSACTIONS IN A SALES JOURNAL

BS Electrical issued the following invoices during September 20.1:

BS ELECTRICAL				
499 Tshwane Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 429–3111 Email:accounts@bselectrical.co.za		VAT registration number 8960225750		PO Box 392 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 429–3424
<b>Date:</b> 12 September 20.1		<b>TAX INVOICE</b>		<b>No:</b> BS001
<b>To:</b> Mr P Peter				
<b>Terms:</b> 30 days less 10%				
Code	Description	Qty	Unit price (R)	Total price (R)
PS1005	Plug switches	2	1 250,00	2 500,00
<b>Subtotal</b>				2 500,00
<b>VAT @ 14%</b>				350,00
<b>Total</b>				2 850,00
<b>Amount tendered</b>				0,00
<b>Amount due</b>				2 850,00
<b>E &amp; OE</b>				



BS ELECTRICAL				
499 Tshwane Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 429–3111 Email:accounts@bselectrical.co.za			PO Box 392 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 429–3424	
VAT registration number 8960225750				
<b>Date:</b> 12 September 20.1		<b>TAX INVOICE</b>		<b>No:</b> BS002
<b>To:</b> Mrs J Johnson 10 Leyd Street Pretoria VAT registration number 4325102345				
<b>Terms:</b> 30 days less 10%				
Code	Description	Qty	Unit price (R)	Total price (R)
FLF1002	Fluorescent light fittings	1 box	7 000,00	7 000,00
<b>Subtotal</b>				7 000,00
<b>VAT @ 14%</b>				980,00
<b>Total</b>				7 980,00
<b>Amount tendered</b>				0,00
<b>Amount due</b>				7 980,00
<b>E &amp; OE</b>				

## REQUIRED

Record the above transactions in the sales journal of BS Electrical for the month of September 20.1.

### BS ELECTRICAL

#### SALES JOURNAL – SEPTEMBER 20.1

SJ1

Doc no	Day	Details	Fol	VAT output	Sales	Debtors
				R	R	R
BS001	12	Mr P Peter	DL1	350	2 500	2 850
BS002		Mrs J Johnson	DL2	980	7 000	7 980
				1 330	9 500	10 830

### 6.10 SALES RETURNS JOURNAL

If a service is rendered or goods sold on credit and the client is not entirely satisfied, the entity may demand to be refunded in part or in full. If, however, the account has not yet been settled, the amount paid back to the client will simply be credited to the debtors account. These types of transactions, however, must also be recorded in a book of first entry (journal) and the journal used in this particular case is the sales returns journal.

A credit note must be issued to the client to acknowledge the fact that the goods/merchandise was returned. A credit note is completed in duplicate and the original is handed to the client.

### EXAMPLE OF A CREDIT NOTE

<b>BS ELECTRICAL</b>				
499 Tshwane Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 429–3111 Email:accounts@bselectrical.co.za		VAT registration number 8960225750		PO Box 392 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 429–3424
<b>Date:</b>		<b>CREDIT NOTE</b>		<b>No:</b>
<b>To:</b>				
Product no	Description	Qty	Unit price (R)	Amount credited (R)
<b>Total</b>				
<b>VAT @ 14%</b>				
<b>Total credit due</b>				
<b>E &amp; OE</b>				

### EXAMPLE OF A SALES RETURNS JOURNAL

SALES RETURNS JOURNAL – SEPTEMBER 20.1

SRJ1

Doc no	Day	Details	Fol	VAT output	Sales returns	Debtors
				R	R	R

The procedure at the end of the month is the same as that for the sales journal.

## ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLE OF RECORDING TRANSACTIONS IN A SALES RETURNS JOURNAL

The following source documents were obtained from BS Electrical during September 20.1:

<b>BS ELECTRICAL</b>				
499 Tshwane Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 429–3111 Email:accounts@bselectrical.co.za			PO Box 392 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 429–3424	
			VAT registration number 8960225750	
<b>Date:</b> 18 September 20.1		<b>CREDIT NOTE</b>		<b>No:</b> CN001
<b>To:</b> Mr P Peter				
Product no	Description	Qty	Unit price (R)	Amount credited (R)
PS1005	Plug switches	1	1 250,00	1 250,00
<b>Total</b>				1 250,00
<b>VAT @ 14%</b>				175,00
<b>Total credit due</b>				1 425,00
<b>E &amp; OE</b>				

<b>BS ELECTRICAL</b>				
499 Tshwane Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 429–3111 Email:accounts@bselectrical.co.za			PO Box 392 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 429–3424	
			VAT registration number 8960225750	
<b>Date:</b> 19 September 20.1		<b>CREDIT NOTE</b>		<b>No:</b> CN002
<b>To:</b> Mrs J Johnson 10 Leyd Street Pretoria VAT registration number 4325102345				
Product no	Description	Qty	Unit price (R)	Amount credited (R)
FLF1002	Fluorescent light fittings	1 box	7 000,00	7 000,00
<b>Total</b>				7 000,00
<b>VAT @ 14%</b>				980,00
<b>Total credit due</b>				7 980,00
<b>E &amp; OE</b>				

**REQUIRED**

Record the above transactions in the sales returns journal of BS Electrical for the month of September 20.1.

**SOLUTION****BS ELECTRICAL****SALES RETURNS JOURNAL – SEPTEMBER 20.1**

SRJ1

Doc no	Day	Details	Fol	VAT output	Sales returns	Debtors
				R	R	R
CN001	18	Mr P Peter	DL1	175	1 250	1 425
CN002	19	Mrs J Johnson	DL2	980	7 000	7 980
				1 155	8 250	9 405

**6.11 DEBTORS LEDGER**

Just as records of all transactions of the entity are kept in the general ledger, record need to be kept of all transactions with individual debtors. Apart from the general ledger a subsidiary ledger, called the debtors ledger, is kept. In this ledger an account is opened for each individual debtor. The transactions from the sales journal and sales returns journal are posted to these individual accounts. The purpose of this ledger is to enable the entity to, at any time, know what amount is owed by each individual debtor. It is also important that, if the balances of the individual accounts are added, they should correspond with the balance of the debtors control account in the general ledger.

**6.12 PAYMENT BY A DEBTOR AND SETTLEMENT DISCOUNT GRANTED**

Discount is often offered to debtors in order to encourage a quick settlement of their debts within the stated credit term. The credit term will be shown on the credit invoice, for example 30 days from date of sale. This means that if a debtor pays off his/her account before 30 days from date of sale, the debtor will receive a discount on the total amount owing.

**6.13 DEBTORS CONTROL ACCOUNT IN THE GENERAL LEDGER**

The total of the individual debtors account balances in the debtors ledger should be equal to the balance of the debtors control account in the general ledger. When there are differences, it may be that the entity has forgotten to transfer a transaction or that a transaction has been transferred incorrectly. Debtors are recorded in two ledgers, namely as a control account in the general ledger and as individual accounts in the debtors ledger. An entity should be able to tell, at any time, what amount is owed by all outstanding debtors as a collective.

**ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLE OF POSTING FROM THE SUBSIDIARY JOURNALS FOR  
CREDIT SALES TO THE DEBTORS CONTROL  
ACCOUNT IN THE GENERAL LEDGER**

**BS ELECTRICAL****SALES JOURNAL – SEPTEMBER 20.1**

SJ2

Doc no	Day	Details	Fol	VAT output	Sales	Debtors
				R	R	R
BS001	12	Mr P Peter	DL1	350	2 500	2 850
BS002		Mrs J Johnson	DL2	980	7 000	7 980
				1 330	9 500	10 830
						B11

**BS ELECTRICAL****SALES RETURNS JOURNAL – SEPTEMBER 20.1**

SRJ2

Doc no	Day	Details	Fol	VAT output	Sales returns	Debtors
				R	R	R
CN001	18	Mr P Peter	DL1	175	1 250	1 425
CN002	19	Mrs J Johnson	DL2	980	7 000	7 980
				1 155	8 250	9 405
						B11

**REQUIRED**

Post the debtors' totals of the above journals to the debtors control account in the general ledger.

**SOLUTION****BS ELECTRICAL****GENERAL LEDGER**

Dr				Debtors control				B11		Cr
20.1				20.1						
Sep	30	Sales and VAT	SJ2	Sep	30	Sales returns and VAT	SRJ2		9 405	
						Balance	c/d		1 425	
									10 830	
Oct	1	Balance	b/d							

## 6.14 DISCLOSURE OF DEBTORS IN THE FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

- Debtors will be disclosed as trade and other receivables in the statement of financial position under heading “current assets”.
- Sales will appear in the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income.
- Sales returns will be deducted from sales. This is done as a closing entry by way of the general journal and is discussed in a later learning unit .

## 6.15 GENERAL JOURNAL

The general journal is used for recording all transactions that do not “fit” or cannot be recorded into any of the other subsidiary journals.

### EXAMPLE OF A GENERAL JOURNAL

#### GENERAL JOURNAL – JANUARY 20.4

*GJ1*

Day	Details	Fol	Debit	Credit
4	Stationery ( <b>account to be debited</b> ) ABC Traders ( <b>account to be credited</b> )  Stationery bought on credit – Invoice A2151 (Journal narration)		R xxx	R xxx

The account which is entered first is the account which has to be debited in the general ledger. The account that is going to be credited is entered on the next line and a little to the right so that it can stand out from the account that is going to be debited.

The journal narration is very important since it gives the reason for the entry and must also refer to the source documents.

The general journal is a book of first entry. The double-entry principle must be applied in the general ledger when posting this journal.

### 6.15.1 Interest charged on overdue accounts

Many entities charge interest on the outstanding debt if an account is not paid within the credit term. Interest charged on overdue accounts, is regarded as an interest income. Interest income is classified as an income account and is therefore credited because it increases equity. The debtors control account/personal account of debtor is debited, because it is an asset account and the interest charged on the overdue account is added to the original amount owed by the debtor.

### 6.15.2 Credit losses

With every credit transaction there is always a possibility that the debt might not be paid. These unpaid debts must be written off as a credit loss. If a debtor owes money to an entity and he/she cannot pay, and if all the proper measures were taken by the entity to recover the outstanding debt but failed, then the amount the debtor owes must be written off as a credit loss.

### 6.15.3 Correction of errors

Sometimes transactions are entered in the incorrect ledger accounts. The correction of these errors is made in the general journal.

#### ILLUSTRATIVE EXAMPLE OF RECORDING TRANSACTIONS IN A GENERAL JOURNAL

The following transactions took place in BS Electrical during September 20.1:

30	Mrs J Johnson's account of R800 was six months overdue and interest was charged at 10% per annum.
	Mr T Thomas's account of R285 must be written off as irrecoverable.
	It was found that repairs done to the delivery vehicle for R1 200 was incorrectly debited to the insurance account. This error must be corrected.

#### REQUIRED

Record the above transactions in the general journal and general ledger of BS Electrical for the month of September 20.1.

#### BS ELECTRICAL

##### GENERAL JOURNAL – SEPTEMBER 20.1

GJ9

Day	Details	Fol	Debit	Credit
			R	R
30	Mrs J Johnson (Debtors control) Interest income Interest charged at 10% per annum for six months on outstanding amount	B5 N3	40,00	40,00
	Credit losses VAT input Mr T Thomas (Debtors control) Wrote off account as irrecoverable	N4 B9 B5	250,00 35,00	285,00
	Repairs Insurance Error corrected	N5 N6	1 200,00	1 200,00

<b>BS ELECTRICAL</b>				
499 Tshwane Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 429-3111 E-mail:accounts@bselectrical.co.za			P O Box 392 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 429-3424	
			VAT registration number 8960225750	
<b>Date:</b> 10 June 20.8		<b>TAX INVOICE</b>		<b>No:</b> 004
<b>To:</b> Mr J Mtuli				
<b>Terms:</b> 30 days less 10%				
Code	Description	Qty	Unit Price (R)	Total price (R)
TCK789	Light fittings	4	750,00	3 000,00
<b>Subtotal</b>				3 000,00
<b>VAT @ 14%</b>				420,00
<b>Total</b>				3 420,00
<b>Amount tendered</b>				0,00
<b>Amount due</b>				3 420,00
<b>E &amp; OE</b>				

<b>HALL TRADERS</b>				
123 Main Street PRETORIA Tel (012) 429-1234 E-mail:accounts@halltraders.co.za			PO Box 6006 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 429-5678	
			VAT registration number 1234567890	
<b>Date:</b> 13 June 20.8		<b>TAX INVOICE</b>		<b>No:</b> T29
<b>To:</b> BS Electrical 499 Tshwane Drive Pretoria VAT registration number 8960225750				
<b>Terms:</b> 30 days less 10%				
Code	Description	Qty	Unit price (R)	Total price (R)
XYZ897	Three phase electrical cable	250 m	46,00	11 500,00
<b>Subtotal</b>				11 500,00
<b>VAT @ 14%</b>				1 610,00
<b>Total</b>				13 110,00
<b>Amount tendered</b>				0,00
<b>Amount due</b>				13 110,00
<b>E &amp; OE</b>				



<b>BS ELECTRICAL</b>				
499 Tshwane Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 429-3111 E-mail:accounts@bselectrical.co.za			P O Box 392 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 429-3424	
			VAT registration number 8960225750	
<b>Date:</b> 14 June 20.8		<b>CREDIT NOTE</b>		<b>No:</b> 023
<b>To:</b> Mr J Mtuli				
<b>Product no</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Qty</b>	<b>Unit Price (R)</b>	<b>Amount credited (R)</b>
TCK789	Light fittings	1	750,00	750,00
<b>Total</b>				750,00
<b>VAT @ 14%</b>				105,00
<b>Total credit due</b>				855,00
<b>E &amp; OE</b>				

<b>HALL TRADERS</b>				
123 Main Street PRETORIA Tel (012) 429-1234 E-mail:accounts@halltraders.co.za			P O Box 6006 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 429-5678	
			VAT registration number 123456780	
<b>Date:</b> 16 June 20.8		<b>CREDIT NOTE</b>		<b>No:</b> 012
<b>To:</b> BS Electrical				
<b>Product no</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Qty</b>	<b>Unit Price (R)</b>	<b>Amount credited (R)</b>
XYZ897	Thre phase electrical cable	50 m	46,00	2 300,00
<b>Total</b>				2 300,00
<b>VAT @ 14%</b>				322,00
<b>Total credit due</b>				2 622,00
<b>E &amp; OE</b>				

<b>BS ELECTRICAL</b>				
499 Tshwane Drive PRETORIA Tel (012) 429-3111 E-mail:accounts@bselectrical.co.za			P O Box 392 PRETORIA 0001 Fax (012) 429-3424	
			VAT registration number 8960225750	
<b>Date:</b> 17 June 20.8		<b>CREDIT NOTE</b>		<b>No:</b> 024
<b>To:</b> Mrs P Singh				
Product no	Description	Qty	Unit Price (R)	Amount credited (R)
EC1002	Two phase electrical cable	2 m	800,00	1 600,00
<b>Subtotal</b>				1 600,00
<b>VAT @ 14%</b>				224,00
<b>Total credit due</b>				1 824,00
<b>E &amp; OE</b>				

<b>KZN DEALERS</b>				
456 Tambotie Road JOHANNESBURG Tel (011) 429-3830 E-mail:accounts@kzndealers.co.za			PO Box 753 LITTLE FALLS 0002 Fax (011) 429-3933	
			VAT registration number 4567891230	
<b>Date:</b> 18 June 20.8		<b>TAX INVOICE</b>		<b>No:</b> 789
<b>To:</b> BS Electrical 499 Tshwane Drive Pretoria VAT registration number 8960225750				
<b>Terms: 30 days less 10%</b>				
Code	Description	Qty	Unit price (R)	Total price (R)
PLP456	Cash register	1	2 500,00	2 500,00
JYH123	Electrical plugs	1 000	3,55	3 550,00
<b>Subtotal</b>				6 050,00
<b>VAT @ 14%</b>				847,00
<b>Total</b>				6 897,00
<b>Amount tendered</b>				0,00
<b>Amount due</b>				6 897,00
<b>E &amp; OE</b>				

**REQUIRED**

Complete the following books of prime entry for BS Electrical for June 20.8. Make use of the column headings as indicated.

**BS ELECTRICAL****PURCHASES JOURNAL – JUNE 20.8***PJ 6*

Doc no	Day	Details	Fol	VAT input	Purchases	Creditors
				R	R	R

**BS ELECTRICAL****PURCHASES RETURNS JOURNAL – JUNE 20.8***PRJ 6*

Doc no	Day	Details	Fol	VAT input	Purchases returns	Creditors
				R	R	R

**BS ELECTRICAL****SALES JOURNAL – JUNE 20.8***SJ 6*

Doc no	Day	Details	Fol	VAT output	Sales	Debtors
				R	R	R

**BS ELECTRICAL****SALES RETURNS JOURNAL – JUNE 20.8***SRJ 6*

Doc no	Day	Details	Fol	VAT output	Sales returns	Debtors
				R	R	R

**BS ELECTRICAL****GENERAL JOURNAL – JUNE 20.8***GJ 6*

Day	Details	Fol	Debit	Credit
			R	R

- (1) Post the journals after closing to the appropriate accounts in the general, debtors and creditors ledgers. Balance all accounts.
- (2) Prepare the debtors and creditors lists.

**SOLUTION: COMPREHENSIVE EXAMPLE TWO**

**BS ELECTRICAL**

**PURCHASES JOURNAL – JUNE 20.8**

*PJ 6*

Doc no	Day	Details	Fol	VAT input	Purchases	Creditors
				<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>
T29	13	Hall Traders	C1	1 610	11 500	13 110
789	18	KZN Dealers	C2	497	3 550	4 047
				2 107	15 050	17 157
				B9	N2	B8

**BS ELECTRICAL**

**PURCHASES RETURNS JOURNAL – JUNE 20.8**

*PRJ 6*

Doc no	Day	Details	Fol	VAT input	Purchases returns	Creditors
				<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>
012	16	Hall Traders	C1	322	2 300	2 622
				322	2 300	2 622
				B9	N4	B8

**BS ELECTRICAL**

**SALES JOURNAL – JUNE 20.8**

*SJ 6*

Doc no	Day	Details	Fol	VAT output	Sales	Debtors
				<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>
003	3	Mrs P Singh	D1	672	4 800	5 472
004	10	Mr J Mtuli	D2	420	3 000	3 420
				1 092	7 800	8 892
				B10	N1	B5

**BS ELECTRICAL**

**SALES RETURNS JOURNAL – JUNE 20.8**

*SRJ 6*

Doc no	Day	Details	Fol	VAT output	Sales returns	Debtors
				<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>
023	14	Mr J Mtuli	D2	105	750	855
024	17	Mrs P Singh	D1	224	1 600	1 824
				329	2 350	2 679
				B10	N3	B5

**BS ELECTRICAL**

**GENERAL JOURNAL – JUNE 20.8**

GJ6

Day	Details	Fol	Debit	Credit
18	Equipment VAT input KZN Dealers/Creditors control Shop equipment bought on credit per invoice no: 789	B3 B9 B8/C2	R 2 500 350	R 2 850

**BS ELECTRICAL**

**GENERAL LEDGER**

**FINANCIAL POSITION SECTION**

Dr		Equipment			B3		Cr	
20.8								
Jun	18	Creditors control	GJ6	2 500				

Dr		Debtors control			B5		Cr	
20.8					20.8			
Jun	30	Sales and VAT	SJ6	8 892	Jun	30	Sales returns and VAT Balance	SRJ6 c/d
				8 892				2 679 6 213
Jul	1	Balance	b/d	6 213				8 892

Dr		Creditors control			B8		Cr	
20.8					20.8			
Jun	30	Purchases returns and VAT Balance	PRJ6 c/d	2 622 17 385	Jun	18 30	Equipment and VAT Purchases and VAT	GJ6 PJ6
				20 007				2 850 17 157
					Jul	1	Balance	b/d
								17 385

Dr		VAT input			B9		Cr	
20.8					20.8			
Jun	18	Creditors control	GJ6	350	Jun	30	Creditors control	PRJ6
	30	Creditors control	PJ6	2 107			Balance	c/d
				2 457				322 2 135
Jul	1	Balance	b/d	2 135				2 457

Dr		VAT output				B10		Cr
20.8				20.8				
Jun	30	Debtors control	SRJ6	Jun	30	Debtors control	SJ6	
		Balance	c/d					
							1 092	
							1 092	
				Jul	1	Balance	b/d	
							763	

**NOMINAL ACCOUNTS SECTION**

Dr		Sales				N1		Cr
				20.8				
				Jun	30	Debtors control	SJ6	
							7 800	

Dr		Purchases				N2		Cr
20.8								
Jun	30	Creditors control	PJ6					
							15 050	

Dr		Sales returns				N3		Cr
20.8								
Jun	30	Debtors control	SRJ6					
							2 350	

Dr		Purchases returns				N4		Cr
				20.8				
				Jun	30	Creditors control	PRJ6	
							2 300	

**BS ELECTRICAL**

**DEBTORS LEDGER**

Dr		Mrs P Singh				D1		Cr
20.8				20.8				
Jun	3	Sales and VAT	SJ6	Jun	17	Sales returns and VAT		
					30	Balance	SRJ6	
							c/d	
							1 824	
							3 648	
							5 472	
Jul	1	Balance	b/d					
							3 648	

Dr		Mr J Mtuli				D2		Cr
20.8				20.8				
Jun	10	Sales and VAT	SJ6	3 420	Jun	14	Sales returns and VAT	
						30	Balance	
				3 420			SRJ6	
							c/d	
							855	
							2 565	
							3 420	
Jul	1	Balance	b/d	2 565				

**BS ELECTRICAL**  
**CREDITORS LEDGER**

Dr		Hall Traders				C1		Cr
20.8				20.8				
Jun	16	Purchases returns and VAT	PRJ6	2 622	Jun	13	Purchases and VAT	
	30	Balance	c/d	10 488			PJ6	
				13 110			13 110	
					Jul	1	Balance	
							b/d	
							10 488	

Dr		KZN Dealers				C2		Cr
20.8				20.8				
Jun	30	Balance	c/d	6 897	Jun	18	Purchases and VAT	
				6 897			Equipment and VAT	
							PJ6	
							GJ6	
							4 047	
							2 850	
							6 897	
					Jul	1	Balance	
							b/d	
							6 897	

**DEBTORS LIST AS AT 30 JUNE 20.8**

Debtors	Fol	R
Mrs P Singh	D1	3 648
Mr J Mtuli	D2	2 565
		6 213

**CREDITORS LIST AS AT 30 JUNE 20.8**

Creditors	Fol	R
Hall Traders	C1	10 488
KZN Dealers	C2	6 897
		17 385

### COMPREHENSIVE EXAMPLE THREE: RECORDING OF CREDIT AND CASH TRANSACTIONS IN THE SUBSIDIARY JOURNALS

The following transactions at 14% VAT inclusive took place in Sunshine Glass Traders for February 20.4:

		<b>R</b>
Feb 1	The owner, S Shine, increased his capital.	15 000
	Paid the City Council for water and electricity by cheque.	3 078
3	Purchased merchandise from Glasco Ltd and paid by cheque.	8 778
	Purchased merchandise on credit from Ferguson Limited.	9 120
	Sold trading inventory on credit to J Jason.	13 680
4	Purchased a desk on credit from City Furnishers.	3 534
6	Purchased receipt books and pens from Pen and Pencil and paid by cheque.	228
	Drew a cash cheque to pay the week's wages.	954
8	Paid Glasco Ltd on account.	4 000
	Received settlement discount.	228
10	Cash sales of merchandise.	3 876
12	Issued a credit note to J Jason for an overcharge on 3 February.	114
	Drew a cash cheque to pay the week's wages.	940
15	Cash sales amounted to	2 394
	Received a cheque from J Jason in payment of his account.	6 000
	Settlement discount granted to him on this payment.	342
18	Sold goods on credit to F Brown.	4 332
	Cash purchases of trading inventory paid for by cheque.	2 736
	Purchased glassware on credit from Glasco Ltd.	5 700
20	Returned damaged goods to Glasco Ltd.	570
21	Drew a cash cheque to pay for wages.	989
	Received damaged goods returned by F Brown and issued a credit note.	228
25	Cash sales amounted to	6 156
	Received a payment from F Brown.	2 560
	Settlement discount granted to him on this payment.	228
26	Drew a cash cheque to pay for wages.	945
	Paid the telephone account by cheque.	570
	Received an account from Printo Limited for the printing of business documents.	798
27	Purchased inventory on credit from Glasco Ltd.	2 736
	The account of Ferguson Limited was paid by cheque.	5 500
	Received settlement discount.	285
28	Paid the owner's house instalment by business cheque to HP Bank.	2 500
	Received a cheque from Z Zittace for rent for a part of the building.	912



**REQUIRED**

- (1) Record the above transactions in the following subsidiary journals of Sunshine Glass Traders for February 20.4:
  - (a) Cash receipts journal (analysis columns for bank, sales, VAT output, debtors, settlement discount granted [Dr], VAT input [Dr] and sundry accounts)
  - (b) Cash payments journal (analysis columns for bank, purchases, creditors, settlement discount received [Cr], wages, VAT input, VAT output [Cr] and sundry accounts)
  - (c) Sales journal (analysis columns for VAT output, sales and debtors)
  - (d) Purchases journal (analysis columns for VAT input, purchases and creditors)
  - (e) Sales returns journal (analysis columns for VAT output, sales returns and debtors)
  - (f) Purchases returns journal (analysis columns for VAT input, purchases returns and creditors)
  - (g) General journal
  
- (2) Post the entries recorded in the subsidiary journals to the relevant accounts in the general ledger of Sunshine Traders (all the accounts must be properly balanced/totalled at 28 February 20.4).

For purpose of this example document numbers are not required.

**SOLUTION: COMPREHENSIVE EXAMPLE THREE**

**SUNSHINE GLASS TRADERS**

**(1) SUBSIDIARY JOURNALS**

**(a) CASH RECEIPTS JOURNAL – FEBRUARY 20.4**

CRJ2

Day	Details	Fol	Analysis of receipts	Bank	Sales	VAT output	Debtors	Settlement discount granted (Dr)	VAT input (Dr)	Sundry accounts		
										Amount	Fol	Details
1	S Shine		15000	15000						15000	B7	Capital
10	Cash sales		3876	3876	3400	476						
15	Cash sales		2394		2100	294						
	J Jason		6000	8394			6342	(300)	(42)			
25	Cash sales		6156		5400	756		(200)	(28)			
	F Brown		2560	8716			2788					
28	Z Zittace		912	912		112						
				36898	10900	1638	9130	(500)	(70)	800	N3	Rental income
				B5	N1	B10	B4	N7	B9	15800		

**SUNSHINE GLASS TRADERS**  
**(b) CASH PAYMENTS JOURNAL – FEBRUARY 20.4**

CPJ2

Day	Details	Fol	Bank	Purchases	Creditors	Settlement discount received (Cr)	Wages	VAT input	VAT output (Cr)	Sundry accounts			
										Amount	Fol	Details	
1	City Council		R 3 078										
3	Glasco Ltd		8 778					378					
6	Pen and Pencil		228	7 700				1 078					
	Cash		954				954	28					
8	Glasco Ltd		4 000		4 228	(200)	940		(28)				Water and electricity
12	Cash		940				940						Stationery
18	Cash		2 736	2 400			989	336					
21	Cash		989				945						
26	Cash		945										
	Telkom		570					70					Telephone expenses
27	Ferguson Ltd		5 500		5 785	(250)			(35)				
28	HP Bank		2 500										Drawings
			31 218	10 100	10 013	(450)	3 828	1 890	(63)				
			B5	N2	B6	N8	N9	B9	B10				

**SUNSHINE GLASS TRADERS****(c) SALES JOURNAL – FEBRUARY 20.4***SJ2*

Day	Details	Fol	VAT output	Sales	Debtors
			<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>
3	J Jason		1 680	12 000	13 680
18	F Brown		532	3 800	4 332
			2 212	15 800	18 012
			B10	N1	B4

**SUNSHINE GLASS TRADERS****(d) PURCHASES JOURNAL – FEBRUARY 20.4***PJ2*

Day	Details	Fol	VAT input	Purchases	Creditors
			<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>
3	Ferguson Ltd		1 120	8 000	9 120
18	Glasco Ltd		700	5 000	5 700
27	Glasco Ltd		336	2 400	2 736
			2 156	15 400	17 556
			B9	N2	B6

**SUNSHINE GLASS TRADERS****(e) SALES RETURNS JOURNAL – FEBRUARY 20.4***SRJ2*

Day	Details	Fol	VAT output	Sales returns	Debtors
			<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>
12	J Jason		14	100	114
21	F Brown		28	200	228
			42	300	342
			B10	N11	B4

**SUNSHINE GLASS TRADERS****(f) PURCHASES RETURNS JOURNAL – FEBRUARY 20.4***PRJ2*

Day	Details	Fol	VAT input	Purchases returns	Creditors
			<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>
20	Glasco Ltd		70	500	570
			70	500	570
			B9	N12	B6

## SUNSHINE GLASS TRADERS

## (g) GENERAL JOURNAL – FEBRUARY 20.4

GJ2

Day	Details	Fol	Debit R	Credit R
4	Furniture	B1	3 100	
	VAT input	B9	434	
	City Furniture/Creditors control	B6		3 534
	<i>Desk purchased on credit</i>			
26	Printing	N13	700	
	VAT input	B9	98	
	Printo Limited/Creditors control	B6		798
	<i>Printing of documents on credit</i>			

## SUNSHINE GLASS TRADERS

## (2) GENERAL LEDGER

## FINANCIAL POSITION SECTION

Dr		Furniture at cost				B1	Cr
20.4							
Feb	4	Creditor control	GJ2	3 100			

Dr		Debtors control				B4	Cr
20.4							
Feb	28	Sales and VAT	SJ2	18 012	20.4		
					Feb	28	Bank and discount
							Sales returns and
							VAT
							Balance
							CRJ2
							9 130
							SRJ2
							342
							c/d
							8 540
							18 012
Mar	1	Balance	b/d	8 540			

Dr		Bank				B5	Cr
20.4							
Feb	28	Total receipts	CRJ2	36 898	20.4		
					Feb	28	Total payments
							Balance
							CPJ2
							31 218
							c/d
							5 680
							36 898
Mar	1	Balance	b/d	5 680			

Dr		Creditors control			B6		Cr		
20.4				20.4					
Feb	28	Bank and discount Purchases returns and VAT Balance	CPJ2  PRJ2 c/d	10 013  570 11 305 <u>21 888</u>	Feb	4 26 28	Furniture and VAT Printing and VAT Purchases and VAT	GJ2 GJ2 PJ2	3 534 798 17 556 <u>21 888</u>
				Mar	1	Saldo	b/d	11 305	

Dr		Capital			B7		Cr	
				20.4				
				Feb	1	Bank	CRJ2	15 000

Dr		Drawings			B8		Cr
20.4							
Feb	28	Bank	CPJ2	2 500			

Dr		VAT input			B9		Cr		
20.4				20.4					
Feb	4 26 28	Creditors control Creditors control Bank Debtors control Creditors control	GJ2 GJ2 CPJ2 CRJ2 PJ2	434 98 1 890 70 2 156 <u>4 648</u>	Feb	28	Creditors control Balance	PRJ2 c/d	70 4 578 <u>4 648</u>
Mar	1	Balance	b/d	4 578					

Dr		VAT output			B10		Cr		
20.4				20.4					
Feb	28	Debtors control Balance	SRJ2 c/d	42 3 871 <u>3 913</u>	Feb	28	Debtors control Bank Creditors control	SJ2 CRJ2 CPJ2	2 212 1 638 63 <u>3 913</u>
				Mar	1	Balance	b/d	3 871	

**NOMINAL ACCOUNTS SECTION**

Dr		Sales				N1		Cr	
					20.4				
					Feb	28	Bank Debtors control	CRJ2 SJ2	10 900 15 800
									26 700

Dr		Purchases				N2		Cr	
20.4									
Feb	28	Bank Creditors control	CPJ2 PJ2	10 100 15 400					
				25 500					

Dr		Rental income				N3		Cr	
					20.4				
					Feb	28	Bank	CRJ2	800

Dr		Telephone expenses				N5		Cr	
20.4									
Feb	26	Bank	CPJ2	500					

Dr		Water and electricity				N6		Cr	
20.4									
Feb	1	Bank	CPJ2	2 700					

Dr		Settlement discount granted				N7		Cr	
20.4									
Feb	28	Debtors control	CRJ2	500					

Dr		Settlement discount received				N8		Cr	
					20.4				
					Feb	28	Creditors control	CPJ2	450


Dr		Wages				N9		Cr	
20.4									
Feb	28	Bank	CPJ2	3 828					

Dr		Stationery					N10		Cr
20.4									
Feb	6	Bank	CPJ2	200					

Dr		Sales returns					N11		Cr
20.4									
Feb	28	Debtors control	SRJ2	300					

Dr		Purchases returns					N12		Cr
					20.4				
					Feb	28	Creditors control	PRJ2	500

Dr		Printing					N13		Cr
20.4									
Feb	26	Creditors control	GJ2	700					

	<b>SELF-ASSESSMENT</b>			
	After you have worked through this learning unit, are you able to:			
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>correctly enter credit purchases and credit purchase returns transactions in the respective journals?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>correctly enter credit sales and credit sales returns transactions in the respective journals?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>correctly prepare the creditors control and debtors control accounts in the general ledger?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>correctly prepare a creditors and debtors list?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>provide for VAT implications on credit transactions?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>correctly enter transactions in the general journal?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹

If you have marked all ☺ you may continue to the next learning unit.

If you have marked any ☹ you have to *revise* that specific section.

If you have marked any ☹ you have to **re-study** that specific section.



**FAC1501**

**LEARNING UNIT 7**

**INVENTORY**



**Introductory Financial  
Accounting**

## OVERVIEW

Learning outcomes .....	230
Key concepts .....	230
Assessment criteria .....	231
7.1 Introduction .....	231
7.2 Inventory valuation methods .....	231
7.3 Inventory control systems.....	231
7.3.1 The perpetual (continuous) inventory control system .....	232
7.3.2 The periodic inventory control system .....	234
7.4 Additional purchase costs .....	236
7.5 Drawings and donations of inventory .....	237
7.6 Settlement discount granted .....	237
7.7 Settlement discount received .....	238
7.8 Carriage/freight charges on sales .....	238
7.9 Mark-up on cost .....	238
7.10 Exercises and solutions .....	249
Self-assessment.....	252

## LEARNING OUTCOMES

After studying this learning unit, you should be able to:

- define a perpetual inventory control system
- define a periodic inventory control system
- explain the difference between a periodic and a perpetual inventory control system
- define the different valuation methods, such as first-in, first-out (FIFO) and the weighted average methods

## KEY CONCEPTS

- Perpetual inventory control system
- Periodic inventory control system
- FIFO
- LIFO
- Weighted average



## ASSESSMENT CRITERIA

- The difference between a perpetual and a periodic inventory control system is explained.
- The calculation of the value of cost of sales and gross profit explained.

## 7.1 INTRODUCTION

Most business entities carry inventory, so it is important that you have a clear and full understanding of how to account for it. This not only involves ledger account entries but also the valuation of inventory and presentation in financial statement.

In most cases inventory is the largest current asset of a trading entity. It is important that a trading entity at all times is able to supply the demand for its different types of merchandise. For that reason trading entities keep a supply of inventory that is constantly replenished and from which sales are made. This means that the expenditure of funds on the purchase of inventory during a particular period will not always equal the cost of the goods that are sold during the same period.

In determining the profit of a trading entity, it is thus important to determine the cost of the goods that were indeed sold during a period. This is known as the cost of sales. The cost of sales and the cost price of inventory on hand can be determined according to one of the following two inventory control methods:

- perpetual inventory method
- periodic inventory method

## 7.2 INVENTORY VALUATION METHODS

When an entity purchases various batches of an inventory item at different prices, and not all goods are sold during the year, the question arises as to which of the prices paid for the batches should be considered to be the purchase price of the batches still on hand.

The method used to allocate costs to inventory and to determine the cost of goods, should be the one that brings about the most realistic determination of profit in the particular entity.

The three most used valuation methods in practice are the following:

- **First-in, first-out (FIFO) method:** According to this method, it is accepted that the items which were purchased first are sold first. Inventory on hand is therefore valued at the latest prices.
- **Last-in, first-out (LIFO) method:** According to this method, it is accepted that the items which were purchased last are sold first. This method falls outside the scope of this module and therefore will not be discussed in any examples.
- **Weighted average method:** The total cost of the goods available for sale is divided by the total number of units in order to determine an average cost per unit.

## 7.3 INVENTORY CONTROL SYSTEMS

Inventory systems refers to the way in which inventory is recorded in the accounting records of a trading entity.

### 7.3.1 The perpetual (continuous) inventory control system

Under the perpetual inventory system, the purchase of inventory is recorded directly into the inventory account at cost price. At the time of sale, the cost price of goods sold is transferred from the inventory account to the cost of sales account.

The accounting entries under such a system can be summarised as follows (VAT is ignored in these examples):

#### Purchase inventory for cash:

Dr	Inventory	(because the asset <b>inventory</b> increases)
Cr	Bank	(because the asset <b>bank</b> decreases when money is paid out)

The transaction is recorded in the cash payments journal at cost price.

#### Purchase inventory on credit:

Dr	Inventory	(see above)
Cr	Creditor	(because a <b>liability</b> is created or increased) and
Cr	Creditors control	

The transaction is recorded in the purchases journal at cost price.

#### Sale of merchandise for cash:

Dr	Bank	(an asset increases with money received) (selling price)
Cr	Sales	(an income which increases equity) (selling price)
Dr	Cost of sales	(an expense that decreases equity) (cost price)
Cr	Inventory	(an asset decreases) (cost price)

The transaction is recorded in the cash receipts journal.

It is important to note that the difference between the cost of sales and the selling price is the gross profit, which is the amount by which the equity increases.

#### Merchandise sold on credit:

Dr	Debtor	(an asset is created or increased) (selling price) and
Dr	Debtors control	
Cr	Sales	(see above) (selling price)
Dr	Cost of sales	(see above) (cost price)
Cr	Inventory	(see above) (cost price)

The transaction is recorded in the sales journal.

**When merchandise is returned by a debtor:**

Dr	Sales returns	(this has the opposite effect of sales on equity – it decreases equity) (selling price)
Cr	Debtor	(the asset decreases because the debtor owes the business less) (selling price) and
Cr	Debtors control	
Cr	Cost of sales	(this has the opposite effect on equity to the effect when merchandise was sold) (cost price)
Dr	Inventory	(the asset increases by the amount of the merchandise returned) (cost price)

The transaction is recorded in the sales returns journal.

**Merchandise returned, previously sold for cash:**

If the entity has a policy of not repaying cash, a credit note will be issued to the client that can be exchanged for other merchandise.

**If the business is willing to refund cash:**

Dr	Sales returns	(see above) (selling price)
Cr	Bank	(the asset <b>bank</b> will decrease to cancel the previous increase) (selling price)

The transaction is recorded in the cash payments journal.

**To reinstate the merchandise as part of the inventory:**

Dr	Inventory	(the asset <b>inventory</b> increases) (cost price)
Cr	Cost of sales	(see above) (cost price)

The transaction is recorded in the general journal.

**When merchandise is returned to a creditor:**

Dr	Creditor	(because the liability decreases) (cost price) and
Dr	Creditors control	
Cr	Inventory	(an asset is decreased – there is less inventory because of the goods returned) (cost price)

The transaction is recorded in the purchases returns journal.

From the above discussion it is clear that the cost price of merchandise sold is recorded at the same time as the sale of the merchandise. This procedure enables the entity to determine the gross profit on each sale and to keep a continuous record of the Rand value of the inventory that has not yet been sold.

However, it remains necessary to do a physical inventory count at least once a year, usually at the end of the financial year. Theoretically the result of the inventory count should yield the same result as the balance on the inventory account. This seldom happens. Some of the main reasons why there is a difference are the theft of inventory, breakages, leakages and evaporation. This loss of inventory will, of course, not be recorded in the inventory account and will only be detected when a physical count of inventory is done.

### 7.3.2 The periodic inventory control system

Under the periodic inventory system, the purchase of inventory is **not recorded in the inventory account**. A separate account, known as the **purchases account**, is used to record these purchases. It follows that if inventory is returned to the seller, for one reason or another, the return of inventory cannot be recorded in the inventory account but must be recorded in a separate account known as the **purchases returns account**.

It should thus be clear that under a periodic inventory system, the cost of sales is not determined at the time of the recording of the sale. The cost of sales can thus only be determined at the end of the financial period after a physical inventory count has been done.

The cost price of inventory sold during an accounting period will thus be determined as follows:

Cost price of inventory at the beginning of the financial year (closing inventory of previous year)

**Add:** Cost price of inventory purchased during the financial year (the total amount spent on purchases)

**Less:** Cost price of inventory at the end of the financial year, determined by a physical inventory count (the unsold inventory)

The accounting entries associated with a periodic inventory system can be summarised as follows (VAT is ignored in the examples):

#### Purchase of inventory for cash:

Dr	Purchases	(under the periodic inventory system, purchases are regarded as an expense that reduces equity)
Cr	Bank	(the asset <b>bank</b> decreases when money is paid out)

The transaction is recorded in the cash payments journal at cost price.

#### Purchase of inventory on credit:

Dr	Purchases	(see above)
Cr	Creditor	(creditors is a liability account which is created or increased)and
Cr	Creditors control	

The transaction is recorded in the purchases journal at cost price.

#### Sale of merchandise for cash:

Dr	Bank	(the asset increases with the money received)
Cr	Sales	(an income account which increases equity)

The transaction is recorded in the cash receipts journal at selling price.

#### Sale of merchandise on credit:

Dr	Debtor	(an asset which is created or increased) and
Dr	Debtors control	
Cr	Sales	(see above)

The transaction is recorded in the sales journal at selling price.

**When merchandise is returned by a debtor:**

Dr	Sales returns	(equity decreases)
Cr	Debtor	(the asset decreases) and
Cr	Debtors control	

The transaction is recorded in the sales returns journal at selling price.

**Merchandise returned, previously sold for cash:**

The policy of the entity would determine whether a credit note will be issued (refer to the perpetual inventory system) or whether the cash will be refunded to the client.

The entry for a cash refund will be as follows:

Dr	Sales returns	(the equity decreases)
Cr	Bank	(the asset <b>bank</b> will decrease to cancel the previous increase)

The transaction is recorded in the cash payments journal.

**When inventory is returned to a creditor:**

Dr	Creditors	(the liability decreases) and
Dr	Creditors control	
Cr	Purchases returns	(the actual purchase is reduced)

The transaction is recorded in the purchases returns journal at cost price.

**Physical inventory count at the end of the financial year:**

Dr	Inventory	(an asset account which is created with the inventory on hand at the end of the financial year)
Cr	Trading account	(a nominal account which is used to determine the gross profit and which increases equity if a gross profit is made)

The transaction is recorded in the general journal.

From the above summary it is clear that, under a periodic inventory system, there is no cost of sales account but a purchases account and that the column headings of subsidiary journals will have to be adapted to accommodate this inventory system. Some of the accounts kept in the general ledger will also have to be changed when the periodic inventory system is in use.

It is very important, in assignments and in the examination, to make sure that you know which inventory system an entity uses as this will determine how the subsidiary journals and the general ledger will be laid out.

## 7.4 ADDITIONAL PURCHASE COSTS

Carriage on purchases and railage are examples of expenses that an entity may have to pay in order to transport the inventory which has been purchased to the entity's premises. Custom and excise duties may also have to be incurred when inventory is imported.

When the perpetual (continuous) inventory system is used, carriage on purchases, and the like, are debited directly to the inventory account, since the cost of sales must be brought into account with each sales transaction, and carriage paid on purchases constitutes an integral part of the cost per unit.

When the periodic inventory system is used, all purchases of inventory during a financial year are debited to the purchases account. Consequently this account will show the total of all purchases at the end of the financial year. Carriage on purchases (paid for in cash, as well as on credit) by an entity which uses this inventory system, will be debited to the carriage on purchases account. This account will show the total amount spent on transporting inventory to the premises of the entity. When the cost of sales is calculated at the end of the financial year, carriage on purchases must also be taken into account. Custom and excise duties will be treated in a similar manner.

The following illustration will demonstrate how accounts under the different inventory systems will be affected when additional purchase costs are incurred:

Transaction	Perpetual inventory control system	Periodic inventory control system
Payment of delivery costs on inventory purchased	Dr Inventory Cr Bank or Cr Creditor (and creditors control) if on credit	Dr Carriage on purchases Cr Bank or Cr Creditor (and creditors control) if on credit

**Use the following information from the books of Gogo Dealers to calculate the cost of sales:**

	R
Inventory (1 January 20.1)	95 000
Purchases	260 000
Carriage on purchases	3 600

A physical inventory count on 31 December 20.1 indicated that inventory on hand amounted to R80 000.



**SOLUTION**

	<b>R</b>
Inventory (1 January 20.1)	95 000
Add: Purchases	260 000
Carriage on purchases	3 600
	358 600
Less: Inventory (31 December 20.1)	(80 000)
Cost of sales	278 600

**7.5 DRAWINGS AND DONATIONS OF INVENTORY**

Drawings and donations of inventory are recorded by means of the general journal at cost price.

Please study the following table carefully:

<b>Transaction</b>	<b>Perpetual inventory control system</b>	<b>Periodic inventory control system</b>
Inventory taken by owner for personal use	Dr Drawings Cr Inventory	Dr Drawings Cr Purchases
Donation of inventory	Dr Donations Cr Inventory	Dr Donations Cr Purchases

When an entity is registered as a VAT Vendor drawings and donations are not exempted from VAT. The VAT is, however, calculated on the **cost price** and must be credited to the VAT output account.

**7.6 SETTLEMENT DISCOUNT GRANTED**

Discount is often offered to debtors in order to encourage a quick settlement of their debts within the stated credit term. The credit term will be shown on the credit invoice, for example 30 days from date of sale. This means that if a debtor pays off his/her account before 30 days from date of sale, the debtor will receive a discount on the total amount owing.

The accounting entries associated with the periodic and perpetual inventory system can be summarised as follows:

- Dr Settlement discount granted (the account is an expense that reduces equity)  
 Cr Debtors (the asset account debtors decreases when a settlement discount is granted)

At the end of the financial year, you will close off the settlement discount granted account to the sales account in the general ledger.

## 7.7 SETTLEMENT DISCOUNT RECEIVED

When creditors are paid within a specified period according to an agreement, the entity may get a discount on the outstanding amount. We refer to this discount as settlement discount received.

The accounting entries associated with the periodic and perpetual inventory system can be summarised as follows:

Dr Creditors (creditors account is a liability and it decreases when a settlement discount is received)  
 Cr Settlement discount received (the account is an income that increases equity)

At the end of the financial year you will however close off settlement discount received differently under the perpetual and periodic inventory systems.

The accounting entries associated with the periodic inventory system can be summarised as follows:

### Periodic inventory system

Dr Settlement discount received  
 Cr Purchases

The accounting entries associated with the perpetual inventory system can be summarised as follows:

### Perpetual inventory system

Dr Settlement discount received  
 Cr Cost of sales

## 7.8 CARRIAGE/FREIGHT CHARGES ON SALES

The freight or carriage charges on sales account is an expense. This is the cost of transporting the goods sold from the entity to the customer and therefore it is an expense to the entity. Carriage/freight charges on sales will therefore be treated as an expense in the entity's statement of profit and loss and other comprehensive income.

## 7.9 MARK-UP ON COST

Cost of sales is the cost of the goods that were sold during a period. The mark-up percentage on cost is the gross profit percentage of the cost price.

Therefore to calculate the cost price when the mark-up percentage and selling price is given you will use the following formula.

Cost price = Selling price x 100 ÷ (100 + mark-up percentage on cost)

## COMPREHENSIVE EXAMPLE ONE

BS Hardware sells a ladder for R390. The mark-up percentage on cost is 30%.

What is the cost price of the product?

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Mark-up percentage on cost} &= 30\% \\
 \text{Selling price} &= \text{Cost price} + \text{mark-up \% on cost} \\
 \text{Cost price} &= 100\% = \text{R?} \\
 \text{Selling price} &= 130\% = \text{R390} \\
 \text{Cost price} &= \frac{100}{130} \times \text{R390} \\
 &= \text{R300}
 \end{aligned}$$

## COMPREHENSIVE EXAMPLE TWO

You are supplied with the following source documents from BS Hardware:

BS Hardware is registered as a VAT vendor. All the suppliers of the entity are also registered for VAT. All goods are sold at a constant mark-up of 25% on cost and a perpetual inventory system is in use.

<b>BS HARDWARE</b>					
<b>TAX INVOICE</b>					
<b>777 Church Street</b> <b>PO Box 1001</b> <b>Tshwane</b> <b>0002</b>			<b>VAT no: 7891078956</b> <b>Tel: 012-429 3931</b> <b>Fax: 012-429 3933</b> <b>E-mail: accounts@bshardware.co.za</b>		
<b>Sold to:</b> Mrs P Singh 30 Wessels Street Pretoria VAT registration number 4355501234					
			<b>Date:</b> 3 June 20.8		
<b>Customer reference no:</b> DB1			<b>Invoice no:</b> G31		
<b>Terms:</b> 30 days less 10%					
Product no	Description	Quantity	Unit price (R)	Amount	
				R	c
THG002	Paint	6 x 5 l	800,00	4 800	00
<b>Subtotal</b>				4 800	00
<b>VAT @ 14%</b>				672	00
<b>Total</b>				5 472	00
<b>Amount paid</b>				0	00
<b>Amount due</b>				5 472	00

<b>BS HARDWARE</b>					
<b>TAX INVOICE</b>					
777 Church Street PO Box 1001 Tshwane 0002			VAT no: 7891078956 Tel: 012-429 3931 Fax: 012-429 3933 E-mail: accounts@bshardware.co.za		
Sold to: Mr J Mtuli			Date: 10 June 20.8		
Customer reference no: DB2			Invoice no: G32		
Terms: 30 days less 10%					
Product no	Description	Quantity	Unit price (R)	Amount	
				R	c
TCK789	Doors	4	750,00	3 000	00
<b>Subtotal</b>				3 000	00
<b>VAT @ 14%</b>				420	00
<b>Total</b>				3 420	00
<b>Amount paid</b>				0	00
<b>Amount due</b>				3 420	00

<b>HALL TRADERS</b>					
<b>TAX INVOICE</b>					
123 Main Street PO Box 6006 Tshwane 0002			VAT no: 1234567890 Tel: 012-429 3424 Fax: 012-429 3425 Email: accounts@halltraders.co.za		
Sold to: BS Hardware 777 Church Street Tshwane VAT registration number 7891078956			Date: 13 June 20.8		
Customer reference no: BS786			Invoice no: T29		
Terms: 30 days less 10%					
Product no	Description	Quantity	Unit price (R)	Amount	
				R	c
XYZ 897	PVC Pipes	250 x 2 m	46,00	11 500	00
<b>Subtotal</b>				11 500	00
<b>VAT @14%</b>				1 610	00
<b>Total</b>				13 110	00
<b>Amount paid</b>				0	00
<b>Amount due</b>				13 110	00

<b>BS HARDWARE</b> <b>CREDIT NOTE</b> <b>VAT NO: 7891078956</b>					
<b>PO Box 1001</b> <b>Tshwane</b> <b>0002</b>		<b>777 Church Street</b> <b>Tel: 012-429 3931</b> <b>Fax: 012-429 3933</b> <b>Date: 14 June 20.8</b>			
<b>To: Mr J Mtuli</b>					
<b>CREDIT NOTE NUMBER: CN3</b>					
Product no	Description	Quantity	Unit price (R)	Amount credited	
				R	c
TCK789	Doors	-	-	600	00
<b>Total</b>				600	00
<b>VAT @ 14%</b>				84	00
<b>Total credit due</b>				684	00

<b>HALL TRADERS</b> <b>CREDIT NOTE</b> <b>VAT NO: 1234567890</b>					
<b>PO Box 6006</b> <b>Tshwane</b> <b>0002</b>		<b>123 Main Street</b> <b>Tel: 012-429 3424</b> <b>Fax: 012-429 3425</b> <b>Date: 16 June 20.8</b>			
<b>To: BS Hardware</b>					
<b>CREDIT NOTE NUMBER: Q12</b>					
Product no	Description	Quantity	Unit price (R)	Amount credited	
				R	c
XYZ897	PVC Pipes	50	46,00	2 300	00
<b>Total</b>				2 300	00
<b>VAT @ 14%</b>				322	00
<b>Total credit due</b>				2 622	00

<b>BS HARDWARE</b>					
<b>CREDIT NOTE</b>					
<b>VAT NO: 7891078956</b>					
<b>PO Box 1001</b>			<b>777 Church Street</b>		
<b>Tshwane</b>			<b>Tel: 012-429 3931</b>		
<b>0002</b>			<b>Fax: 012-429 3933</b>		
			<b>Date: 17 June 20.8</b>		
<b>To: Mrs P Singh</b>					
<b>CREDIT NOTE NUMBER: CN4</b>					
<b>Product no</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Quantity</b>	<b>Unit price (R)</b>	<b>Amount credited</b>	
				<b>R</b>	<b>c</b>
THG002	Paint	2 x 5 l	800,00	1 600	00
<b>Total</b>				1 600	00
<b>VAT @ 14%</b>				224	00
<b>Total credit due</b>				1 824	00

<b>KZN DEALERS</b>					
<b>TAX INVOICE</b>					
<b>456 Tambotie Road</b>			<b>VAT no: 4567891230</b>		
<b>PO Box 2002</b>			<b>Tel: 011-429 3938</b>		
<b>Johannesburg</b>			<b>Fax: 011-429 3939</b>		
<b>0003</b>			<b>E-mail: accounts@kzndealers.co.za</b>		
<b>Sold to: BS Hardware</b>					
777 Church Street					
Tshwane					
VAT registration number 7891078956 <b>Date: 18 June 20.8</b>					
<b>Customer reference no: KZN789</b>			<b>Invoice no: JK20</b>		
<b>Terms: 30 days less 10%</b>					
<b>Product no</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Quantity</b>	<b>Unit price (R)</b>	<b>Amount</b>	
				<b>R</b>	<b>c</b>
PLP456	Cash register	1	2 300,00	2 300	00
JYH123	Electrical plugs	1 000	3,55	3 550	00
<b>Subtotal</b>				5 850	00
<b>VAT @ 14%</b>				819	00
<b>Total</b>				6 669	00
<b>Amount paid</b>				0	00
<b>Amount due</b>				6 669	00

**REQUIRED**

- (1) Prepare the following books of prime entry for BS Hardware for June 20.8, and make use of the column headings as indicated:

**BS HARDWARE****PURCHASES JOURNAL – JUNE 20.8***PJ6*

Doc no	Day	Details	Fol	VAT input	Inventory	Creditors
				R	R	R

**BS HARDWARE****PURCHASES RETURNS JOURNAL – JUNE 20.8***PRJ6*

Doc no	Day	Details	Fol	VAT input	Inventory	Creditors
				R	R	R

**BS HARDWARE****SALES JOURNAL – JUNE 20.8***SJ6*

Doc no	Day	Details	Fol	VAT output	Sales	Debtors	Cost of sales
				R	R	R	R

**BS HARDWARE****SALES RETURNS JOURNAL – JUNE 20.8***SRJ6*

Doc no	Day	Details	Fol	VAT output	Sales returns	Debtors	Cost of sales
				R	R	R	R

**BS HARDWARE****GENERAL JOURNAL – JUNE 20.8**

GJ6

Day	Details	Fol	Debit	Credit
			R	R

- (2) Post the journals after closing it to the appropriate accounts in the general, debtors and creditors ledger. Balance all accounts.
- (3) Prepare the debtors and creditors lists.

**SOLUTION: COMPREHENSIVE EXAMPLE TWO****BS HARDWARE****PURCHASES JOURNAL – JUNE 20.8**

PJ6

Doc no	Day	Details	Fol	VAT input	Inventory	Creditors
				R	R	R
T29	13	Hall Traders	C1	1 610	11 500	13 110
JK20	18	KZN Dealers	C2	497	3 550	4 047
				2 107	15 050	17 157
				B9	B4	B8

**BS HARDWARE****PURCHASES RETURNS JOURNAL – JUNE 20.8**

PRJ6

Doc no	Day	Details	Fol	VAT input	Inventory	Creditors
				R	R	R
Q12	16	Hall Traders	C1	322	2 300	2 622
				B9	B4	B8

**BS HARDWARE****SALES JOURNAL – JUNE 20.8**

SJ6

Doc no	Day	Details	Fol	VAT output	Sales	Debtors	Cost of sales
				R	R	R	R
G31	3	Mrs P Singh	D1	672	4 800	5 472	3 840
G32	10	Mr J Mtuli	D2	420	3 000	3 420	2 400
				1 092	7 800	8 892	6 240
				B10	N1	B5	N2/B4



**Calculations:**

Cost of sales: Mrs P Singh R4 800 x  $\frac{100}{125}$  = R3 840  
 Mr J Mtuli R3 000 x  $\frac{100}{125}$  = R2 400

**BS HARDWARE****SALES RETURNS JOURNAL – JUNE 20.8**

SRJ6

Doc no	Day	Details	Fol	VAT output	Sales returns	Debtors	Cost of sales
				R	R	R	R
CN3	14	Mr J Mtuli	D2	84	600	684	480
CN4	17	Mrs P Singh	D1	224	1 600	1 824	1 280
				308	2 200	2 508	1 760
				B10	N3	B5	N2/B4

**Calculations:**

Cost of sales: Mr J Mtuli R600 x  $\frac{100}{125}$  = R480  
 Mrs P Singh R1 600 x  $\frac{100}{125}$  = R1 280

**BS HARDWARE****GENERAL JOURNAL – JUNE 20.8**

GJ6

Day	Details	Fol	Debit	Credit
			R	R
18	Equipment VAT input KZN Dealers/Creditors control	B3 B9 B8	2 300 322	2 622
30	VAT control VAT input <i>Transfer of VAT input to the VAT control account</i>	B11 B9	2 107	2 107
	VAT output VAT control <i>Transfer of VAT output to the VAT control account</i>	B10 B11	784	784

**BS HARDWARE**  
**GENERAL LEDGER**  
**FINANCIAL POSITION SECTION**

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Equipment</b>				<b>B3</b>		<b>Cr</b>
20.8 Jun	18	Creditors control	GJ6	2 300				

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Inventory</b>				<b>B4</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.8 Jun	30	Creditors control	PJ6	15 050	20.8 Jun	18	Creditors control	PRJ6	2 300
		Cost of sales	SRJ6	1 760		30	Cost of sales	SJ6	6 240
							Balance	c/d	8 270
				16 810					16 810
Jul	1	Balance	b/d	8 270					

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Debtors control</b>				<b>B5</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.8 Jun	30	Sales and VAT	SJ6	8 892	20.8 Jun	30	Sales returns and VAT	SRJ6	2 508
							Balance	c/d	6 384
				8 892					8 892
Jul	1	Balance	b/d	6 384					

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Creditors control</b>				<b>B8</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.8 Jun	30	Purchases returns and VAT	PRJ6	2 622	20.8 Jun	30	Inventory and VAT	PJ6	17 157
		Balance	c/d	17 157			Equipment and VAT	GJ6	2 622
				19 779					19 779
					Jul	1	Balance	b/d	17 157

<b>Dr</b>		<b>VAT input</b>				<b>B9</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.8 Jun	30	Creditors control	PJ6	2 107	20.8 Jun	30	Creditors control	PRJ6	322
		Creditors control	GJ6	322			VAT control	GJ6	2 107
				2 429					2 429

Dr		VAT output				B10		Cr	
20.8				20.8					
Jun	30	Debtors control	SRJ6	308	Jun	30	Debtors control	SJ6	1 092
		VAT control	GJ6	784					
				1 092					1 092

Dr		VAT control				B11		Cr	
20.8				20.8					
Jun	30	VAT input	GJ6	2 107	Jun	30	VAT output	GJ6	784
				2 107			Balance	c/d	1 323
				2 107					2 107
Jul	1	Balance	b/d	1 323					

**NOMINAL ACCOUNTS SECTION**

Dr		Sales				N1		Cr
				20.8				
				Jun	30	Debtors control	SJ6	7 800

Dr		Cost of sales				N2		Cr	
20.8				20.8					
Jun	30	Inventory	SJ6	6 240	Jun	30	Inventory	SRJ6	1 760
				6 240			Total	c/d	4 480
				6 240					6 240
Jul	1	Total	b/d	4 480					

Dr		Sales returns				N3		Cr
20.8								
Jun	30	Debtors control	SRJ6	2 200				

**BS HARDWARE****DEBTORS LEDGER**

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Mrs P Singh</b>			<b>D1</b>		<b>Cr</b>		
20.8				20.8					
Jun	3	Sales and VAT	SJ6	5 472	Jun	17	Sales returns and VAT	SRJ6	1 824
						30	Balance	c/d	3 648
				5 472					5 472
Jul	1	Balance	b/d	3 648					

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Mr J Mtuli</b>			<b>D2</b>		<b>Cr</b>		
20.8				20.8					
Jun	10	Sales and VAT	SJ6	3 420	Jun	14	Sales returns and VAT	SRJ6	684
						30	Balance	c/d	2 736
				3 420					3 420
Jul	1	Balance	b/d	2 736					

**BS HARDWARE****CREDITORS LEDGER**

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Hall Traders</b>			<b>C1</b>		<b>Cr</b>		
20.8				20.8					
Jun	16	Inventory and VAT	PRJ6	2 622	Jun	13	Inventory and VAT	PJ6	13 110
	30	Balance	c/d	10 488					13 110
				13 110					
					Jul	1	Balance	b/d	10 488

<b>Dr</b>		<b>KZN Dealers</b>			<b>C2</b>		<b>Cr</b>		
20.8				20.8					
Jun	30	Balance	c/d	6 669	Jun	18	Inventory and VAT	PJ6	4 047
							Equipment and VAT	GJ6	2 622
				6 669					6 669
					Jul	1	Balance	b/d	6 669

**Debtors list as at 30 June 20.8**

<b>Debtors</b>	<b>Fol</b>	<b>R</b>
Mrs P Singh	D1	3 648
Mr J Mtuli	D2	2 736
		6 384

**Creditors list as at 30 June 20.8**

<b>Creditors</b>	<b>Fol</b>	<b>R</b>
Hall Traders	C1	10 488
KZN Dealers	C2	6 669
		17 157

**ADDITIONAL INFORMATION:**

- (a) The above example is similar to comprehensive example two from the learning unit 6 on credit transactions. However, in the previous example, the periodic inventory control system was used hence inventory in trade was debited to the purchases account.
- (b) In the above example, the perpetual inventory system is used. Inventory in trade is debited to the inventory account and an inventory column is required instead of a purchases column in the subsidiary journals. When inventory is bought or returned, the entries for the transactions will affect the inventory account in the general ledger as the use of a purchases account and purchases returns account is not permitted when a perpetual inventory system is used.

**7.10 EXERCISES AND SOLUTIONS****EXERCISE 1**

The following information was obtained from the records of Pienaar Traders for the financial year ended 28 February 20.3:

	<b>R</b>
Inventory (1 March 20.2)	170 000
Sales	550 000
Purchases	350 000
Sales returns	1 500
Purchases returns	2 000
Inventory (28 February 20.3)	160 500

The entity applies the periodic inventory system.

**REQUIRED:**

Calculate the cost of sales.

**SOLUTION EXERCISE 1**

	<b>R</b>
Inventory (1 March 20.2)	170 000
Add: *Net purchases	348 000
	518 000
Less: Inventory (28 February 20.3)	(160 500)
Cost of sales	357 500

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{*Net purchases} &= \text{Purchases} - \text{purchases returns} \\
 &= \text{R350 000} - \text{R2 000} \\
 &= \text{R348 000}
 \end{aligned}$$

**EXERCISE 2**

The following information was obtained from the records of Cool Traders for the financial year ended 28 February 20.4:

	<b>R</b>
Inventory (1 March 20.3)	185 000
Sales	350 000
Purchases	265 000
Sales returns	700
Purchases returns	3 600
Freight charges on purchases	750
Freight charges on sales	1 300
Settlement discount granted	550
Settlement discount received	265

A physical inventory count on 28 February 20.4 indicated that inventory on hand amounted to R145 000. The periodic inventory system is in use.

**REQUIRED:**

1. What is the cost of sales amount for the year ended 28 February 20.4?
2. Which amount represents the gross profit figure for the year ended 28 February 20.4?

## SOLUTION EXERCISE 2


### 1. Cost of sales calculation

		<b>R</b>
	Inventory (1 March 20.3)	185 000
<b>Plus</b>	Net purchases: (Purchases - purchases returns – settlement discount received) (R265 000 – R3 600 – R265)	261 135
<b>Plus</b>	Freight charges on purchases	750
<b>Less</b>	Inventory (28 February 20.4)	<u>(145 000)</u>
	<b>Cost of sales</b>	<u><u>301 885</u></u>

### 2. Gross profit calculation

Gross profit = \*Sales – cost of sales  
 = R348 750 – R301 885  
 = R46 865

\*Sales = (Sales - sales return – settlement discount granted)  
 = (R350 000 – R700 - R550)  
 = R348 750

	<p><b>SELF-ASSESSMENT</b></p> <p>After you have worked through this learning unit, are you able to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• explain the difference between a perpetual and a periodic inventory control system?</li> <li>• correctly calculate the value of cost of sales and gross profit?</li> </ul>	<p>☺</p> <p>☺</p>	<p>☹</p> <p>☹</p>	<p>☹</p> <p>☹</p>
---	---	-------------------	-------------------	-------------------

If you have marked all ☺ you may continue to the next learning unit.

If you have marked any ☹ you have to *revise* that specific section.

If you have marked any ☹ you have to **re-study** that specific section.



**FAC1501**

**LEARNING UNIT 8**

**BANK RECONCILIATION  
STATEMENTS**



**Introductory Financial  
Accounting**

## OVERVIEW

Learning outcomes .....	254
Key concepts .....	254
Assessment criteria .....	254
8.1 Introduction .....	255
8.2 Steps when compiling a bank reconciliation statement.....	256
8.3 Bank reconciliation where a bank reconciliation statement was prepared in the previous period .....	263
Self-assessment.....	272

## LEARNING OUTCOMES

After studying this learning unit you should be able to:

- identify the causes of the differences between the bank account balance and the bank statement balance
- update the cash receipts and cash payments journals
- prepare a bank account
- prepare a bank reconciliation statement

## KEY CONCEPTS

- Bank reconciliation statement
- Outstanding cheques
- Outstanding deposits
- Direct deposits
- Bank charges
- Interest charged on overdraft
- Dishonoured cheques
- Cash receipts journal
- Cash payments journal
- Bank account



## ASSESSMENT CRITERIA

- The student should be able to identify the reasons why the bank balance in the general ledger and the bank balance in the bank statement seldom agree.
- The ability to record outstanding cheques and outstanding deposits in the bank reconciliation statement is demonstrated.
- The ability to record direct deposits, bank charges, debit orders, dishonoured cheques, interest on overdraft or interest on current account in the appropriate subsidiary journal is demonstrated.
- The ability to record mistakes either made by the bank or the entity in either the bank reconciliation statement or the appropriate subsidiary journal is demonstrated

## 8.1 INTRODUCTION

An entity which has a cheque account can arrange with the bank to issue a bank statement at regular intervals, usually monthly.

The bank statement shows, among other things, the opening balance for the period, bank transactions made during that period and the closing balance at the end of that period.

Since bank transactions made by the entity are also recorded in its cash receipts and cash payments journals, the balance shown in the bank statement **should** agree with the balance in the bank account in the books of the entity. However, this is rarely the case.

Some of the reasons why the two balances do not agree are:

- **Outstanding cheques:** These are cheques issued to suppliers during the statement period but which have not yet been presented to the bank for payment.
- **Outstanding deposits:** These are deposits made by the entity during the statement period but which have not yet been credited by the bank.
- **Direct deposits:** These are deposits made by customers directly into the bank account of the entity.
- **Bank charges:** These comprise of service fees, cost of cheque books, commissions, ledger fees, and so on. Because of the nature of these charges, the entity only becomes aware of them when the bank statement is received.
- **Interest charged on overdraft:** This is the cost of overdrawing the bank balance. Again, the entity only gets to know of this type of cost when the bank statement is received.
- **Dishonoured cheques:** These are cheques received from customers but which were not paid by their respective banks because they (the customers) do not have sufficient funds.
- **Mistakes and omissions made by both the entity and the bank**

The reasons listed above can be classified under the following headings:

- (1) Entries in the cash receipts and cash payments journals but which are not in the bank statement:
  - outstanding cheques
  - outstanding deposits
- (2) Items in the bank statement but which are not in the cash receipts and cash payments journals:
  - direct deposits
  - bank charges
  - stop orders
  - dishonoured cheques
  - interest on overdraft
- (3) Items affecting both the bank statement and the cash receipts and cash payments journals:
  - mistakes made by both the entity and the bank

## 8.2 STEPS WHEN COMPILING A BANK RECONCILIATION STATEMENT

After the reasons why the balances do not agree have been identified and classified, the bank reconciliation can begin. The following steps are taken to prepare the bank reconciliation statement:

### Step 1

Compare the debit column of the bank statement with the cash payments journal and vice versa. Tick off items which appear in both the bank statement and the cash payments journal. Note any outstanding items.

### Step 2

Compare the credit column of the bank statement with the cash receipts journal and vice versa. Tick off items which appear in both the bank statement and the cash receipts journal. Note any outstanding items.

### Step 3

Adjust the cash receipts journal and the cash payments journal with items which are in the bank statement but not in the cash receipts and cash payments journals, for example, direct deposits, bank charges and dishonoured cheques.

### Step 4

Use the totals obtained from the adjusted cash receipts and cash payments journals to prepare the bank account.

### Step 5

Prepare a bank reconciliation statement using the outstanding cheques and deposits and correct any mistakes made by both the bank and the entity.

To simplify the preparation of the bank reconciliation statement, always start with the balance as per bank statement. The final balance on the bank reconciliation statement should agree with the balance of the bank account.

## COMPREHENSIVE EXAMPLE ONE

The bank statement of AM Dealers for the month ended 30 September 20.1 are given below:

<b>BANK STATEMENT OF AM DEALERS FOR SEPTEMBER 20.1</b>				
<b>Address: 46 Kaskastreet</b>				
Tshwane				
0003				
Date	Details	Debits R	Credits R	Balance R
01.09.20.1	Balance			2 400
05.09.20.1	Deposit		500	2 900
06.09.20.1	Cheque no: B110	420		2 480
09.09.20.1	Deposit		1 240	3 720
13.09.20.1	Cheque no: B111	64		3 656
19.09.20.1	Cheque no: B112	104		3 552
20.09.20.1	Deposit		160	3 712
21.09.20.1	Cheque no: B113	1 288		2 424
22.09.20.1	Service fees	1		2 423
23.09.20.1	Cheque unpaid	160		2 263
26.09.20.1	Deposit		1 680	3 943
27.09.20.1	Cheque no: B114	600		3 343
28.09.20.1	Cheque no: B115	48		3 295
30.09.20.1	Cheque book	10		3 285
	Service fees	5		3 280
	Debit order – Insurance	300		2 980
	Direct deposit – Mr A Tlape		200	3 180

The balance of the bank account in the general ledger of AM Dealers as at 1 September 20.1 was a favourable balance of R2 400

### AM DEALERS

#### CASH RECEIPTS JOURNAL SEPTEMBER 20.1 (BANK COLUMN ONLY) – CRJ9

Day	Details	Analysis R	Bank R
5	Cash sales	500	500
9	A Bean	1 240	1 240
20	Cash sales	160	160
26	B Cool	1 680	1 680
28	Cash sales	480	480
	Total		4 060

**AM DEALERS****CASH PAYMENTS JOURNAL SEPTEMBER 20.1 (BANK COLUMN ONLY) – CPJ9**

<b>Cheque no</b>	<b>Day</b>	<b>Details</b>	<b>Bank</b>
			<b>R</b>
B110	6	T Yoti	420
B111	12	PNA	64
B112	18	Municipality	104
B113	20	Town Furnishers	1 288
B114	26	Monate Ltd	600
B115	28	Green Stores	48
B116		Tak CC	212
B117	29	Rolke Engineers	400
		Total	3 136

**REQUIRED**

- (1) Prepare the cash receipts journal and the cash payments journal (bank column only) for September 20.1.
- (2) Prepare the bank account in the general ledger.
- (3) Prepare the bank reconciliation statement as at 30 September 20.1.

**SOLUTION: COMPREHENSIVE EXAMPLE ONE****Step 1**

Compare the debit column of the bank statement with the cash payments journal.

Tick off items which appear in both the bank statement (debit column) and cash payments journal.

<b>BANK STATEMENT OF AM DEALERS FOR SEPTEMBER 20.1</b>				
<b>Address:</b> 46 Kaskastreet Tshwane 0003				
Date	Details	Debits R	Credits R	Balance R
01.09.20.1	Balance			2 400
05.09.20.1	Deposit		500	2 900
06.09.20.1	Cheque no: B110	420√		2 480
09.09.20.1	Deposit		1 240	3 720
13.09.20.1	Cheque no: B111	64√		3 656
19.09.20.1	Cheque no: B112	104√		3 552
20.09.20.1	Deposit		160	3 712
21.09.20.1	Cheque no: B113	1 288√		2 424
22.09.20.1	Service fees	1		2 423
23.09.20.1	Cheque unpaid	160		2 263
26.09.20.1	Deposit		1 680	3 943
27.09.20.1	Cheque no: B114	600√		3 343
28.09.20.1	Cheque no: B115	48√		3 295
30.09.20.1	Cheque book	10		3 285
	Service fees	5		3 280
	Debit order – Insurance	300		2 980
	Direct deposit – Mr A Tlape		200	3 180

**AM DEALERS****CASH PAYMENTS JOURNAL SEPTEMBER 20.1 (BANK COLUMN ONLY) – CPJ9**

Cheque no	Day	Details	Bank R	
B110	6	T Yoti	420	√
B111	12	PNA	64	√
B112	18	Municipality	104	√
B113	20	Town Furnishers	1 288	√
B114	26	Monate Ltd	600	√
B115	28	Green Stores	48	√
B116		Tak CC	212	
B117	29	Rolke Engineers	400	
		Total	3 136	

Outstanding items will be the service fees (R1,00 + R5,00 = R6,00), unpaid (dishonoured) cheque (R160,00), cheque book (R10,00), debit order (R300,00), cheque to Tak CC (R212,00), and the cheque to Rolke Engineers (R400,00).

**Step 2**

Compare the credit column of the bank statement with the cash receipts journal.

Tick off items which appear in both the bank statement (credit column) and the cash receipts journal.

<b>BANK STATEMENT OF AM DEALERS FOR SEPTEMBER 20.1</b>				
Address: 46 Kaskastreet Tshwane 0003				
Date	Details	Debits R	Credits R	Balance R
01.09.20.1	Balance			2 400
05.09.20.1	Deposit		500✓	2 900
06.09.20.1	Cheque no: B110	420✓		2 480
09.09.20.1	Deposit		1 240✓	3 720
13.09.20.1	Cheque no: B111	64✓		3 656
19.09.20.1	Cheque no: B112	104✓		3 552
20.09.20.1	Deposit		160✓	3 712
21.09.20.1	Cheque no: B113	1 288✓		2 424
22.09.20.1	Service fees	1		2 423
23.09.20.1	Cheque unpaid	160		2 263
26.09.20.1	Deposit		1 680✓	3 943
27.09.20.1	Cheque no: B114	600✓		3 343
28.09.20.1	Cheque no: B115	48✓		3 295
30.09.20.1	Cheque book	10		3 285
	Service fees	5		3 280
	Debit order – Insurance	300		2 980
	Direct deposit – Mr A Tlape		200	3 180

**AM DEALERS****CASH RECEIPTS JOURNAL SEPTEMBER 20.1 (BANK COLUMN ONLY) – CRJ9**

Day	Details	Analysis R	Bank R	
5	Cash sales	500	500	✓
9	A Bean	1 240	1 240	✓
20	Cash sales	160	160	✓
26	B Cool	1 680	1 680	✓
28	Cash sales	480	480	
	Total		4 060	

Outstanding items will be the direct deposit (R200,00) and the cash sales (R480,00) deposited on 28 September 20.1.



**Step 3**

Adjust the cash receipts journal and the cash payments journal with items in the bank statement but which are not in those journals.

**AM DEALERS****CASH RECEIPTS JOURNAL SEPTEMBER 20.1 (BANK COLUMN ONLY) – CRJ9**

Day	Details		Bank
30	Total	b/d	R 4 060
	Direct deposit – Mr A Tlape		200
			4 260

**AM DEALERS****CASH PAYMENTS JOURNAL SEPTEMBER 20.1 (BANK COLUMN ONLY) – CPJ9**

Day	Details		Bank
30	Total	b/d	R 3 136
	Bank charges		16
	Unpaid cheque		160
	Debit order – Insurance		300
			3 612

**Step 4**

Use the totals obtained from the adjusted cash receipts and cash payments journals to prepare a bank account.

**AM DEALERS  
GENERAL LEDGER**

Dr		Bank				Cr	
20.1				20.1			
Sep	1	Balance	b/d	2 400	Sep	30	Total payments
	30	Total receipts	CRJ9	4 260			CPJ9
				6 660			c/d
							3 612
							3 048
							6 660
Oct	1	Balance	b/d	3 048			

**Step 5****AM DEALERS****BANK RECONCILIATION STATEMENT AS AT 30 SEPTEMBER 20.1**

	Debit	Credit
	R	R
Credit balance as per bank statement		3 180
Credit outstanding deposit		480
Debit outstanding cheques: B116	212	
B117	400	
Debit balance as per bank account	3 048	
	3 660	3 660

**NOTE:**

If the bank statement had a debit (overdrawn) balance, it would have been shown in the debit column of the bank reconciliation statement.

**COMPREHENSIVE EXAMPLE TWO**

The bank account in the books of RG Stores showed an overdrawn balance of R103,60 on 31 October 20.1.

On the same date, the entity's bank statement showed a favourable balance of R36,60.

A comparison of the bank statement with the cash receipts and cash payments journals revealed the following differences:

- The bank did not credit a deposit of R75,60 on 31 October 20.1.
- The following cheques had not yet been presented for payment by 31 October 20.1:
  - 789 for R143,10
  - 795 for R226,90
- The bank returned a cheque for R36,10, which was received from a customer, unpaid and marked "refer to drawer".
- The bank recorded the following charges:
  - interest on overdrawn account of R3,20
  - service fees of R11,30
- Totals in the cash journals before preparing the bank reconciliation
  - cash receipts journal, R913,08
  - cash payments journal, R1 016,68

**REQUIRED**

- (1) Prepare the bank account in the general ledger.
- (2) Prepare the bank reconciliation statement as at 31 October 20.1.

**SOLUTION: COMPREHENSIVE EXAMPLE TWO**

**RG STORES**  
**GENERAL LEDGER**

Dr		Bank				Cr		
20.1 Oct 31	Total receipts Balance	CRJ10 c/d	913 257	08 80	20.1 Oct 31	Balance Total payments	b/d CPJ10	103 60 1 067 28
			1 170	88				1 170 88
					Nov 1	Balance	b/d	257 80

**Calculation:****Total payments**

Total cash payments journal, R1 016,68 + Customer's returned cheque, R36,10 + Bank charges, R14,50 (R3,20 + R11,30) = R1 067,28

**RG STORES****BANK RECONCILIATION STATEMENT AS AT 31 OCTOBER 20.1**

	Debit	Credit
	R	R
Credit balance as per bank statement		36,60
Credit outstanding deposit		75,60
Debit outstanding cheques: 789	143,10	
795	226,90	
Credit balance as per bank account		257,80
	370,00	370,00

### 8.3 BANK RECONCILIATION WHERE A BANK RECONCILIATION STATEMENT WAS PREPARED IN THE PREVIOUS PERIOD

When a bank reconciliation statement was prepared in the previous period (previous month), the first step is to ascertain if the outstanding cheques and the outstanding deposits in the previous period appear in the current period's bank statement.

If they appear in the current period's bank statement, they must be ticked off first and those items still outstanding from the previous period must be noted and shown in the current period's bank reconciliation statement.

The "normal" procedures for bank reconciliation statements will then be followed to prepare the bank reconciliation statement for the current period.

### COMPREHENSIVE EXAMPLE THREE

(a) Spiza Traders prepared the following bank reconciliation statement at 31 July 20.1:

#### SPIZA TRADERS

#### BANK RECONCILIATION STATEMENT AS AT 31 JULY 20.1

	Debit	Credit
	R	R
Credit balance as per bank statement		974,00
Credit outstanding deposit		360,00
Debit outstanding cheques: 104	172,00	
107	420,00	
Debit balance as per bank account	742,00	
	1 334,00	1 334,00

(b) The business received the following bank statement for August 20.1

<b>BANK STATEMENT OF SPIZA TRADERS FOR AUGUST 20.1</b>				
<b>Address:</b> 21 Kennedy Road Midrand 1685				
Date	Details	Debits R	Credits R	Balance R
Aug 1	Balance			974,00
	Deposit		360,00	1 334,00
3	Cheque 104	172,00		1 162,00
4	Cheque 107	420,00		742,00
6	Deposit		1 000,00	1 742,00
7	Cheque 108	900,00		842,00
	Cheque book	8,00		834,00
	Service fees	12,00		822,00
	Cheque 109	400,00		422,00
12	Deposit		384,00	806,00
13	Cheque 111	77,00		729,00
16	Cheque 113	136,00		593,00

19	Deposit		800,00	1 393,00
20	Deposit (direct)		80,00	1 473,00
27	Cheque 114	69,52		1 403,48
30	Cheque 115	750,00		653,48
	Debit order: UP Insurers	100,00		553,48

**SPIZA TRADERS****CASH RECEIPTS JOURNAL AUGUST 20.1 (BANK COLUMN ONLY) – CRJ8**

Day	Details	Analysis	Bank
		<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>
6	S Singh	1 000,00	1 000,00
12	Cash sales	384,00	384,00
19	A Dune	800,00	800,00
31	Cash sales	582,92	582,92
	Total		2 766,92

**SPIZA TRADERS****CASH PAYMENTS JOURNAL AUGUST 20.1 (BANK COLUMN ONLY) – CPJ8**

Cheque no	Day	Details	Bank
			<b>R</b>
108	7	XYZ Wholesalers	900,00
109		DWR Suppliers	400,00
110	8	Cash	168,00
111	12	Cash	77,00
112		Cash	70,40
113	16	Cash	136,00
114	26	Cash	69,52
115	29	RG Traders	750,00
			2 570,92

**REQUIRED**

- (1) Prepare the cash receipts journal and the cash payments journal (bank column only) for August 20.1.
- (2) Prepare the bank account in the general ledger.
- (3) Prepare the bank reconciliation statement as at 31 August 20.1.

## SOLUTION: COMPREHENSIVE EXAMPLE THREE

### Step 1

Compare the debit column and credit column of the previous month's bank reconciliation statement with the current month's bank statement.

Tick off items which appear in both the bank statement (debit column and credit column) and the previous month's bank reconciliation statement.

### SPIZA TRADERS

#### BANK RECONCILIATION STATEMENT AS AT 31 JULY 20.1

	Debit	Credit
	R	R
Credit balance as per bank statement		974,00
Credit outstanding deposit		360,00 ✓
Debit outstanding cheques: 104	172,00 ✓	
107	420,00 ✓	
Debit balance as per bank account	742,00	
	1 334,00	1 334,00

#### BANK STATEMENT OF SPIZA TRADERS FOR AUGUST 20.1

Address: 12 Kennedy Road  
Midrand  
1685

Date	Details	Debits R	Credits R	Balance R
Aug 1	Balance			974,00
	Deposit		360,00 ✓	1 334,00
3	Cheque 104	172,00 ✓		1 162,00
4	Cheque 107	420,00 ✓		742,00
6	Deposit		1 000,00	1 742,00
7	Cheque 108	900,00		842,00
	Cheque book	8,00		834,00
	Service fees	12,00		822,00
	Cheque 109	400,00		422,00
12	Deposit		384,00	806,00
13	Cheque 111	77,00		729,00
16	Cheque 113	136,00		593,00
19	Deposit		800,00	1 393,00
20	Deposit (direct)		80,00	1 473,00
27	Cheque 114	69,52		1 403,48
30	Cheque 115	750,00		653,48
	Debit order: UP Insurers	100,00		553,48

**Step 2**

Compare the debit column of the bank statement with the cash payments journal.

Tick off items which appear in both the bank statement (debit column) and cash payments journal.

<b>BANK STATEMENT OF SPIZA TRADERS FOR AUGUST 20.1</b>				
Address: 12 Kennedy Road Midrand 1685				
Date	Details	Debits R	Credits R	Balance R
Aug 1	Balance			974,00
	Deposit		360,00 ✓	1 334,00
3	Cheque 104	172,00 ✓		1 162,00
4	Cheque 107	420,00 ✓		742,00
6	Deposit		1 000,00	1 742,00
7	Cheque 108	900,00 ✓		842,00
	Cheque book	8,00		834,00
	Service fees	12,00		822,00
	Cheque 109	400,00 ✓		422,00
12	Deposit		384,00	806,00
13	Cheque 111	77,00 ✓		729,00
16	Cheque 113	136,00 ✓		593,00
19	Deposit		800,00	1 393,00
20	Deposit (direct)		80,00	1 473,00
27	Cheque 114	69,52 ✓		1 403,48
30	Cheque 115	750,00 ✓		653,48
	Debit order: UP Insurers	100,00		553,48

**SPIZA TRADERS****CASH PAYMENTS JOURNAL AUGUST 20.1 (BANK COLUMN ONLY) – CPJ8**

Cheque no	Day	Details	Bank R
108	7	XYZ Wholesalers	900,00 ✓
109		DWR Suppliers	400,00 ✓
110	8	Cash	168,00
111	12	Cash	77,00 ✓
112		Cash	70,40
113	16	Cash	136,00 ✓
114	26	Cash	69,52 ✓
115	29	RG Traders	750,00 ✓
			2 570,92

Outstanding items will be the bank charges (R8,00 + R12,00 = R20,00), the debit order (R100,00) and the outstanding cheques (R168,00 and R70,40).

### Step 3

Compare the credit column of the bank statement with the cash receipts journal.

Tick off items which appear in both the bank statement (credit column) and the cash receipts journal.

<b>BANK STATEMENT OF SPIZA TRADERS FOR AUGUST 20.1</b>				
<b>Address: 12 Kennedy Road</b>				
Midrand				
1685				
<b>Date</b>	<b>Details</b>	<b>Debits</b>	<b>Credits</b>	<b>Balance</b>
		<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>
Aug 1	Balance			974,00
	Deposit		360,00 ✓	1 334,00
3	Cheque 104	172,00 ✓		1 162,00
4	Cheque 107	420,00 ✓		742,00
6	Deposit		1 000,00 ✓	1 742,00
7	Cheque 108	900,00 ✓		842,00
	Cheque book	8,00		834,00
	Service fees	12,00		822,00
	Cheque 109	400,00 ✓		422,00
12	Deposit		384,00 ✓	806,00
13	Cheque 111	77,00 ✓		729,00
16	Cheque 113	136,00 ✓		593,00
19	Deposit		800,00 ✓	1 393,00
20	Deposit (direct)		80,00	1 473,00
27	Cheque 114	69,52 ✓		1 403,48
30	Cheque 115	750,00 ✓		653,48
	Debit order: UP Insurers	100,00		553,48

### SPIZA TRADERS

#### CASH RECEIPTS JOURNAL AUGUST 20.1 (BANK COLUMN ONLY) – CRJ8

<b>Day</b>	<b>Details</b>	<b>Analysis</b>	<b>Bank</b>	
		<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>	
6	S Singh	1 000,00	1 000,00	✓
12	Cash sales	384,00	384,00	✓
19	A Dune	800,00	800,00	✓
31	Cash sales	582,92	582,92	
	Totaal		2 766,92	



Outstanding items will be the direct deposit (R80,00) and the cash sales (R582,92) deposited on 31 August 20.1.

**Step 4**

Adjust the cash receipts journal and the cash payment journals with the items that are in the bank statement but not in those journals.

**SPIZA TRADERS**

**CASH RECEIPTS JOURNAL AUGUST 20.1 (BANK COLUMN ONLY) – CRJ8**

Day	Details		Bank
31	Total	b/d	R 2 766,92
	Direct deposit		80,00
			2 846,92

**SPIZA TRADERS**

**CASH PAYMENTS JOURNAL AUGUST 20.1 (BANK COLUMN ONLY) – CPJ8**

Day	Details		Bank
31	Total	b/d	R 2 570,92
	Bank charges		20,00
	Direct order: UP Insurers		100,00
			2 690,92

**Step 5**

Use the totals obtained from the adjusted cash receipts and cash payment journals to prepare the bank account.

**SPIZA TRADERS**

**GENERAL LEDGER**

Dr		Bank				Cr	
20.1					20.1		
Aug	1	Balance	b/d	742 00	Aug	31	Total payments
	31	Total receipts	CRJ8	2 846 92			CPJ8
				3 588 92			c/d
							2 690 92
							898 00
							3 588 92
Sep	1	Balance	b/d	898 00			

## Step 6

**SPIZA TRADERS****BANK RECONCILIATION STATEMENT AS AT 31 AUGUST 20.1**

	<b>Debit</b>	<b>Credit</b>
	<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>
Credit balance as per bank statement		553,48
Credit outstanding deposit		582,92
Debit outstanding cheques: 110	168,00	
112	70,40	
Debit balance as per bank account	898,00	
	<b>1 136,40</b>	<b>1 136,40</b>

**NOTE:**

If the bank statement had a debit (overdrawn) balance, it would have been shown in the debit column of the bank reconciliation statement.

**COMPREHENSIVE EXAMPLE FOUR****LP TRADERS****BANK RECONCILIATION STATEMENT AS AT 30 NOVEMBER 20.1**

	<b>Debit</b>	<b>Credit</b>
	<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>
Credit balance as per bank statement		359,60
Credit outstanding deposit		160,70
Debit outstanding cheques: 110	3,30	
115	5,00	
118	7,50	
130	4,50	
Debit balance as per bank account	500,00	
	<b>520,30</b>	<b>520,30</b>

The bank statement on 31 December 20.1 showed a favourable balance of:	<b>R</b> 299,57
The total of the cash payments journal on 31 December 20.1 was:	2 098,86
The total of the cash receipts journal on 31 December 20.1 was:	1 248,20

A comparison of the bank statement with the previous month's bank reconciliation statement, the cash receipts journal and the cash payments journal for December 20.1 showed the following differences:

Items in the bank statement but not in the cash receipts and cash payments journals for December 20.1:

		R
• Deposit on 30 November 20.1		160,70
• Cheques not yet presented to the bank for payment:		
	115	5,00
	118	7,50
	130	4,50
• Service fees		5,40
• Dishonoured cheque. This cheque of R15,00 was received from a client, D Dobson, as payment on his account.		

Items in the cash receipts and cash payments journals but which are not in the bank statement for December 20.1:

		R
• Deposit on 30 December 20.1		192,03
• Cheques:		
	121	192,36
	129	196,00
	131	256,00
	136	215,00

## REQUIRED

- (1) Prepare the cash receipts journal and the cash payments journal (bank column only) for December 20.1.
- (2) Prepare the bank account in the general ledger.
- (3) Prepare the bank reconciliation statement as at 31 December 20.1.

## SOLUTION: COMPREHENSIVE EXAMPLE FOUR

### LP TRADERS

#### CASH PAYMENTS JOURNAL DECEMBER 20.1 (BANK COLUMN ONLY) – CPJ12


Day	Details		Bank
			<b>R</b>
31	Total	b/d	2 098,86
	Bank charges		5,40
	Unpaid cheque: D Dobson		15,00
			2 119,26

**LP TRADERS  
GENERAL LEDGER**

Dr	Bank						Cr		
20.1 Dec 1	Balance	b/d	500	00	20.1 Dec 31	Total payments	CPJ12	2 119	26
	31	Total receipts	CRJ12	1 248	20				
		Balance	c/d	371	06				
				2 119	26			2 119	26
						20.2 Jan 1	Balance	b/d	371 06

**LP TRADERS  
BANK RECONCILIATION STATEMENT AS AT 31 DECEMBER 20.1**

	Debit	Credit
	R	R
Credit balance as per bank statement		299,57
Credit outstanding deposit		192,03
Debit outstanding cheques: 110	3,30	
121	192,36	
129	196,00	
131	256,00	
136	215,00	
Credit balance as per bank account		371,06
	862,66	862,66

	<p><b>SELF-ASSESSMENT</b></p> <p>After you have worked through this learning unit, are you able to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Correctly identify non-corresponding items when comparing the cash receipts journal (CRJ) and cash payments journal (CPJ) with the bank statement received from the bank?</li> <li>● Correctly identify non-corresponding items when comparing the cash receipts journal and cash payments journal with the bank reconciliation statement of the previous month and the bank statement received from the bank?</li> <li>● Prepare the bank account in the general ledger?</li> <li>● Correctly prepare a bank reconciliation statement?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹
		☺	☺	☺
		☺	☺	☺
		☺	☺	☺

If you have marked all ☺ you may continue to the next learning unit.

If you have marked any ☹ you have to *revise* that specific section.

If you have marked any ☹ you have to **re-study** that specific section.

**FAC1501**

**LEARNING UNIT 9**

**TRIAL BALANCE**



**Introductory Financial  
Accounting**

## OVERVIEW

Learning outcomes .....	274
Key concepts .....	274
Assessment criteria .....	274
9.1 Introduction .....	275
9.2 Errors which will not be revealed by a trial balance .....	275
9.3 Errors which will be revealed by a trial balance .....	275
9.4 Tracing errors in a trial balance.....	275
Self-assessment.....	290

## LEARNING OUTCOMES

After studying this learning unit you should be able to:

- correctly prepare a trial balance from a given list of ledger account balances and totals
- identify those errors that will not be revealed by a trial balance
- identify those errors that will be revealed by a trial balance
- trace errors in a trial balance

*Almost everything in life is easier to get into than out of.*

## KEY CONCEPTS

- Trial balance
- Financial position section
- Nominal accounts section



## ASSESSMENT CRITERIA

The ability to trace errors that will be revealed in a trial balance and correctly prepare a trial balance is demonstrated.

## 9.1 INTRODUCTION

In order to determine whether the double-entry principle has been applied correctly when recording transactions, an entity needs to prepare a trial balance on a frequent basis. This is usually done at the end of the month after the subsidiary journals have been posted to the ledger accounts and these accounts have been properly balanced or totalled. A trial balance also checks the arithmetical accuracy of the bookkeeping and is prepared by using the balances or totals which appear in the ledger accounts of the general ledger.

A trial balance is a list of debit and credit balances taken from the general ledger accounts. It is divided into two sections, namely a financial position section and a nominal accounts section. The balances are entered on the same side as they appear in the ledger accounts. A debit balance brought down (b/d) is entered in the debit column of the trial balance and a credit balance brought down (b/d) is entered in the credit column of the trial balance.

## 9.2 ERRORS WHICH WILL NOT BE REVEALED BY A TRIAL BALANCE

The following are examples of errors that will not be revealed by a trial balance:

- Errors of omission – A transaction which has been completely omitted will not be disclosed by the trial balance.
- Posting to the wrong account – This refers to a transaction that has been entered on the correct side of a ledger account but has been posted to an incorrect account. For example, sales is correctly credited but instead of debiting J Vos, the account of H Vos is debited.
- Compensating errors – This include errors of addition, errors in balancing the account and posting errors. An error on one side of a ledger account is compensated for by the same error on the opposite side of another ledger account. When added, totals on both sides will be exactly the same so the error will not be revealed.

## 9.3 ERRORS WHICH WILL BE REVEALED BY A TRIAL BALANCE

The following are examples of errors that will be revealed by a trial balance:

- The trial balance has been incorrectly totalled.
- The balances in the ledger accounts have been incorrectly transferred to the trial balance.
  - An incorrect amount has been transferred to the correct side of the trial balance.
  - Debit balances have been transferred to the credit side of the trial balance or a credit balance has been transferred to the debit side of the trial balance.
  - A balance appearing in the ledger has been omitted from the trial balance.
- The balance of the ledger account has been incorrectly calculated.
  - The account has been totalled incorrectly, thus the balance will also be incorrect.
  - The account has been totalled correctly but the balance has been calculated incorrectly.
- Posting from the journals to the ledger accounts are incorrect.
  - A debit entry from a journal has been posted to the credit side of a ledger account, or vice versa.
  - The amount entered is incorrect.
  - Posting of one or more transactions has been omitted.

## 9.4 TRACING ERRORS IN A TRIAL BALANCE

The general approach is to work “backwards”. This means that the last step in the process is checked first. So you start off by first re-adding the trial balance, then checking the entries in the trial balance,

then checking the balances and totals in the ledger accounts, then checking the postings from the subsidiary journals to the ledger accounts and lastly checking the original entries with the details appearing on the source documents.

**Example: Basic format of a trial balance**

**OCEAN RETAILERS**

**TRIAL BALANCE AS AT 31 DECEMBER 20.6**

	Fol	Debit	Credit
		R	R
<b>Financial position section</b>			
Capital	B1		76 500,00
Drawings	B2	5 000,00	
Land and buildings	B3	80 000,00	
Vehicles	B4	25 000,00	
Inventory	B5	8 000,00	
Debtors control	B6	6 000,00	
Bank	B7	3 000,00	
Petty cash	B8	200,00	
Cash float	B9	800,00	
<b>Nominal accounts section</b>			
Sales	N1		120 000,00
Cost of sales	N2	60 000,00	
Sales returns	N3	1 000,00	
Bank charges	N4	500,00	
Property tax	N5	2 000,00	
Repairs	N6	500,00	
Stationery	N7	300,00	
Vehicle expenses	N8	700,00	
Water and electricity	N9	3 500,00	
		196 500,00	196 500,00

**NOTE:**

The trial balance is prepared from the balances and totals in the accounts of the general ledger. The balances of individual debtors and creditors accounts in the different subsidiary ledgers are represented by the balances on the debtors and creditors control accounts.

B refers to account that are utilized in the statement of financial position. These accounts have a closing balance and are not closed off to final accounts.

N refers to accounts that are closed off to final accounts.



## EXERCISE 9.1

Use the information supplied in the general ledger of Hex Traders and prepare the trial balance as at 30 June 20.9.

### HEX TRADERS GENERAL LEDGER FINANCIAL POSITION SECTION

Dr		Capital				B1		Cr
					20.9			
					Jun 1	Balance	b/d	46 770 00

Dr		Drawings				B2		Cr
20.9								
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	4 650 00				
	11	Inventory	GJ1	282 72				
	21	Bank	CPJ1	300 00				
	29	Bank	CPJ1	965 00				
				6 197 72				

Dr		Vehicles				B3		Cr
20.9								
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	32 775 00				

Dr		Equipment				B4		Cr
20.9								
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	3 915 00				
	30	Creditors control	PJ1	800 00				
				4 715 00				

Dr		Inventory				B5		Cr
20.9					20.9			
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	4 198 00	Jun 11	Drawings	GJ1	248 00
	30	Creditors control	PJ1	6 974 03	30	Creditors control	PRJ1	81 23
		Cost of sales	SRJ1	49 60		Cost of sales	SJ1	1 928 00
		Bank	CPJ1	1 765 00		Cost of sales	CRJ1	7 360 00
				12 986 63		Balance	c/d	3 369 40
				12 986 63				12 986 63
Jul	1	Balance	b/d	3 369 40				

Dr		Debtors control				B6		Cr	
20.9					20.9				
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	2 439 00	Jun	30	Sales returns	SRJ1	70 68
	30	Sales	SJ1	2 747 40			Bank and settlement discount	CRJ1	1 197 00
		Bank (cheque R/D)	CRJ1	835 00			Journal credits	GJ1	423 00
		Journal debits	GJ1	230 00			Balance	c/d	4 561 32
				6 252 00					6 252 00
Jul	1	Balance	b/d	4 561 32					

Dr		Bank				B7		Cr	
20.9					20.9				
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	3 420 00	Jun	30	Total payments	CPJ1	11 599 54
	30	Total receipts	CRJ1	12 064 00			Balance	c/d	3 884 46
				15 484 00					15 484 00
Jul	1	Balance	b/d	3 884 46					

Dr		Cash float				B8		Cr	
20.9									
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	250 00					

Dr		Petty cash				B9		Cr	
20.9					20.9				
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	100 00	Jun	30	Total payments	PCJ1	72 44
	30	Bank	CPJ1	72 44			Balance	c/d	100 00
				172 44					172 44
Jul	1	Balance	b/d	100 00					

Dr		Creditors control				B10		Cr	
20.9					20.9				
Jun	30	Sundry purchases			Jun	1	Balance	b/d	1 225 50
		returns	PRJ1	139 34		30	Sundry purchases	PJ1	9 436 00
		Bank	CPJ1	729 60					
		Balance	c/d	9 792 56					
				10 661 50					10 661 50
					Jul	1	Balance	b/d	9 792 56

Dr		VAT input				B11		Cr	
20.9					20.9				
Jun	1	B Steed	CRJ1	28 00	Jun	21	R Seef	GJ1	2 46
	30	Creditors control	PJ1	1 158 81		30	Creditors control	PRJ1	17 11
		Bank	CPJ1	422 10			VAT control	GJ1	1 598 24
		Bank	CRJ1	210 10					
		Petty cash	PCJ1	6 44					
				1 617 81					1 617 81

Dr		VAT output				B12		Cr	
20.9					20.9				
Jun	30	Debtors control	SRJ1	8 68	Jun	1	Balance	b/d	1 000 00
		VAT control	GJ1	2 704 08		11	Drawings	GJ1	34 72
							Debtors control	SJ1	337 40
							Bank	CRJ1	1 337 00
							Bank	CPJ1	3 64
				2 712 76					2 712 76

Dr		VAT control				B13		Cr	
20.9					20.9				
Jun	30	VAT input	GJ1	1 598 24	Jun	30	VAT output	GJ1	2 704 08
		SARS (VAT)	J1	1 105 84					
				2 704 08					2 704 08

Dr		SARS (VAT)				B14		Cr	
					20.9				
					Jun	30	VAT control	GJ1	1 105 84

**NOMINAL ACCOUNTS SECTION**

Dr		Sales				N1		Cr	
					20.9				
					Jun	1	Balance	b/d	39 623 60
						30	Debtors control	SJ1	2 410 00
							Bank	CRJ1	9 200 00
									51 233 60

Dr		Sales returns				N2		Cr	
20.9									
Jun	30	Debtors control	SRJ1	62 00					

Dr		Cost of sales				N3		Cr	
20.9					20.9				
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	27 501 00	Jun	30	Inventory	SRJ1	49 60
	30	Inventory	SJ1	1 928 00			Balance	c/d	36 739 40
		Inventory	CRJ1	7 360 00					
				36 789 00					36 789 00
Jul	1	Balance	c/d	36 739 40					

Dr		Credit losses				N4		Cr	
20.9									
Jun	1	B Steed	GJ1	200 00					

Dr		Bank charges				N5		Cr	
20.9									
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	114 00					
	30	Bank	CPJ1	100 00					
				214 00					

Dr		Settlement discount granted				N6		Cr	
20.9					20.9				
Jun	30	Debtors control	CRJ1	17 54	Jun	21	R Seef	D3	17 54

Dr		Settlement discount received				N7		Cr	
					20.9				
					Jun	30	Creditors control	CPJ1	25 96

Dr		Donations				N8		Cr	
20.9									
Jun	22	Petty cash	PCJ1	20 00					

Dr		Packing material				N9		Cr	
20.9					20.9				
Jun	30	Creditors control	PJ1	335 44	Jun	30	Creditors control	PRJ1	25 00
				335 44			Balance	c/d	310 44
Jul	1	Balance	c/d	310 44					335 44

Dr		Postage				N10		Cr	
20.9									
Jun	30	Petty cash	PCJ1	20 00					

Dr		Rental expenses					N11		Cr
20.9									
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	1 881	00				

Dr		Salaries					N12		Cr
20.9									
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	2 475	00				
	29	Bank	CPJ1	4 000	00				
				6 475	00				

Dr		Stationery					N13		Cr
20.9						20.9			
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	399	00	Jun	30	Creditors control	
	30	Creditors control	PJ1	167	72			Balance	
		Petty cash	PCJ1	26	00			PRJ1	
				592	72			c/d	
				576	72			16 00	
Jul1		Balance	c/d					576 72	

Dr		Telephone expenses					N14		Cr
20.9									
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	342	00				
	30	Bank	CPJ1	370	00				
				712	00				

Dr		Water and electricity					N15		Cr
20.9									
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	3 484	50				
	11	Bank	CPJ1	780	00				
				4 264	50				

Dr		Wages					N16		Cr
20.9									
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	675	00				
	30	Bank	CPJ1	1 290	00				
				1 965	00				

Dr		Credit losses recovered					N17		Cr
						20.9			
						Jun	23	Bank	
								CRJ1	
								350 00	

Dr		Interest income					N18		Cr
						20.9			
						Jun	21	R Seef	
								GJ1	
								15 00	

<b>SOLUTION: EXERCISE 9.1</b>
-------------------------------

**HEX TRADERS****TRIAL BALANCE AS AT 30 JUNE 20.9**

	<b>Fol</b>	<b>Debit</b>	<b>Credit</b>
		<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>
<b>Financial position section</b>			
Capital	B1		46 770,00
Drawings	B2	6 197,72	
Vehicles	B3	32 775,00	
Equipment	B4	4 715,00	
Inventory	B5	3 369,40	
Debtors control	B6	4 561,32	
Bank	B7	3 884,46	
Cash float	B8	250,00	
Petty cash	B9	100,00	
Creditors control	B10		9 792,56
SARS (VAT)	B11		1 105,84
<b>Nominal accounts section</b>			
Sales	N1		51 233,60
Sales returns	N2	62,00	
Cost of sales	N3	36 739,40	
Credit losses	N4	200,00	
Bank charges	N5	214,00	
Settlement discount received	N7		25,96
Donations	N8	20,00	
Packing material	N9	310,44	
Postage	N10	20,00	
Rental expenses	N11	1 881,00	
Salaries	N12	6 475,00	
Stationery	N13	576,72	
Telephone expenses	N14	712,00	
Water and electricity	N15	4 264,50	
Wages	N16	1 965,00	
Credit losses recovered	N17		350,00
Interest income	N18		15,00
		109 292, 96	109 292,96

## EXERCISE 9.2

Prepare a trial balance from the following balances and totals taken from the general ledger of BJ Thomas and Son as at 30 November 20.1. Use your own folio references.

### List of balances and totals:

Capital, R66 400; vehicles, R100 000; equipment, R20 000; debtors control, R14 000; creditors control, R23 000; bank, R4 500; inventory, R7 500; petty cash, R200; sales, R160 000; cash float, R500; drawings, R1 200; stationery, R400; bank charges, R600; interest expense, R700; credit losses, R300; petrol and oil, R4 800; cost of sales, R80 000; sales returns, R4 000; SARS (VAT) (Dr), R1 500; advertising, R1 800; telephone expenses, R6 000, packing material, R1 400

## SOLUTION: EXERCISE 9.2

### BJ THOMAS AND SON

#### TRIAL BALANCE AS AT 30 NOVEMBER 20.1

	Fol	Debit R	Credit R
<b>Financial position section</b>			
Capital	B1		66 400,00
Drawings	B2	1 200,00	
Vehicles	B3	100 000,00	
Equipment	B4	20 000,00	
Inventory	B5	7 500,00	
Debtors control	B6	14 000,00	
Bank	B7	4 500,00	
Cash float	B8	500,00	
Petty cash	B9	200,00	
Creditors control	B10		23 000,00
SARS (VAT)	B11	1 500,00	
<b>Nominal accounts section</b>			
Sales	N1		160 000,00
Sales returns	N2	4 000,00	
Cost of sales	N3	80 000,00	
Advertising	N4	1 800,00	
Credit losses	N5	300,00	
Bank charges	N6	600,00	
Interest expense	N7	700,00	
Packing material	N8	1 400,00	
Petrol and oil	N9	4 800,00	
Stationery	N10	400,00	
Telephone expenses	N11	6 000,00	
		249 400,00	249 400,00

## EXERCISE 9.3

Use the information provided in the general ledger of Wilco CC to prepare the trial balance of Wilco CC as at 30 June 20.4.

### WILCO CC GENERAL LEDGER FINANCIAL POSITION SECTION

Dr		Members' contributions				B1		Cr	
20.4					20.4				
Jun	30	Balance	c/d	178 000 00	Jun	1	Balance	b/d	170 000 00
					Jun	5	Bank	CRJ4	8 000 00
				178 000 00					178 000 00
					Jul	1	Balance	b/d	178 000 00

Dr		Vehicles				B2		Cr
20.4								
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	120 000 00				

Dr		Office equipment				B3		Cr
20.4								
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	35 000 00				
	4	Bank	CPJ4	1 500 00				
	4	Warehouse (Pty) Ltd	PJ4	6 000 00				
				42 500 00				

Dr		Inventory				B4		Cr	
20.4					20.4				
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	18 000 00	Jun	30	Creditors control	PRJ4	800 00
	30	Bank	CPJ4	3 000 00			Cost of sales	CRJ4	22 600 00
		Creditors control	PJ4	16 500 00			Cost of sales	SJ4	2 126 90
		Cost of sales	SRJ4	166 66			Balance	c/d	12 139 76
				37 666 66					37 666 66
Jul	1	Balance	b/d	12 139 76					

Dr		Debtors control				B5		Cr	
20.4					20.4				
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	3 432 00	Jun	30	Bank and settlement discount	CRJ4	2 657 00
	30	Sales	SJ4	3 637 00			Sales returns	SRJ4	285 00
		Journal debits	GJ4	18 00			Journal credits	GJ4	700 00
				7 087 00			Balance	c/d	3 445 00
				3 445 00					7 087 00
Jul	1	Balance	b/d	3 445 00					



Dr		Creditors control				B6		Cr	
20.4					20.4				
Jun	30	Bank and settlement discount	CPJ4	12 302 00	Jun	1 Balance	b/d	21 012 00	
		Sundry purchases				30 Sundry purchases	PJ4	30 552 00	
		returns	PRJ4	958 00					
		Balance	c/d	38 304 00					
				51 564 00				51 564 00	
					Jul	1 Balance	b/d	38 304 00	

Dr		VAT input				B7		Cr	
20.4					20.4				
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	2 490 00	Jun	30 Creditors control	PRJ4	117 65	
	30	Bank	CPJ4	1 315 02		VAT control	GJ4	7 537 00	
		Bank	CRJ4	11 67					
		B Ngco	GJ4	85 96					
		Creditors control	PJ4	3 752 00					
				7 654 65				7 654 65	

Dr		VAT output				B8		Cr	
20.4					20.4				
Jun	30	Debtors control	SRJ4	35 00	Jun	1 Balance	b/d	2 610 00	
		VAT control	GJ4	7 871 79		30 Bank	CRJ4	4 746 00	
						Bank	CPJ4	104 14	
						Bank	CPJ4	446 65	
				7 906 79				7 906 79	

Dr		VAT control				B9		Cr	
20.4					20.4				
Jun	30	VAT input	GJ4	7 537 00	Jun	30 VAT output	GJ4	7 871 79	
		SARS (VAT)		334 79					
				7 871 79				7 871 79	

Dr		SARS (VAT)				B10		Cr	
					20.4				
					Jun	30 VAT control	GJ4	334 79	

Dr		Bank				B11		Cr	
20.4					20.4				
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	2 500 00	Jun	30 Total payments	CPJ4	33 562 00	
	30	Total receipts	CRJ4	49 208 00		Balance	c/d	18 146 00	
				51 708 00				51 708 00	
Jul	1	Balance	b/d	18 146 00					

**NOMINAL ACCOUNTS SECTION**

Dr		Sales				N1		Cr		
					20.4					
					Jun	30	Balance	b/d	120 000	00
							Bank	CRJ4	33 900	00
							Debtors control	SJ4	3 190	35
									157 090	35

Dr		Sales returns				N2		Cr		
20.4										
Jun	30	Debtors control	SRJ4	250	00					

Dr		Cost of sales				N3		Cr			
20.4					20.4						
Jun	30	Balance	b/d	80 000	00	Jun	30	Inventory	SRJ4	166	66
		Inventory	CRJ4	22 600	00			Balance	c/d	104 560	24
		Inventory	SJ4	2 126	90					104 726	90
				104 726	90						
Jul	1	Balance	b/d	104 560	24						

Dr		Settlement discount granted				N4		Cr		
20.4										
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	150	00					
	30	Debtors control	CRJ4	83	33					
				233	33					

Dr		Settlement discount received				N5		Cr		
					20.4					
					Jun	30	Creditors control	CPJ4	743	86

Dr		Rental expenses				N6		Cr		
20.4										
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	6 000	00					
		Bank	CPJ4	2 000	00					
				8 000	00					

Dr		Municipal services				N7		Cr		
20.4										
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	5 200	00					
		Bank	CPJ4	1 200	00					
				6 400	00					

Dr		Telephone expenses					N8		Cr
20.4									
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	3 000	00				
	30	Bank	CPJ4	800	00				
				3 800	00				

Dr		Stationery					N9		Cr
20.4						20.4			
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	800	00	Jun	30	Debitors control	
	30	Creditors control	PJ4	1 100	00			PRJ4	
				1 900	00			c/d	
				1 859	65			40	
Jul	1	Balance	b/d					35	
								1 859	
								65	
								1 900	
								00	

Dr		Packing material					N10		Cr
20.4									
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	320	00				
	3	Creditors control	PJ4	700	00				
				1 020	00				

Dr		Bank charges					N11		Cr
20.4									
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	430	00				
	30	Bank	CPJ4	192	98				
				622	98				

Dr		Wages					N12		Cr
20.4									
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	9 000	00				
	3	Bank	CPJ4	3 000	00				
				12 000	00				

Dr		Salaries					N13		Cr
20.4									
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	25 200	00				
	27	Bank	CPJ4	4 300	00				
		Bank	CPJ4	4 100	00				
				33 600	00				

Dr		Cell phone expenses						N14		Cr
20.4										
Jun	1	Balance	b/d	2 100	00					
	29	Bank	CPJ4	700	00					
				2 800	00					

Dr		Repairs						N15		Cr
20.4										
Jun	29	P and J Motors	PJ4	2 500	00					


Dr		Interest income						N16		Cr
						20.4				
						Jun 30	L Kitt	CPJ4	18 00	

Dr		Credit losses						N17		Cr
20.4										
Jun	30	B Ngco	GJ4	614	04					

<b>SOLUTION: EXERCISE 9.3</b>
-------------------------------

**WILCO CC****TRIAL BALANCE AS AT 30 JUNE 20.4**

	Fol	Debit R	Credit R
<b>Financial position section</b>			
Members' contributions	B1		178 000,00
Vehicles	B2	120 000,00	
Office equipment	B3	42 500,00	
Inventory	B4	12 139,76	
Debtors control	B5	3 445,00	
Creditors control	B6		38 304,00
SARS (VAT)	B10		334,79
Bank	B11	18 146,00	
<b>Nominal accounts section</b>			
Sales	N1		157 090,35
Sales returns	N2	250,00	
Cost of sales	N3	104 560,24	
Settlement discount granted	N4	233,33	
Settlement discount received	N5		743,86
Rental expenses	N6	8 000,00	
Municipal services	N7	6 400,00	
Telephone expenses	N8	3 800,00	
Stationery	N9	1 859,65	
Packing materials	N10	1 020,00	
Bank charges	N11	622,98	
Wages	N12	12 000,00	
Salaries	N13	33 600,00	
Cell phone expenses	N14	2 800,00	
Repairs	N15	2 500,00	
Interest income	N16		18,00
Credit losses	N17	614,04	
		374 491,00	374 491,00

	<h3>SELF-ASSESSMENT</h3> <p>After you have worked through this learning unit, are you able to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• identify those errors that will not be revealed by a trial balance?</li> <li>• identify those errors that will be revealed by a trial balance?</li> <li>• correctly prepare a trial balance?</li> </ul>	<input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/> <input type="radio"/>
---	---	---	---	---

If you have marked all ☺ you may continue to the next learning unit.

If you have marked any ☹ you have to *revise* that specific section.

If you have marked any ☹ you have to **re-study** that specific section.

**FAC1501**

**LEARNING UNIT 10**

**FINAL ACCOUNTS**



**Introductory Financial  
Accounting**

## OVERVIEW

Learning outcomes .....	292
Key concepts .....	292
Assessment criteria .....	293
10.1 Introduction .....	293
10.2 Gross profit and net profit.....	293
10.3 Closing transfers .....	294
Self-assessment .....	324

## LEARNING OUTCOMES

After studying this learning unit you should be able to:

- discuss in your own words the difference between gross and net profit and describe how they are calculated
- do the closing entries at the end of a financial year for a retail entity using the perpetual inventory system
- do the closing entries at the end of a financial year for a retail entity using the periodic inventory system
- do the closing entries at the end of a financial year for a service entity
- prepare a trading account and profit or loss account
- prepare a post-closing trial balance

## KEY CONCEPTS

- Gross profit
- Net profit (profit for the year)
- Closing transfers
- Year-end procedures
- Final accounts
- Trading account
- Profit or loss account





## ASSESSMENT CRITERIA

- the ability to do the closing entries at the end of a financial year for a retail entity using the perpetual inventory system is demonstrated.
- the ability to do the closing entries at the end of a financial year for a retail entity using the periodic inventory system is demonstrated.
- the ability to do the closing entries at the end of a financial year for a service entity is demonstrate.
- the ability to prepare a trading account, profit or loss account and a post-closing trial balance for a retail entity as well as a service entity is demonstrated.

## 10.1 INTRODUCTION

A retailer purchases inventory with the purpose of selling it at a profit. If he/she purchases a bottle of coffee for R15 and sells it for R25, he/she makes a profit of R10. The profit is the difference between what he/she paid for the item and the selling price.

To determine the profit on one article is simple, because the cost price and the selling price are known and the profit will be the difference between the two. The term profit mark-up refers to the percentage profit a retailer wants to make on the item(s) he/she sells. If the retailer sells a large and varied quantity of articles and if the profit mark-up on these articles differs (and if operating expenses like salaries, water and electricity, telephone, etc are taken into consideration) the calculation of profit becomes increasingly more difficult and the retailer has to use special accounts in order to calculate the profit accurately.

Periodically it is important for an entity to determine its profit for a specific period. This enables the owner to run his/her business more effectively because errors in management can be detected more quickly and appropriate corrective measures can be taken.

The date on which an entity calculates its profit is called the accounting date and the period for which it is done is called the accounting period. This period is also called the financial year; this does not necessarily coincide with the calendar year. The financial year is any period which consists of 12 consecutive months. Normally entities choose their accounting period to coincide with the close of the tax year on the last day of February. An entity can, after consulting with SARS, close its financial year on any appropriate date.

## 10.2 GROSS PROFIT AND NET PROFIT

Profit is the amount by which the income of an entity (during a certain accounting period) exceeds the operating expenses (for the same period). The effect of a profit is to increase the equity. For accounting reasons this profit is calculated in two stages – first the gross profit is calculated, which forms the basis for calculating the net profit (profit for the year). In the case of a service entity there can be no gross profit because there is no cost of sales.

The gross profit of an entity is the amount by which its sales exceed the cost price of the items sold for a specific accounting period. The net profit (profit for the year) is the gross profit reduced by all the operating expenses which are incurred in the day-to-day running of the entity. Other income, like interest income, is then added. An entity can also suffer a loss. This happens when, for a specific accounting period, the expenses are more than the income.

Assume that an entity has kept proper records of all its transactions during the financial year. During this period inventory was purchased and sold and services rendered, documents were issued and

received and the transaction data thereon carefully entered in the appropriate subsidiary journals and then filed. The transaction data was then posted from the subsidiary journals to the different ledger accounts. At the end of the accounting period (financial year) the entity must determine if it has traded at a profit or a loss. In order to calculate the profit or loss, two special accounts have to be opened. These two accounts, referred to collectively as final accounts, are the trading account and the profit or loss account.

### 10.3 CLOSING TRANSFERS

At the end of the financial year, before the trading account and profit or loss accounts are opened, the total amounts that have accumulated in the different income and expenditure accounts of the entity must be determined. This implies that the different income and expenditure accounts must be closed off at the end of the year so that new accounts can be opened in the new financial year.

The income and expenditure accounts of the entity are nominal accounts and must be closed off at the end of the financial year by way of closing transfers. Closing transfers are entries in the accounting records whereby the accumulated totals in the accounting records are transferred to another account or accounts, called final accounts or to the owner's capital account.

Closing transfers are entered in the general journal. This journal is used as a book of first entry for all transactions which do not have a formal source document and as such cannot be entered in any of the other journals.

It was clearly stated that the final accounts are used to determine profit. The trading account is used for determining the gross profit and is only applicable to retail entities and not to service entities. The reason for this is that gross profit is the difference between total sales and total cost of sales. A service entity renders a service and does not sell any goods. The profit or loss account is used to determine the net profit (profit for the year) and is used for both retail and service entities.

The accounting procedure that must be followed at the end of the financial year by an entity (using a **perpetual inventory system**) is as follows:

- (1) Balance the financial position accounts and calculate the totals of the nominal accounts in pencil.
- (2) Prepare the trial balance from the pencil totals in the nominal accounts and the balances of the financial position accounts.
- (3) The next step involves the writing-up of closing transfers, which involves the following phases:
  - Close off the sales returns account to the sales account.
  - Close off the settlement discount granted account to the sales account.
  - Close off the settlement discount received account to the cost of sales account.
  - Close off the sales account and cost of sales account to the trading account.
  - Close off the trading account by transferring the gross profit to the profit or loss account.
  - Close off the income and expense accounts by transferring their totals to the profit or loss account.
  - Close off the profit or loss account by transferring the net profit (profit for the year) to the capital account.
  - Close off the drawings account by transferring the balance to the capital account. Note that at each phase the necessary closing transfer is made in the general journal. In the case of a service entity the first five phases are skipped.
- (4) After the closing transfers have been made, all the nominal accounts must balance, that is, the total of the debit side and the total of the credit side of each account will be the same. The capital account must also be balanced.

At this point a post-closing trial balance can be prepared which will contain only the balances of the financial position accounts.

If a **periodic inventory system is used by an entity** the closing transfers will be as follows:

- (1) Close off the sales returns account to the sales account.
- (2) Close off the settlement discount granted account to the sales account.
- (3) Close off the purchases returns account to the purchases account.
- (4) Close off the settlement discount received account to the purchases account.
- (5) Close off the sales account and purchases account to the trading account.
- (6) Close off the carriage on purchases account to the trading account.
- (7) Transfer the opening inventory to the trading account.
- (8) Transfer the closing inventory to the trading account.
- (9) Close off the trading account by transferring the gross profit to the profit or loss account.
- (10) Close off the income and expense accounts by transferring their totals to the profit or loss account.
- (11) Close off the profit or loss account by transferring the net profit (profit for the year) to the capital account.
- (12) Close off the drawings account by transferring the balance to the capital account.

The above procedures can be summarised as follows:

Transaction	Perpetual (continuous) inventory system		Periodic inventory system	
	General ledger		General ledger	
	Account debited	Account credited	Account debited	Account credited
Close off the sales returns account to the sales account	Sales	Sales returns	Sales	Sales returns
Close off the settlement discount granted account to the sales account	Sales	Settlement discount granted	Sales	Settlement discount granted
Close off the purchases returns account to the purchases account			Purchases returns	Purchases
Close off the settlement discount received account	Settlement discount received	Cost of sales	Settlement discount received	Purchases
Close off the sales account to the trading account	Sales	Trading account	Sales	Trading account
Close off the cost of sales account to the trading account	Trading account	Cost of sales		
Close off the purchases account to the trading account			Trading account	Purchases
Close off the carriage on purchases account to the trading account			Trading account	Carriage on purchases
Transfer the opening inventory to the trading account			Trading account	Inventory
Transfer the closing inventory to the trading account			Inventory	Trading account
Close off the trading account by transferring the gross profit to the profit or loss account	Trading account	Profit or loss account	Trading account	Profit or loss account

Transaction	Perpetual (continuous) inventory system		Periodic inventory system	
	General ledger		General ledger	
	Account debited	Account credited	Account debited	Account credited
Close off the income accounts by transferring their totals to the profit or loss account	Income accounts	Profit or loss account	Income accounts	Profit or loss account
Close off the expense accounts by transferring their totals to the profit or loss account	Profit or loss account	Expense accounts	Profit or loss account	Expense accounts
Close off the profit or loss account by transferring the net profit (profit for the year) to the capital account	Profit or loss account	Capital account	Profit or loss account	Capital account
Close off the drawings account by transferring the total to the capital account	Capital account	Drawings	Capital account	Drawings

### COMPREHENSIVE EXAMPLE 10.1: FINANCIAL YEAR-END PROCEDURES OF A TRADING ENTITY

The following balances and totals appeared in the books of Gena Traders at 28 February 20.3 (the end of the entity's accounting period):

Balances and totals as at 28 February 20.3

	R
Capital	87 450
Drawings	3 750
Land and buildings	60 000
Vehicles	50 000
Inventory	5 250
Debtors control	3 800
Bank (Dr)	2 850
Creditors control	4 300
Sales	180 000
Cost of sales	108 000
Water and electricity	14 300
Telephone expenses	2 400
Salaries	25 800
Stationery	1 600
Rental income	6 000

### REQUIRED

- (1) Open the ledger accounts with the given balances and totals.
- (2) Show the closing transfers in the general journal.
- (3) Post the closing transfers to the ledger accounts.
- (4) Prepare a post-closing trial balance.

**SOLUTION: EXAMPLE 10.1**

**GENA TRADERS**

**GENERAL JOURNAL – FEBRUARY 20.3**

*GJ1*

Day	Details	Fol	Debit R	Credit R
28	Trading account	N8	108 000,00	
	Cost of sales	N2		108 000,00
	Closing transfer			
	Sales	N1	180 000,00	
	Trading account	N8		180 000,00
	Closing transfer			
	Trading account	N8	72 000,00	
	Profit or loss account	N9		72 000,00
	Transfer of gross profit			
	Profit or loss account	N9	44 100,00	
	Water and electricity	N3		14 300,00
	Salaries	N4		25 800,00
	Stationery	N5		1 600,00
	Telephone expenses	N6		2 400,00
	Closing transfer of expense account			
	Rental income	N7	6 000,00	
	Profit or loss account	N9		6 000,00
	Closing transfer of income account			
	Profit or loss account	N9	33 900,00	
	Capital	B1		33 900,00
Transfer of net profit (profit for the year) to capital account				
Capital	B1	3 750,00		
Drawings	B2		3 750,00	
Transfer of drawings to capital account				

**GENA TRADERS**

**GENERAL LEDGER**

**FINANCIAL POSITION SECTION**

Dr	Capital				B1	Cr			
20.3				20.3					
Feb	28	Drawings	GJ1	3 750 00	Feb	28	Balance	b/d	87 450 00
		Balance	c/d	117 600 00			Profit or loss account	GJ1	33 900 00
				121 350 00					121 350 00
					Mar	1	Balance	b/d	117 600 00

Dr		Drawings				B2		Cr	
20.3					20.3				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	3 750 00	Feb	28	Capital	GJ1	3 750 00

Dr		Land and buildings				B3		Cr	
20.3									
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	60 000 00					

Dr		Vehicles				B4		Cr	
20.3									
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	50 000 00					

Dr		Inventory				B5		Cr	
20.3									
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	5 250 00					

Dr		Debtors control				B6		Cr	
20.3									
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	3 800 00					

Dr		Bank				B7		Cr	
20.3									
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	2 850 00					

Dr		Creditors control				B8		Cr	
					20.3				
					Feb	28	Balance	b/d	4 300 00

**NOMINAL ACCOUNTS SECTION**

Dr		Sales				N1		Cr	
20.3					20.3				
Feb	28	Trading account	GJ1	180 000 00	Feb	28	Balance	b/d	180 000 00

Dr		Cost of sales				N2		Cr	
20.3					20.3				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	108 000 00	Feb	28	Trading account	GJ1	108 000 00

Dr		Water and electricity				N3		Cr	
20.3					20.3				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	14 300 00	Feb	28	Profit or loss account	GJ1	14 300 00

Dr		Salaries				N4		Cr	
20.3					20.3				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	25 800 00	Feb	28	Profit or loss account	GJ1	25 800 00

Dr		Stationery				N5		Cr	
20.3					20.3				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	1 600 00	Feb	28	Profit or loss account	GJ1	1 600 00

Dr		Telephone expenses				N6		Cr	
20.3					20.3				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	2 400 00	Feb	28	Profit or loss account	GJ1	2 400 00

Dr		Rental income				N7		Cr	
20.3					20.3				
Feb	28	Profit or loss account	GJ1	6 000 00	Feb	28	Balance	b/d	6 000 00

Dr		Trading account				N8		Cr	
20.3					20.3				
Feb	28	Cost of sales	GJ1	108 000 00	Feb	28	Sales	GJ1	180 000 00
		Profit or loss account	GJ1	72 000 00					
				180 000 00					180 000 00

Dr		Profit or loss account				N9		Cr	
20.3					20.3				
Feb	28	Water and electricity	GJ1	14 300 00	Feb	28	Trading account	GJ1	72 000 00
		Salaries	GJ1	25 800 00			Rental income	GJ1	6 000 00
		Stationery	GJ1	1 600 00					
		Telephone expenses	GJ1	2 400 00					
		Capital (profit for the year)	GJ1	33 900 00					
				78 000 00					78 000 00

**GENA TRADERS****POST-CLOSING TRIAL BALANCE AS AT 28 FEBRUARY 20.3**

	<b>Fol</b>	<b>Debit</b>	<b>Credit</b>
		<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>
<b>Financial position section</b>			
Capital	B1		117 600,00
Land and buildings	B3	60 000,00	
Vehicles	B4	50 000,00	
Inventory	B5	5 250,00	
Debtors control	B6	3 800,00	
Bank	B7	2 850,00	
Creditors control	B8		4 300,00
		121 900,00	121 900,00

<b>COMPREHENSIVE EXAMPLE 10.2: FINAL ACCOUNTS OF A SERVICE ENTITY</b>
---

The following information was taken from the accounting records of Gena Services at the end of the entity's accounting period (28 February 20.3).

Balances and totals as at 28 February 20.3

	<b>R</b>
Capital	87 450
Drawings	3 750
Land and buildings	60 000
Vehicles	50 000
Debtors control	9 050
Bank (Dr)	2 850
Creditors control	4 300
Current income	78 000
Water and electricity	14 300
Telephone expenses	2 400
Salaries	25 800
Stationery	1 600

<b>REQUIRED</b>
-----------------

- (1) Open the ledger accounts with the given balances.
- (2) Show the closing transfers in the general journal.
- (3) Post the closing transfers to the ledger accounts.



**SOLUTION: EXAMPLE 10.2**

**GENA SERVICES****GENERAL JOURNAL – FEBRUARY 20.3***GJ1*

Day	Details	Fol	Debit	Credit
			<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>
28	Profit or loss account	N6	44 100,00	
	Water and electricity	N2		14 300,00
	Salaries	N3		25 800,00
	Stationery	N4		1 600,00
	Telephone expenses	N5		2 400,00
	Closing transfer of expense accounts			
	Current income	N1	78 000,00	
	Profit or loss account	N6		78 000,00
	Closing transfer of income account			
	Profit or loss account	N6	33 900,00	
	Capital	B1		33 900,00
	Transfer of net profit (profit for the year) to capital account			
	Capital	B1	3 750,00	
	Drawings	B2		3 750,00
	Transfer of drawings to capital account			

**NOTE:**

The trading account falls away in the case of a service entity because there are no sales or cost of sales which form the basis for the calculation of gross profit.

**GENA SERVICES****GENERAL JOURNAL****FINANCIAL POSITION SECTION**

Dr		Capital			B1		Cr		
20.3				20.3					
Feb	28	Drawings	GJ1	3 750 00	Feb	28	Balance	b/d	87 450 00
		Balance	c/d	117 600 00			Profit or loss account	GJ1	33 900 00
				121 350 00					121 350 00
					Mar	1	Balance	b/d	117 600 00

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Drawings</b>				<b>B2</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.3					20.3				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	3 750 00	Feb	28	Capital	GJ1	3 750 00

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Land and buildings</b>				<b>B3</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.3									
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	60 000 00					

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Vehicles</b>				<b>B4</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.3									
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	50 000 00					

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Debtors control</b>				<b>B6</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.3									
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	9 050 00					

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Bank</b>				<b>B7</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.3									
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	2 850 00					

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Creditors control</b>				<b>B8</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
					20.3				
					Feb	28	Balance	b/d	4 300 00

**NOMINAL ACCOUNTS SECTION**

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Current income</b>				<b>N1</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.3					20.3				
Feb	28	Profit or loss account	GJ1	78 000 00	Feb	28	Balance	b/d	78 000 00

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Water and electricity</b>				<b>N2</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.3					20.3				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	14 300 00	Feb	28	Profit or loss account	GJ1	14 300 00

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Salaries</b>				<b>N3</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.3					20.3				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	25 800 00	Feb	28	Profit or loss account	GJ1	25 800 00

Dr		Stationery				N4		Cr	
20.3					20.3				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	1 600 00	Feb	28	Profit or loss account	GJ1	1 600 00

Dr		Telephone expenses				N5		Cr	
20.3					20.3				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	2 400 00	Feb	8	Profit or loss account	GJ1	2 400 00

Dr		Profit or loss account				N6		Cr	
20.3					20.3				
Feb	28	Water and electricity	GJ1	14 300 00	Feb	28	Current income	GJ1	78 000 00
		Salaries	GJ1	25 800 00					
		Stationery	GJ1	1 600 00					
		Telephone expenses	GJ1	2 400 00					
		Capital (profit for the year)	GJ1	33 900 00					
				78 000 00					78 000 00

**COMPREHENSIVE EXAMPLE 10.3: FINAL ACCOUNTS OF A RETAIL BUSINESS USING A PERIODIC INVENTORY SYSTEM**

The following balances and totals appeared in the books of Gena Traders at 28 February 20.3 (the end of the entity's accounting period):

Balances and totals at 28 February 20.3

	R
Capital	87 450
Drawings	3 750
Land and buildings	60 000
Vehicles	50 000
Inventory (opening)	7 200
Debtors control	3 800
Bank (Dr)	2 850
Creditors control	4 300
Sales	183 450
Sales returns	1 500
Purchases	109 000
Purchases returns	1 000
Water and electricity	14 300
Telephone expenses	2 400
Salaries	25 800
Stationery	1 600
Rental income	6 000

A physical inventory count showed the value of closing inventory to be R5 250 at 28 February 20.3.

**REQUIRED**

- (1) Open the ledger accounts with the given balances and totals.
- (2) Show the closing transfers in the general journal.
- (3) Post the closing transfers to the ledger accounts.
- (4) Prepare a post-closing trial balance.

**SOLUTION: EXAMPLE 10.3****GENA TRADERS****GENERAL JOURNAL – FEBRUARY 20.3***GJ1*

Day	Details	Fol	Debit R	Credit R	
28	Trading account	N10	7 200,00		
	Inventory	B5		7 200,00	
	Transfer of opening inventory				
	Inventory	B5	5 250,00		
	Trading account	N10		5 250,00	
	Transfer of closing inventory				
	Sales	N1	1 500,00		
	Sales returns	N2		1 500,00	
	Closing transfer				
	Purchases returns	N4	1 000,00		
	Purchases	N3		1 000,00	
	Closing transfer				
	Trading account	N10	108 000,00		
	Purchases	N3		108 000,00	
	Closing transfer				
	Sales	N1	181 950,00		
Trading account	N10		181 950,00		
Closing transfer					
Trading account	N10	72 000,00			
Profit or loss account	N11		72 000,00		
Transfer of gross profit					
Profit or loss account	N11	44 100,00			
Water and electricity	N5		14 300,00		
Salaries	N6		25 800,00		
Stationery	N7		1 600,00		
Telephone expenses	N8		2 400,00		
Closing transfer of expense accounts					
Rental income	N9	6 000,00			
Profit or loss account	N11		6 000,00		
Closing transfer of income account					

Day	Details	Fol	Debit	Credit
	Profit or loss account	N11	<b>R</b> 33 900,00	<b>R</b>
	Capital	B1		33 900,00
	Transfer of net profit (profit for the year) to capital account			
	Capital	B1	3 750,00	
	Drawings	B2		3 750,00
	Transfer of drawings to capital account			

**GENA TRADERS**  
**GENERAL LEDGER**  
**FINANCIAL POSITION SECTION**

Dr		Capital				B1		Cr	
20.3					20.3				
Feb	28	Drawings	GJ1	3 750 00	Feb	28	Balance	b/d	87 450 00
		Balance	c/d	117 600 00			Profit or loss account	GJ1	33 900 00
				121 350 00					121 350 00
					Mar	1	Balance	b/d	117 600 00

Dr		Drawings				B2		Cr	
20.3					20.3				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	3 750 00	Feb	28	Capital	GJ1	3 750 00

Dr		Land and buildings				B3		Cr	
20.3									
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	60 000 00					

Dr		Vehicles				B4		Cr	
20.3									
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	50 000 00					

Dr		Inventory				B1		Cr	
20.3					20.3				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	7 200 00	Feb	28	Trading account	GJ1	7 200 00
		Trading account	GJ1	5 250 00					

Dr		Debtors control				B6		Cr	
20.3									
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	3 800 00					

Dr		Bank						B7		Cr	
20.3											
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	2 850	00						

Dr		Creditors control						B8		Cr	
						20.3					
						Feb	28	Balance	b/d	4 300	
										00	

**NOMINAL ACCOUNTS SECTION**

Dr		Sales						N1		Cr	
20.3						20.3					
Feb	28	Sales returns	GJ1	1 500	00	Feb	28	Balance	b/d	183 450	
		Trading account	GJ1	181 950	00					00	
				183 450	00					183 450	
										00	

Dr		Sales returns						N2		Cr	
20.3						20.3					
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	1 500	00	Feb	28	Sales	GJ1	1 500	
										00	

Dr		Purchases						N3		Cr	
20.3						20.3					
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	109 000	00	Feb	28	Purchases returns	GJ1	1 000	
								Trading account	GJ1	108 000	
				109 000	00					109 000	
										00	

Dr		Purchases returns						N4		Cr	
20.3						20.3					
Feb	28	Purchases	GJ1	1 000	00	Feb	28	Balance	b/d	1 000	
										00	

Dr		Water and electricity						N5		Cr	
20.3						20.3					
Feb	28	Balance	GJ1	14 300	00	Feb	28	Profit or loss account	GJ1	14 300	
										00	

Dr		Salaries						N6		Cr	
20.3						20.3					
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	25 800	00	Feb	28	Profit or loss account	GJ1	25 800	
										00	

Dr		Stationery				N7		Cr	
20.3					20.3				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	1 600 00	Feb	28	Profit or loss account	GJ1	1 600 00

Dr		Telephone expenses				N8		Cr	
20.3					20.3				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	2 400 00	Feb	28	Profit or loss account	GJ1	2 400 00

Dr		Rental income				N9		Cr	
20.3					20.3				
Feb	28	Profit or loss account	GJ1	6 000 00	Feb	28	Balance	b/d	6 000 00

Dr		Trading account				N10		Cr	
20.3					20.3				
Feb	28	Inventory	GJ1	7 200 00	Feb	28	Inventory	GJ1	5 250 00
		Purchases	GJ1	108 000 00			Sales	GJ1	181 950 00
		Profit or loss account	GJ1	72 000 00					
				187 200 00					187 200 00

Dr		Profit or loss account				N11		Cr	
20.3					20.3				
Feb	28	Water and electricity	GJ1	14 300 00	Feb		Trading account	GJ1	72 000 00
		Salaries	GJ1	25 800 00			Rental income	GJ1	6 000 00
		Stationery	GJ1	1 600 00					
		Telephone expenses	GJ1	2 400 00					
		Capital (profit for the year)	GJ1	33 900 00					
				78 000 00					78 000 00

**NOTE:**

The post-closing trial balance will be the same as in comprehensive example 10.1.

### EXERCISE 10.1

The following totals were taken from the books of J Simpson, an attorney, at 28 February 20.7 (the end of the financial year).

	<b>R</b>
Fee income received in cash	160 000
Fee income from services rendered on credit	80 000
Totals of operating expenses during the year	
Salaries	90 000
Stationery	8 500
Rental expenses	40 000
Repairs to equipment	3 000
Telephone expenses	6 000
Water and electricity	5 000

### REQUIRED

- (1) Show the closing transfers in the general journal.
- (2) Open the abovementioned ledger accounts in the nominal accounts section of the general ledger and post the closing transfers to the opened ledger accounts. Post also to the profit or loss account. Close off all accounts.

### SOLUTION: EXERCISE 10.1

#### J SIMPSON ATTORNEY

#### GENERAL JOURNAL – FEBRUARY 20.7

*GJ1*

Day	Details	Fol	Debit	Credit
			<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>
28	Profit or loss account	N9	152 500,00	
	Water and electricity	N2		5 000,00
	Rental expenses	N3		40 000,00
	Repairs to equipment	N4		3 000,00
	Salaries	N5		90 000,00
	Stationery	N6		8 500,00
	Telephone expenses	N7		6 000,00
	Closing transfer of expense accounts			
	Current income	N1	240 000,00	
	Profit or loss account	N8		240 000,00
	Closing transfer of income account			



Day	Details	Fol	Debit	Credit
	Profit or loss account	N8	87 500,00	
	Capital	B1		87 500,00
	Transfer of net profit (profit for the year) to capital account			

**J SIMPSON ATTORNEY  
GENERAL LEDGER  
NOMINAL ACCOUNTS SECTION**

Dr		Current income (Fees received)				N1		Cr	
20.7					20.7				
Feb	28	Profit or loss account	GJ1	240 000,00	Feb	28	Balance	b/d	240 000,00

Dr		Water and electricity				N2		Cr	
20.7					20.7				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	5 000,00	Feb	28	Profit or loss account	GJ1	5 000,00

Dr		Rental expenses				N3		Cr	
20.7					20.7				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	40 000,00	Feb	28	Profit or loss account	GJ1	40 000,00

Dr		Repairs to equipment				N4		Cr	
20.7					20.7				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	3 000,00	Feb	28	Profit or loss account	GJ1	3 000,00

Dr		Salaries				N5		Cr	
20.7					20.7				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	90 000,00	Feb	28	Profit or loss account	GJ1	90 000,00

Dr		Stationery				N6		Cr	
20.7					20.7				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	8 500,00	Feb	28	Profit or loss account	GJ1	8 500,00

Dr		Telephone expenses				N7		Cr	
20.7					20.7				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	6 000,00	Feb	28	Profit or loss account	GJ1	6 000,00

Dr		Profit or loss account				N8		Cr	
20.7					20.7				
Feb	28	Water and electricity	GJ1	5 000,00	Feb	28	Current income	GJ1	240 000,00
		Rental expenses	GJ1	40 000,00					
		Repairs to equipment	GJ1	3 000,00					
		Salaries	GJ1	90 000,00					
		Stationery	GJ1	8 500,00					
		Telephone expenses	GJ1	6 000,00					
		Capital (profit for the year)	GJ1	87 500,00					
				240 000,00					240 000,00

## EXERCISE 10.2

The following trial balance was taken from the accounting records of City Outfitters at 30 November 20.5, the end of the entity's accounting period.

### CITY OUTFITTERS

#### TRIAL BALANCE AS AT 30 NOVEMBER 20.5

	Fol	Debits	Credits
		R	R
<b>Financial position section</b>			
Capital	B1		99 600,00
Drawings	B2	1 800,00	
Vehicles	B3	150 000,00	
Equipment	B4	30 000,00	
Inventory	B5	11 250,00	
Debtors control	B6	21 000,00	
Bank	B7	6 750,00	
Creditors control	B8		32 400,00
<b>Nominal accounts section</b>			
Sales	N1		240 000,00
Sales returns	N2	6 000,00	
Cost of sales	N3	120 000,00	
Advertising	N4	2 700,00	
Credit losses	N5	450,00	
Bank charges	N6	900,00	
Interest expenses	N7	1 050,00	
Packing material	N8	2 100,00	
Petrol and oil	N9	7 200,00	
Stationery	N10	600,00	
Telephone expenses	N11	10 200,00	
		372 000,00	372 000,00

**REQUIRED**

Take the information provided into consideration and do the following:

- (1) Open the ledger accounts with the given balances.
- (2) Show all the journal entries for the closing entries.
- (3) Post the journal to the applicable ledger accounts. Balance or close off these accounts where necessary.
- (4) Prepare the post-closing trial balance.

**SOLUTION: EXERCISE 10.2****CITY OUTFITTERS****GENERAL JOURNAL – NOVEMBER 20.5***GJ1*

Day	Details	Fol	Debit	Credit
			<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>
30	Trading account	N12	120 000,00	
	Cost of sales	N3		120 000,00
	Closing transfer			
	Sales	N1	6 000,00	
	Sales returns	N2		6 000,00
	Closing transfer			
	Sales	N1	234 000,00	
	Trading account	N12		234 000,00
	Closing transfer			
	Trading account	N12	114 000,00	
	Profit or loss account	N13		114 000,00
	Transfer of gross profit			
	Profit or loss account	N13	25 200,00	
	Advertising	N4		2 700,00
	Credit losses	N5		450,00
	Bank charges	N6		900,00
	Interest expenses	N7		1 050,00
	Packing materials	N8		2 100,00
	Petrol and oil	N9		7 200,00
	Stationery	N10		600,00
	Telephone expenses	N11		10 200,00
	Closing transfer of expense accounts			
	Profit or loss account	N13	88 800,00	
	Capital	B1		88 800,00
	Transfer of net profit (profit for the year) to capital account			

Day	Details	Fol	Debit	Credit
	Capital	B1	1 800,00	
	Drawings	B2		1 800,00
	Transfer of drawings to capital account			

**CITY OUTFITTERS  
GENERAL LEDGER  
FINANCIAL POSITION SECTION**

Dr		Capital				B1		Cr	
20.5					20.5				
Nov	30	Drawings	JG1	1 800 00	Nov	30	Balance	b/d	99 600 00
		Balance	c/d	186 600 00			Profit or loss account	GJ1	88 800 00
				188 400 00					188 400 00
					Dec	1	Balance	b/d	186 600 00

Dr		Drawings				B2		Cr	
20.5					20.5				
Nov	30	Balance	b/d	1 800 00	Nov	30	Capital	GJ1	1 800 00

Dr		Vehicles				B3		Cr	
20.5									
Nov	30	Balance	b/d	150 000 00					

Dr		Equipment				B4		Cr	
20.5									
Nov	30	Balance	b/d	30 000 00					

Dr		Inventory				B5		Cr	
20.5									
Nov	30	Balance	b/d	11 250 00					

Dr		Debtors control						B6		Cr	
20.5											
Nov	30	Balance	b/d	21 000	00						

Dr		Bank						B7		Cr	
20.5											
Nov	30	Balance	b/d	6 750	00						

Dr		Creditors control						B8		Cr	
						20.5					
						Nov	30	Balance	b/d	32 400	
										00	

**NOMINAL ACCOUNTS SECTION**

Dr		Sales						N1		Cr	
20.5						20.5					
Nov	30	Sales returns	GJ1	6 000	00	Nov	30	Balance	b/d	240 000	
		Trading account	GJ1	234 000	00					00	
				240 000	00					240 000	
										00	

Dr		Sales returns						N2		Cr	
20.5						20.5					
Nov	30	Balance	b/d	6 000	00	Nov	30	Trading account	GJ1	6 000	
										00	

Dr		Cost of sales						N3		Cr	
20.5						20.5					
Nov	30	Balance	b/d	120 000	00	Nov	30	Trading account	GJ1	120 000	
										00	

Dr		Advertising						N4		Cr	
20.5						20.5					
Nov	30	Balance	b/d	2 700	00	Nov	30	Profit or loss account	GJ1	2 700	
										00	

Dr		Credit losses						N5		Cr	
20.5						20.5					
Nov	30	Balance	b/d	450	00	Nov	30	Profit or loss account	GJ1	450	
										00	

Dr		Bank charges				N6		Cr	
20.5					20.5				
Nov	30	Balance	b/d	900 00	Nov	30	Profit or loss account	GJ1	900 00

Dr		Interest expenses				N7		Cr	
20.5					20.5				
Nov	30	Balance	b/d	1 050 00	Nov	30	Profit or loss account	GJ1	1 050 00

Dr		Packing material				N8		Cr	
20.5					20.5				
Nov	30	Balance	b/d	2 100 00	Nov	30	Profit or loss account	GJ1	2 100 00

Dr		Petrol and oil				N9		Cr	
20.5					20.5				
Nov	30	Balance	b/d	7 200 00	Nov	30	Profit or loss account	GJ1	7 200 00

Dr		Stationery				N10		Cr	
20.5					20.5				
Nov	30	Balance	b/d	600 00	Nov	30	Profit or loss account	GJ1	600 00

Dr		Telephone expenses				N11		Cr	
20.5					20.5				
Nov	30	Balance	b/d	10 200 00	Nov	30	Profit or loss account	GJ1	10 200 00

Dr		Trading account				N12		Cr	
20.5					20.5				
Nov	30	Cost of sales	GJ1	120 000 00	Nov	30	Sales	GJ1	234 000 00
		Profit or loss account	GJ1	114 000 00					
				234 000 00					234 000 00

Dr		Profit or loss account				N13		Cr	
20.5					20.5				
Nov	30	Advertising	GJ1	2 700 00	Nov	30	Trading account	GJ1	114 000 00
		Credit losses	GJ1	450 00					
		Bank charges	GJ1	900 00					
		Interest expenses	GJ1	1 050 00					
		Packing material	GJ1	2 100 00					
		Petrol and oil	GJ1	7 200 00					
		Stationery	GJ1	600 00					
		Telephone expenses	GJ1	10 200 00					
		Capital (profit for the year)	GJ1	88 800 00					
				114 000 00					114 000 00

**CITY OUTFITTERS**

**POST-CLOSING TRIAL BALANCE AS AT 28 FEBRUARY 20.5**

	Fol	Debit	Credit
		R	R
<b>Financial position section</b>			
Capital	B1		186 600,00
Vehicles	B3	150 000,00	
Equipment	B4	30 000,00	
Inventory	B5	11 250,00	
Debtors control	B6	21 000,00	
Bank	B7	6 750,00	
Creditors control	B10		32 400,00
		219 000,00	219 000,00

<b>EXERCISE 10.3</b>
----------------------

The following information was taken from the accounting records of J Speedo Retailers at 28 February 20.3, the end of the entity's accounting period.

	<b>R</b>
Drawings	8 000
Sales	210 000
Sales returns	5 000
Purchases	40 500
Purchases returns	3 200
Inventory (opening)	4 800
Inventory (closing)	6 100
Water and electricity	4 800
Rental expenses	12 000
Stationery	1 200
Telephone expenses	2 900
Wages	6 600

<b>REQUIRED</b>
-----------------

- (1) Prepare the journal entries taking into account opening and closing inventories.
- (2) Prepare the closing journal entries.



<b>SOLUTION: EXERCISE 10.3</b>
--------------------------------

**J SPEEDO RETAILERS****GENERAL JOURNAL – FEBRUARY 20.3***GJ13*

Day	Details	Fol	Debit	Credit
			<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>
28	Trading account		4 800,00	
	Inventory			4 800,00
	Transfer opening inventory			
	Inventory		6 100,00	
	Trading account			6 100,00
	Taking closing inventory into account			
	Sales		5 000,00	
	Sales returns			5 000,00
	Closing transfer			
	Purchases returns		3 200,00	
	Purchases			3 200,00
	Closing transfer			
	Trading account		37 300,00	
	Purchases			37 300,00
	Closing transfer			
	Sales (R210 000 – R5 000)		205 000,00	
	Trading account			205 000,00
	Closing transfer			
	Trading account		169 000,00	
	Profit or loss account			169 000,00
	Transfer of gross profit			
	Profit or loss account		27 500,00	
	Water and electricity			4 800,00
	Rental expenses			12 000,00
	Stationery			1 200,00
	Telephone expenses			2 900,00
	Wages			6 600,00
	Closing transfer of expense accounts			
	Profit or loss account		141 500,00	
	Capital			141 500,00
	Transfer of net profit (profit for the year) to capital account			
	Capital		8 000,00	
	Drawings			8 000,00
	Transfer of drawings to capital account			

## EXERCISE 10.4

The following information was taken from the accounting records of Digi Warehouse at 28 February 20.5, the end of the financial year.

### DIGI WAREHOUSE

#### TRIAL BALANCE AS AT 28 FEBRUARY 20.5

	Debit	Credit
	R	R
Capital		63 600
Drawings	3 000	
Vehicles	60 000	
Equipment	40 000	
Debtors control	12 000	
Inventory	8 000	
Creditors control		16 000
Sales		250 000
Sales returns	5 000	
Cost of sales	120 000	
Municipal services	17 400	
Telephone expenses	10 200	
Repairs: Vehicles	4 100	
Salaries	48 000	
Postage	1 000	
Credit losses	500	
Stationery	700	
Credit losses recovered		300
	329 900	329 900

### REQUIRED

- (1) Write off an additional amount of R400 as credit losses.
- (2) Journalise the year-end adjustment and the closing transfers.
- (3) Open the accounts in the general ledger and post the journals to the ledger accounts. Balance or close off the accounts where necessary.
- (4) Prepare the post-closing trial balance.

<b>SOLUTION: EXERCISE 10.4</b>
--------------------------------

**DIGI WAREHOUSE****GENERAL JOURNAL – FEBRUARY 20.5***GJ1*

Day	Details	Fol	Debit R	Credit R	
28	Credit losses	N9	400,00		
	Debtors control	B5		400,00	
	Further amount written off. Voucher 142				
	Trading account	N12	120 000,00		
	Cost of sales	N3		120 000,00	
	Closing transfer				
	Sales	N1	5 000,00		
	Sales returns	N2		5 000,00	
	Closing transfer				
	Sales	N1	245 000,00		
	Trading account	N12		245 000,00	
	Closing transfer				
	Trading account	N12	125 000,00		
	Profit or loss account	N13		125 000,00	
	Transfer to gross profit				
	Profit or loss account	N13	82 300,00		
	Municipal services	N4		17 400,00	
	Telephone expenses	N5		10 200,00	
	Repairs: Vehicles	N6		4 100,00	
	Salaries	N7		48 000,00	
Postage	N8		1 000,00		
Credit losses (500+400)	N9		900,00		
Stationery	N10		700,00		
Closing transfer of expense accounts					
Credit losses recovered	N11	300,00			
Profit or loss account	N13		300,00		
Closing transfer of income account					
Profit or loss account	N13	43 000,00			
Capital	B1		43 000,00		
Transfer of net profit (profit for the year)					
Capital	B1	3 000,00			
Drawings	B2		3 000,00		
Transfer of drawings					

**DIGI WAREHOUSE  
GENERAL LEDGER  
FINANCIAL POSITION SECTION**

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Capital</b>				<b>B1</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.5					20.4				
Feb	28	Drawings	GJ1	3 000 00	Mar	1	Balance	b/d	63 600 00
		Balance	c/d	103 600 00					
					20.5				
					Feb	28	Profit or loss account	GJ1	43 000 00
				106 600 00					106 600 00
					Mar	1	Balance	c/d	103 600 00

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Drawings</b>				<b>B2</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.5					20.5				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	3 000 00	Feb	28	Capital	GJ1	3 000 00

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Vehicles</b>				<b>B3</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.5									
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	60 000 00					

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Equipment</b>				<b>B4</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.5									
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	40 000 00					

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Debtors control</b>				<b>B5</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.5					20.5				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	12 000 00	Feb	28	Credit losses	GJ1	400 00
							Balance	c/d	11 600 00
				12 000 00					12 000 00
Mar	1	Balance	b/d	11 600 00					

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Inventory</b>				<b>B6</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.5									
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	8 000 00					

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Creditors control</b>				<b>B7</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
					20.5				
					Feb	28	Balance	b/d	16 000 00

**NOMINAL ACCOUNTS SECTION**

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Sales</b>				<b>N1</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.5					20.5				
Feb	28	Sales returns	GJ1	5 000 00	Feb	28	Balance	b/d	250 000 00
		Trading account	GJ1	245 000 00					
				250 000 00					250 000 00

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Sales returns</b>				<b>N2</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.5					20.5				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	5 000 00	Feb	28	Sales	GJ1	5 000 00

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Cost of sales</b>				<b>N3</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.5					20.5				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	120 000 00	Feb	28	Trading account	GJ1	120 000 00

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Municipal services</b>				<b>N4</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.5					20.5				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	17 400 00	Feb	28	Profit or loss account	GJ1	17 400 00

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Telephone expenses</b>				<b>N5</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.5					20.5				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	10 200 00	Feb	28	Profit or loss account	GJ1	10 200 00

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Repairs: Vehicles</b>				<b>N6</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.5					20.5				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	4 100 00	Feb	28	Profit or loss account	GJ1	4 100 00

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Salaries</b>				<b>N7</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.5					20.5				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	48 000 00	Feb	28	Profit or loss account	GJ1	48 000 00

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Postage</b>				<b>N8</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.5					20.5				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	1 000 00	Feb	28	Profit or loss account	GJ1	1 000 00

Dr		Credit losses				N9		Cr	
20.5					20.5				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	500 00	Feb	28	Profit or loss account	GJ1	900 00
		Debtors control		400 00					
				900 00					900 00

Dr		Stationery				N10		Cr	
20.5					20.5				
Feb	28	Balance	b/d	700 00	Feb	28	Profit or loss account	GJ1	700 00


Dr		Credit losses recovered				N11		Cr	
20.5					20.5				
Feb	28	Profit or loss account	GJ1	300 00	Feb	28	Balance	b/d	300 00

Dr		Trading account				N12		Cr	
20.5					20.5				
Feb	28	Cost of sales	GJ1	120 000 00	Feb	28	Sales	GJ1	245 000 00
		Profit or loss account	GJ1	125 000 00					
				245 000 00					245 000 00

Dr		Profit or loss account				N13		Cr	
20.5					20.5				
Feb	28	Municipal services	GJ1	17 400 00	Feb	28	Trading account	GJ1	125 000 00
		Telephone expenses	GJ1	10 200 00			Credit losses		
		Repairs: Vehicles	GJ1	4 100 00			recovered	GJ1	300 00
		Salaries	GJ1	48 000 00					
		Postage	GJ1	1 000 00					
		Credit losses	GJ1	900 00					
		Stationery	GJ1	700 00					
		Capital (profit for the year)	GJ1	43 000 00					
				125 300 00					125 300 00

**DIGI WAREHOUSE****POST-CLOSING TRIAL BALANCE AS AT 28 FEBRUARY 20.5**

	<b>Fol</b>	<b>Debit</b>	<b>Credit</b>
		<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>
<b>Financial position section</b>			
Capital			103 600,00
Vehicles		60 000,00	
Equipment		40 000,00	
Debtors control		11 600,00	
Inventory		8 000,00	
Creditors control			16 000,00
		119 600,00	119 600,00

	<h2>SELF-ASSESSMENT</h2>			
	<p>After you have worked through this learning unit, are you able to:</p>			
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• discuss the difference between gross profit and net profit?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• describe how gross profit and net profit (profit for the year) are calculated?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• do the closing entries at the end of a financial year for a retail entity using the perpetual inventory system?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• do the closing entries at the end of a financial year for a retail entity using the periodic inventory system?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• do the closing entries at the end of a financial year for a service entity?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• prepare a trading account?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• prepare a profit or loss account?</li> <li>• prepare a post-closing trial balance?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹

If you have marked all ☺ you may continue to the next learning unit .

If you have marked any ☹ you have to *revise* that specific section.

If you have marked any ☹ you have to **re-study** that specific section.



**FAC1501**

**LEARNING UNIT 11**

**FINANCIAL STATEMENTS  
OF A SOLE TRADER**



**Introductory Financial  
Accounting**

## OVERVIEW

Learning outcomes .....	327
Key concepts .....	327
Assessment criteria .....	327
11.1 Year-end adjustments .....	328
11.1.1 Introduction.....	328
11.1.2 Prepayments and receivables and accruals of income and expenses .....	328
11.1.2.1 Accrued expenses .....	328
11.1.2.2 Prepaid expenses .....	330
11.1.2.3 Accrued income.....	331
11.1.2.4 Income received in advance .....	332
11.1.3 Consumable stores on hand.....	334
11.1.4 Credit losses and allowance for credit losses.....	335
11.1.4.1 Credit losses .....	335
11.1.4.2 Allowance for credit losses .....	337
11.1.5 Depreciation .....	342
11.1.5.1 Methods of calculating depreciation .....	342
11.1.5.2 Accounting entries for depreciation .....	344
11.1.6 Summary of flow of accounting procedures when year-end adjustments need to be made .....	346
11.2 Financial statements .....	355
11.2.1 Introduction.....	355
11.2.2 Financial performance as measured by the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income .....	356
11.2.3 Financial position as measured by the statement of financial position .....	358
11.2.4 Statement of changes in equity .....	360
11.2.5 Year-end adjustments.....	366
Self-assesment.....	378

## LEARNING OUTCOMES

After studying this learning unit you should be able to:

- calculate and do adjustments at year-end with regard to accrued expenses, prepaid expenses, accrued income and income received in advance
- calculate and do adjustments with regard to consumable stores
- calculate and do adjustments with regard to depreciation of non-current assets
- calculate and do adjustments with regard to credit losses and allowance for credit losses
- prepare a profit or loss account after taking all possible adjustments into consideration
- prepare a statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income
- prepare a statement of financial position
- prepare a statement of changes in equity

## KEY CONCEPTS

- Adjustments
- Accrued expenses
- Pre-paid expenses
- Accrued income
- Income received in advance
- Consumable stores
- Depreciation
- Credit losses
- Allowance for credit losses
- Statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income
- Statement of financial position
- Statement of changes in equity



## ASSESSMENT CRITERIA

- You can correctly calculate and do adjustments at year-end with regard to accrued expenses, pre-paid expenses, accrued income and income received in advance.
- You can correctly calculate and do adjustments with regard to consumable stores.
- You can correctly calculate and do adjustments with regard to depreciation of non-current assets.
- You can correctly calculate and do adjustments with regard to credit losses and allowance for credit losses.
- You can correctly prepare a statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income for a sole trader.
- You can correctly prepare a statement of financial position and notes for a sole trader.
- You can correctly prepare a statement of changes in equity for a sole trader.

## 11.1 YEAR-END ADJUSTMENTS

### 11.1.1 Introduction

At the end of every accounting period, the business entity prepares a trading account and a profit or loss account to ascertain the profit or loss made during the accounting period. It is important to realise that the profit or loss account indicates the *performance* of the entity for a particular financial year (see learning unit 10).

### 11.1.2 Prepayments and receivables and accruals of income and expenses

It usually happens that at the end of the year, some expenses incurred by the entity will be outstanding (ie due, but unpaid). The entity may also have paid for some expenses in advance. It will therefore be necessary to adjust such expenses in order to determine the actual expenses incurred for the accounting period under review.

Similarly, the entity may have rendered a specified service during the year for which it had received no payment (income). It may also happen that the entity had been paid in advance for a service it is yet to render. Adjustments will have to be made in such cases in order to establish the correct income the entity earned during the accounting period under review.

#### 11.2.2.1 Accrued expenses

These are expenses which have been incurred by an entity but which have not yet been paid by the end of the accounting period. Examples are salaries owing to staff, rent payable to the landlord and insurance premiums outstanding. Accrued expenses are shown as **current liabilities**.

When adjusting accruals and prepayments, it is necessary to

- identify the specific account to be adjusted
- determine the outstanding amount or the prepaid amount
- record the adjustment (this is normally done in the general journal)

Accrued and prepaid expenses and accrued income and income received in advance are described as current operating items. To simplify their adjustment, “intermediary” or “notional” accounts are used to facilitate the recording process. For example, rent outstanding will be credited to an **accrued expenses** account and current income due will be debited to an **accrued income** account, and so on. (See the following examples.)

#### EXAMPLE 11.1: ACCRUED EXPENSES

The financial year of John Seepe, a panel beater, ends on 31 December each year. Seepe Panel Beaters has a monthly rent expense of R250. The records of the entity showed that rent was paid for eight months during the financial year ended 31 December 20.8.

**REQUIRED**

- (1) Record the necessary adjustment and the closing entry in the general journal of Seepe Panel Beaters.
- (2) Post the journal entry to the general ledger of Seepe Panel Beaters.

**SOLUTION: EXAMPLE 11.1****SEEPE PANEL BEATERS****GENERAL JOURNAL – DECEMBER 20.8***GJ1*

Day	Details	Fol	Debit R	Credit R
31	Rental expenses Accrued expenses Adjustment for rent owing	N10 B30	1 000	1 000
	Profit or loss account Rental expenses Closing transfer	N20 N10	3 000	3 000

**SEEPE PANEL BEATERS****GENERAL LEDGER**

Dr		Rental expenses			N10		Cr
20.8 Dec 31	Bank*	CPJ	2 000	20.8 Dec 31	Profit or loss account	GJ1	3 000
	Accrued expenses	GJ1	1 000				
			3 000				3 000

\* This is the total of all the payments regarding rent made during the financial year and is given in this example for the sake of completeness. In the actual recording of these payments it would have been recorded on a monthly basis on the date the payment was made. The entries would have originally been recorded in the cash payments journal before being posted to the appropriate ledger account. This line of illustration is followed in all subsequent examples regarding adjustments.

Dr		Accrued expenses			B30		Cr
20.8 Dec 31	Balance	c/d	1 000	20.8 Dec 31	Rental expenses	GJ1	1 000
			1 000				1 000
				20.9 Jan 1	Balance	b/d	1 000

Dr		Profit or loss account					N20	Cr
20.8								
Dec	31	Rental expenses	GJ1	3 000				

### 11.1.2.2 Prepaid expenses

The nature of certain expenses may compel an entity to pay for them in advance. Insurance premiums are good examples of such expenses. Prepaid expenses are shown as **current assets**.

#### EXAMPLE 11.2: PREPAID EXPENSES

Traxi Solutions paid R9 000 for insurance on 1 January 20.8. This payment was for insurance cover for 18 months. The financial year of Traxi Solutions ends on 31 December each year.

#### REQUIRED

- Determine the amount that was prepaid for insurance.
- Record the necessary adjustment and the closing entry in the general journal of Traxi Solutions.
- Post the journal entries to the general ledger of Traxi Solutions.

#### SOLUTION: EXAMPLE 11.2

Monthly insurance cover	=	R9 000/18	=	R500
Insurance expense	=	R500 x 12	=	R6 000
Prepaid expense	=	R500 x 6	=	R3 000

### TRAXI SOLUTIONS

#### GENERAL JOURNAL– DECEMBER 20.8

*GJ1*

Day	Details	Fol	Debit	Credit
			R	R
31	Prepaid expenses	B31	3 000	
	Insurance	N11		3 000
	Adjustment for prepaid insurance			
	Profit or loss account	N20	6 000	
	Insurance	N11		6 000
	Closing transfer			

**TRAXI SOLUTIONS  
GENERAL LEDGER**

Dr		Insurance				N11		Cr	
20.8				20.8					
Dec	31	Bank	CPJ	9 000	Dec	31	Prepaid expenses	GJ1	3 000
							Profit or loss account	GJ1	6 000
				9 000					9 000

Dr		Prepaid expenses				B31		Cr	
20.8				20.8					
Dec	31	Insurance	GJ1	3 000	Dec	31	Balance	c/d	3 000
				3 000					3 000
20.9									
Jan	1	Balance	b/d	3 000					

Dr		Profit or loss account				N20		Cr
20.8								
Dec	31	Insurance	GJ1	6 000				

**11.1.2.3 Accrued income**

This is income earned by the entity in respect of services rendered but for which no payment has been received. Accrued income is shown as **current assets**.

**EXAMPLE 11.3: ACCRUED INCOME**

The commission earned by Bero Stores for selling newspapers and magazines was R12 500 for the year ended 31 December 20.8. Bero Stores received R9 850 during the year.

**REQUIRED**

- (1) Record the necessary adjustment and the closing entry in the general journal of Bero Stores.
- (2) Post the journal entries to the general ledger of Bero Stores.

**SOLUTION: EXAMPLE 11.3****BERO STORES****GENERAL JOURNAL – DECEMBER 20.8***GJ1*

Day	Details	Fol	Debit	Credit
			<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>
31	Accrued income Commission income Adjustment for commission earned but not yet received (R12 500 – R9 850)	B2 N14	2 650	2 650
	Commission income Profit or loss account Closing transfer	N14 N20	12 500	12 500

**BERO STORES****GENERAL LEDGER**

Dr		Commission income				N14		Cr
20.8				20.8				
Dec	31	Profit or loss account	GJ1	12 500	Dec	31	Bank Accrued income	9 850 2 650
				12 500				12 500

Dr		Accrued income				B2		Cr
20.8				20.8				
Dec	31	Commission income	GJ1	2 650	Dec	31	Balance	2 650
				2 650				2 650
20.9								
Jan	1	Balance	b/d	2 650				

Dr		Profit or loss account				N20		Cr
				20.8				
				Dec	31	Commission income	GJ1	3 360

**11.1.2.4 Income received in advance**

Income received in advance is not yet earned so it must be deducted from total income to arrive at the correct income earned during the financial year. Income received in advance is shown as **current liabilities**.



**EXAMPLE 11.4: INCOME RECEIVED IN ADVANCE**

ABC Cash Store sub-lets part of its premises for a monthly rental of R280. During the financial year ended 31 December 20.8 the tenant made a total payment of R3 640.

**REQUIRED**

- (1) Determine the amount that was received in advance for rental.
- (2) Record the necessary adjustment and the closing entry in the general journal of ABC Cash Store.
- (3) Post the journal entries to the general ledger of ABC Cash Store.

**SOLUTION: EXAMPLE 11.4**

Rent received for the year	=	R280 x 12	=	R3 360
Rent received in advance	=	(R3 640 – R3 360)	=	R280

**ABC CASH STORE****GENERAL JOURNAL – DECEMBER 20.8***GJ1*

Day	Details	Fol	Debit	Credit
			<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>
31	Rental income	N15	280	
	Income received in advance	B36		280
	Adjustment for income received in advance			
	Rental income	N15	3 360	
	Profit or loss account	N20		3 360
	Closing transfer			

**ABC CASH STORE****GENERAL LEDGER**

Dr	Rental income				N15	Cr
20.8				20.8		
Dec 31	Income received in advance			Dec 31	Bank	3 640
		GJ1	280			
	Profit or loss account	GJ1	3 360			
			3 640			3 640

Dr		Income received in advance				B36		Cr	
20.8				20.8					
Dec	31	Balance	c/d	280	Dec	31	Rental income	GJ1	280
				280					280
					20.9				
					Jan	1	Balance	b/d	280

Dr		Profit or loss account				N20		Cr	
				20.8					
				Dec	31	Rental income	GJ1		3 360

### 11.1.3 Consumable stores on hand

You might have wondered why items such as stationery are classified as expenses. Surely stationery has value? The reason it is regarded as an expense and not an asset, is because it is *used up* (consumed) within the entity within one year.

If an entity was to sell stationery, it would be regarded as inventory. Since it would not be used up within the entity, it would thus not be regarded as an expense, but as inventory (an asset). Remember though that if you were to see a stationery account in a trial balance, it would always be classified as an *expense*. This represents the stationery used during the current period.

#### EXAMPLE 11.5: CONSUMABLE STORES ON HAND

XXX Traders bought stationery valued at R5 000 during the financial year ended 31 December 20.8. This was recorded in the stationery account as an expense of R5 000. After doing a physical inventory count at year-end it was found that stationery valued at R1 000 was still unused. This means that the full R5 000 of stationery they have bought during the financial year have ***not been used up***. If XXX Traders was to close the entity at this date, would it be able to sell the stationery on the shelves (R1 000)? The answer to this question is surely YES!

For this reason an adjustment to the stationery account is necessary. The unused stationery to the value of R1 000 is regarded as a ***current asset***.

#### REQUIRED

- (1) Record the necessary adjustment and the closing entry in the general journal of XXX Traders.
- (2) Post the journal entries to the general ledger of XXX Traders.

**SOLUTION: EXAMPLE 11.5****XXX TRADERS****GENERAL JOURNAL – DECEMBER 20.8***GJ1*

Day	Details	Fol	Debit	Credit
			R	R
31	Consumable stores on hand Stationery Adjustment for stationery on hand	B16 N37	1 000	1 000
	Profit or loss account Stationery Closing transfer	N20 N37	4 000	4 000

**XXX TRADERS**  
**GENERAL LEDGER**

Dr		Stationery			N37		Cr		
20.8				20.8					
Dec	31	Bank	CPJ	5 000	Dec	31	Consumable stores on hand	GJ1	1 000
							Profit or loss account	GJ1	4 000
				5 000					5 000

Dr		Consumable stores on hand			B16		Cr		
20.8				20.8					
Dec	31	Stationery	GJ1	1 000	Dec	31	Balance	c/d	1 000
				1 000					1 000
20.9									
Jan	1	Balance	b/d	1 000					

Dr		Profit or loss account			N20		Cr	
20.8								
Dec	31	Stationery	GJ1	4 000				

**11.1.4 Credit losses and allowance for credit losses****11.1.4.1 Credit losses**

Any entity which grants credit to its customers runs the risk of having some of those customers not paying their debts. If it is expected that the amount due will not be paid by a customer, then this amount must be removed from the debtors account. The amount written off is disclosed as an expense in the profit or loss account.

## Accounting entries for credit losses

When a debt is written off, the customer's individual account in the debtors subsidiary ledger (and then also the debtors control account in the general ledger) is credited.

The amount is debited to a credit losses account (an expense account) which is closed off to the profit or loss account.

### EXAMPLE 11.6: CREDIT LOSSES

On 1 January 20.8, Rek Transport had the following debtors on its list of debtors:

Kargent	R250
Tango	R185

On 31 August 20.8, it was decided to write the debts off as irrecoverable, since it was expected that these amounts will not be paid. The financial year ends on 31 December 20.8

### REQUIRED

- Record the necessary adjustment and the closing entry in the general journal of Rek Transport.
- Post the journal entries to the general ledger of Rek Transport.

### SOLUTION: EXAMPLE 11.6

#### REK TRANSPORT

#### GENERAL JOURNAL - AUGUST 20.8

*GJ1*

Day	Details	Fol	Debit	Credit
			R	R
31	Credit losses	N38	435	
	Debtors control account	B9		435
	* Kargent (subsidiary ledger)			250
	* Tango (subsidiary ledger)			185
	Credit losses recognised			

#### GENERAL JOURNAL - DECEMBER 20.8

*GJ1*

Day	Details	Fol	Debit	Credit
			R	R
31	Profit or loss account	N20	435	
	Credit losses	N38		435
	Closing transfer			

**\* NOTE:**

The recognition of credit losses is done in the general ledger by debiting credit losses and crediting the debtors control account. It is also important to update the individual accounts of the debtors with the transaction where credit losses are recognised. This is done in the subsidiary ledger, where the individual debtors' accounts will be credited with credit losses.

**REK TRANSPORT**

**GENERAL LEDGER**

Dr		Credit losses				N38		Cr	
20.8				20.8					
Aug	31	Debtors control account	GJ1	435	Dec	31	Profit or loss account	GJ1	435
				435					435

Dr		Debtors control				B9		Cr
				20.8				
				Aug	31	Credit losses	GJ1	435

Dr		Profit or loss account				N20		Cr
20.8								
Dec	31	Credit losses	GJ1	435				

**11.1.4.2 Allowance for credit losses**

In order to show the correct amount of total debtors on the statement of financial position, it is prudent for the entity to estimate how much of the debts owed to it will be paid.

The reason for this is that in practice debtors often default on their payments. In line with the accounting concept of prudence, entities should make allowance for debts they expect will not be paid and adjust the accounts accordingly.

The entity should assess whether any events have occurred that may result in non-payment of outstanding amounts. If such events have occurred, the recoverable debtors balance should be estimated and an allowance for credit losses account should be created to reduce the carrying amount of the debtors account to its recoverable amount.

Since the recoverable debtors balance fluctuates annually, the allowance for credit losses account will also fluctuate annually.

It is important to understand that the allowance for credit losses account is normally used when non-payments are expected but it is difficult to identify the specific debtors who will default on their payments.

### Accounting entries

When an allowance for credit losses is created or increased, the credit losses account (expense) is debited and an allowance for credit losses account (negative asset) is credited. In the statement of financial position, the allowance for credit losses is disclosed by deducting it from the debtors control balance. It is shown as part of **trade and other receivables**.

#### NOTE:

Because it is an allowance for credit losses that is made, there will be no entry to any individual debtor's account.

### EXAMPLE 11.7: ALLOWANCE FOR CREDIT LOSSES

Swanty Stores commenced business on 1 January 20.6. The entity serves both cash and credit customers. It was determined that the allowance for credit losses account should amount to R2 325 at 31 December 20.6. Debtors control as at 31 December 20.6 amounts to R15 500.

### REQUIRED

- (1) Record the necessary adjustment and the closing entry in the general journal of Swanty Stores.
- (2) Post the journal entries to the general ledger of Swanty Stores.

### SOLUTION: EXAMPLE 11.7

#### SWANTY STORES

#### GENERAL JOURNAL – DECEMBER 20.6

*GJ1*

Day	Details	Fol	Debit	Credit
			R	R
31	Credit losses	N18	2 325	
	Allowance for credit losses	B38		2 325
	Create an allowance for credit losses at year-end			
	Profit or loss account	N20	2 325	
	Credit losses	N18		2 325
	Closing transfer			

**SWANTY STORES**  
**GENERAL LEDGER**

Dr		Allowance for credit losses				B38		Cr
20.6					20.6			
Dec	31	Balance	c/d	2 325	Dec	31	Credit losses	GJ1
				2 325				2 325
					20.7			
					Jan	1	Balance	b/d
								2 325

Dr		Credit losses				N18		Cr
20.6					20.6			
Dec	31	Allowance for credit losses	GJ1	2 325	Dec	31	Profit or loss account	GJ1
				2 325				2 325

Dr		Profit or loss account				N20		Cr
20.8								
Dec	31	Credit losses	GJ1	2 325				

**EXAMPLE 11.8: INCREASING THE ALLOWANCE FOR CREDIT LOSSES ACCOUNT**

It is now one year later and Swanty Stores is at the end of the next financial year, 31 December 20.7. The balance on the debtors control account is R20 000. Swanty Stores determined that the allowance for credit losses account should amount to R3 000 at 31 December 20.7.

**REQUIRED**

- (1) Record the necessary adjustment and the closing entry in the general journal of Swanty Stores.
- (2) Post the journal entries to the general ledger of Swanty Stores.

**SOLUTION: EXAMPLE 11.8****Calculation**

	<b>R</b>
Allowance for credit losses account 20.7	3 000
Allowance for credit losses account 20.6	(2 325)
So the allowance for credit losses account must increase with	675

**SWANTY STORES****GENERAL JOURNAL – DECEMBER 20.7***GJ1*

Day	Details	Fol	Debit R	Credit R
31	Credit losses	N18	675	
	Allowance for credit losses	B38		675
	Adjusting the allowance for credit losses			
	Profit or loss account	N20	675	
	Credit losses	N18		675
	Closing transfer			

**SWANTY STORES****GENERAL LEDGER**

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Allowance for credit losses</b>				<b>B38</b>		<b>Cr</b>
20.7				20.7				
Dec	31	Balance	c/d	3 000	Jan	1	Balance	b/d
					Dec	31	Credit losses	GJ1
				3 000				2 325
				3 000				675
				3 000				3 000
					20.8			
					Jan	1	Balance	b/d
								3 000

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Credit losses</b>				<b>N18</b>		<b>Cr</b>
20.7				20.7				
Dec	31	Allowance for credit losses	GJ1	675	Dec	31	Profit or loss account	GJ1
				675				675
				675				675
				675				675



Dr	Profit or loss account					N20	Cr
20.8							
Dec	31	Credit losses	GJ1	675			

**EXAMPLE 11.9: DECREASING THE ALLOWANCE FOR CREDIT LOSSES**

Kamdo Services had the following balances on 31 December 20.8:

	R
Allowance for credit losses (1 January 20.8)	4 210
Debtors control	38 160

Kamdo Services determined that the allowance for credit losses account should amount to R3 816 at 31 December 20.8.

**REQUIRED**

- Record the necessary adjustment and the closing entry in the general journal of Kamdo Services.
- Post the journal entries to the general ledger of Kamdo Services.

**SOLUTION: EXAMPLE 11.9**

**Calculation**

Allowance for credit losses account 20.8	R 3 816
Allowance for credit losses account 20.7	(4 210)
So the allowance for credit losses account must decrease by	<u>(394)</u>

**KAMDO SERVICES**

**GENERAL JOURNAL – DECEMBER 20.8**

*GJ1*

Day	Details	Fol	Debit	Credit
			<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>
31	Allowance for credit losses	B38	394	
	Credit losses	N18		394
	Adjusting the allowance for credit losses			
	Credit losses	N18	394	
	Profit or loss account	N20		394
	Closing transfer			

**KAMDO SERVICES****GENERAL LEDGER**

Dr		Allowance for credit losses				B38		Cr	
20.8				20.8					
Dec	31	Credit losses	GJ1	394	Jan	1	Balance	b/d	4 210
		Balance	c/d	3 816					
				4 210					4 210
					20.9				
					Jan	1	Balance	b/d	3 816

Dr		Credit losses				N18		Cr	
20.8				20.8					
Dec	31	Profit or loss account	GJ1	394	Dec	31	Allowance for credit losses	GJ1	394
				394					394

Dr		Profit or loss account				N20		Cr	
				20.8					
				Dec	31	Credit losses	GJ1		394

**11.1.5 Depreciation**

When an entity buys an asset which is intended to be used in the entity for more than one financial year, that asset is described as a non-current asset. Through their continuous use, these non-current assets lose value through wear and tear. This loss of value is known as depreciation. Depreciation is calculated for each accounting period using an agreed method of depreciation. The original cost of the asset is adjusted based on the depreciation calculated. The adjusted value of the asset is shown in the books as the carrying amount (book value).

Depreciation is an expense which allows for the matching of the original cost of the non-current asset against income generated by the asset. If the asset was used for only a part of the accounting period, the depreciation is calculated on the number of months for which the asset was used.

**11.1.5.1 Methods of calculating depreciation**

An entity can use several methods of depreciation to determine the amount of depreciation to be written off on a specific non-current asset. Some of the commonly used methods are the straight-line (fixed instalment) method and the reducing-balance method.

- **The straight-line method**

According to this method, depreciation is calculated on the cost of the asset using a pre-determined depreciation rate. The depreciation rate could be given as a certain percentage, eg 15% per annum. If a non-current asset was bought for R4 000 and its depreciation rate was given as 10% per annum, the annual depreciation will be:

$$R4\ 000 \times 10\% = R400.$$

Where the economic (useful) life of the asset can be estimated with certainty, this can be used to determine the depreciation rate.

Assume that an asset was bought for R5 000 and it was expected to have an economic life of 5 years. The annual depreciation will be:

$$R5\ 000/5\ \text{years} = R1\ 000.$$

If the asset is expected to have some value after its economic life, this value is known as residual value. To calculate the depreciation, the residual value must first be deducted from the cost of the asset before the depreciation rate is applied.

### EXAMPLE 11.10: CALCULATION OF ANNUAL DEPRECIATION

Situ Stores bought office equipment for R10 000 on 1 January 20.8. It was estimated that this asset will have a residual value of R2 000 after its economic life of 10 years.

### REQUIRED

Calculate the annual depreciation of the office equipment.

### SOLUTION: EXAMPLE 11.10

#### Calculation

Annual depreciation	=	(Cost price – residual value)/economic life
	=	(R10 000 – R2 000)/10 years
	=	R800 per annum

- **The reducing-balance method**

Based on this method, the annual depreciation is calculated on the carrying amount of the asset. The carrying amount is obtained by deducting the accumulated depreciation (total depreciation to date) on the asset from the original cost of the asset. The depreciation rate is then applied to the carrying amount to calculate the depreciation.

### EXAMPLE 11.11: CALCULATION OF DEPRECIATION USING THE REDUCING-BALANCE METHOD

ABK Metal Works bought a machine for R60 000 on 1 March 20.7. It was decided to depreciate the asset by 15% per annum using the reducing-balance method. The financial year of the entity ends on 31 December.

**REQUIRED**

Calculate the annual depreciation of the machine for the financial years ended 31 December 20.7, 20.8 and 20.9.

**SOLUTION: EXAMPLE 11.11****Calculation**

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Annual depreciation (20.7)} &= \text{Carrying amount} \times \text{depreciation rate} \\
 &= (\text{Cost price} - \text{accumulated depreciation}) \times \text{rate} \\
 &= (\text{R60 000} - \text{R0}) \times 15\% \times 10/12 \\
 &= \text{R7 500}
 \end{aligned}$$

**NOTE:**

The machine was bought on 1 March 20.7, which means for the first financial year it was used for only 10 months and as such, the depreciation needs to be apportioned for only the 10 months that it was used.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Annual depreciation (20.8)} &= \text{Carrying amount} \times \text{depreciation rate} \\
 &= (\text{Cost price} - \text{accumulated depreciation}) \times \text{rate} \\
 &= (\text{R60 000} - \text{R7 500}) \times 15\% \\
 &= \text{R7 875}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Annual depreciation (20.9)} &= \text{Carrying amount} \times \text{depreciation rate} \\
 &= (\text{Cost price} - \text{accumulated depreciation}) \times \text{rate} \\
 &= (\text{R60 000} - \text{R15 375}^*) \times 15\% \\
 &= \text{R6 693,75}
 \end{aligned}$$

\*Accumulated depreciation: R7 500 (20.7) + R7 875 (20.8) = R15 375

**11.1.5.2 Accounting entries for depreciation**

- **Depreciation**

Depreciation is an expense account which is closed off to the profit or loss account at the end of the year.

- **Accumulated depreciation**

This account holds all the depreciation written off on a particular asset until the asset is completely written off, sold or scrapped. You have learnt that income and liability accounts have credit balances. Since the accumulated depreciation account represents the *credit side* of an asset account, it must also have a *credit balance*. Accumulated depreciation is regarded as a **negative asset**.

The annual depreciation calculated is shown as an expense in the profit or loss account and the carrying amount (cost price less accumulated depreciation) is reported as a non-current asset.

**EXAMPLE 11.12: RECORDING OF DEPRECIATION AND ACCUMULATED DEPRECIATION**

Milkin Products bought a plant for R120 000 on 1 April 20.7. They decided to depreciate the plant at 10% per annum using the reducing-balance method.

**REQUIRED**

Record the above information in the general ledger of Milkin Products for the year ended 31 December 20.8.

**SOLUTION: EXAMPLE 11.12**

**Calculation**

Annual depreciation (for the financial year that ended 31 December 20.7)  
 = (R120 000 – R0) x 10% x 9/12  
 = R9 000

Annual depreciation (for the financial year that ended 31 December 20.8)  
 = (R120 000 – R9 000) x 10%  
 = R11 100

(General journal not shown)

**MILKIN PRODUCTS  
GENERAL LEDGER**

Dr		Depreciation				N20		Cr	
20.8				20.8					
Dec	31	Accumulated depreciation	GJ1	11 100	Dec	31	Profit or loss account	GJ1	11 100
				11 100					11 100

Dr		Accumulated depreciation				B19		Cr	
20.8				20.8					
Dec	31	Balance	c/d	20 100	Jan	1	Balance	b/d	9 000
				20 100	Dec	31	Depreciation	GJ1	11 100
									20 100
				20.9					
				Jan	1	Balance		b/d	20 100

Dr		Profit or loss account				N20		Cr
20.8								
Dec	31	Depreciation	GJ1	11 100				

### 11.1.6 Summary of flow of accounting procedures when year-end adjustments need to be made

- Prepare source documents.
- Prepare journals from source documents.
- Post journals to ledger accounts.
- Prepare a pre-adjustment trial balance.
- Record adjustments in general journal and post to ledger accounts.
- Prepare a post-adjustment trial balance.
- Record closing entries in general journal and post to ledger accounts.
- Prepare post-closing trial balance.

## COMPREHENSIVE EXAMPLE ONE

On 28 February 20.1 the following trial balance was extracted from the general ledger of Pompeii Traders, a general merchant that is not registered as a VAT vendor.

### POMPEII TRADERS

#### PRE-ADJUSTMENT TRIAL BALANCE AS AT 31 DECEMBER 20.1

	Debit	Credit
	R	R
Capital (1 January 20.1)		250 000
Drawings	70 860	
Mortgage		120 000
Long-term loan		30 000
Creditors control		25 000
Bank		11 000
Land and buildings (at cost price)	526 140	
Equipment (at cost price)	70 000	
Vehicles (at cost price)	80 000	
Accumulated depreciation: Equipment (1 January 20.1)		21 000
Accumulated depreciation: Vehicles (1 January 20.1)		39 040
Allowance for credit losses		600
Inventory	7 500	
Debtors control	18 000	
Petty cash	350	
Sales		595 000
Cost of sales	195 990	
Advertising	7 400	
Bank charges	2 300	
Telephone expenses	9 800	
Water and electricity	12 100	
Salaries	80 400	
Insurance	4 000	
Delivery expenses	3 900	
Credit losses	500	
Interest on bank overdraft	600	
Packing materials	6 300	
Rental income		4 000
Settlement discount received		500
	1 096 140	1 096 140

**Additional information:**

Year-end adjustments:

- (a) An outstanding debt of R300 is irrecoverable and must be written off.
- (b) The allowance for credit losses must be adjusted to R708.
- (c) Depreciation must be provided as follows:  
Equipment: 10% per annum according to the straight-line method  
Vehicles: 20% per annum according to the diminishing balance method
- (d) The terms of the mortgage loan provide for interest on the loan to be calculated at a rate of 15% per annum on the outstanding amount of the loan at the end of the financial year. Interest is payable in the first week of January of the following year. The loan was originally granted to the entity by Capital Bank Limited on 2 January 20.0.
- (e) A Van granted an unsecured loan to the entity on 1 September 20.1. According to the terms of the loan agreement, interest at 9% per annum will be charged and is payable in January of every year. The total amount of the loan will be repaid in full on 30 June 20.5.
- (f) Advertising expenses include an amount of R400 which was prepaid for January 20.2.
- (g) The amount paid for water and electricity excludes an amount of R2 300 still payable for December 20.1.
- (h) A commission of R1 250, for selling newspapers at cash registers, is still payable for the whole year.
- (i) An inventory count of packing materials on 31 December 20.1 showed that there was still R700 worth of materials on hand.
- (j) Insurance premium of R3 600 was paid on 1 February 20.1 for the following 12 months.
- (k) The entity rented out an office in their building to a lawyer for R2 000 per month. The lawyer took occupation on 1 December and paid an amount of R4 000, being the rent for December 20.1 and January 20.2.

**REQUIRED**

- (1) Prepare the following in respect of Pompeii Traders:
  - General journal with regard to adjustments at 31 December 20.1
  - General journal with regard to closing entries at 31 December 20.1
- (2) Post the general journal entries to the relevant ledger accounts. Close/balance these accounts at year-end.

<b>SOLUTION: COMPREHENSIVE EXAMPLE ONE</b>
--

**POMPEII TRADERS****GENERAL JOURNAL – 31 DECEMBER 20.1****Adjustments***GJ6*

Day	Details	Fol	Debit	Credit
			R	R
31	Credit losses	N11	300,00	
	Debtors control	B6		300,00
	Bad debts written off			
	Credit losses	N11	108,00	
	Allowance for credit losses	B14		108,00
	Increase in allowance for credit losses			
	Depreciation	N16	15 192,00	
	Accumulated depreciation: Equipment	B12		7 000,00
	Accumulated depreciation: Vehicles	B13		8 192,00
	Adjustment for depreciation			
	Interest on mortgage	N14	18 000,00	
	Accrued expenses	B7		18 000,00
	Adjustment for interest payable			
	Interest on long-term loan	N15	900,00	
	Accrued expenses	B7		900,00
	Adjustment for interest payable			
	Prepaid expenses	B8	400,00	
	Advertising	N3		400,00
	Adjustment for advertising paid in advance			
Water and electricity	N7	2 300,00		
Accrued expenses	B7		2 300,00	
Adjustment for water and electricity payable				
Accrued income	B10	1 250,00		
Commission income	N17		1 250,00	
Adjustment for commission income not yet received				
Consumable stores on hand	B11	700,00		
Packing materials	N13		700,00	
Adjustment for packing materials on hand				
Prepaid expenses	B8	300,00		
Insurance	N9		300,00	
Adjustment for prepaid insurance				
Rental income	N19	2 000,00		
Income received in advance	B9		2 000,00	
Adjustment for income received in advance				



**Closing transfers**

Day	Details	Fol	Debit	Credit
			<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>
	Settlement discount received	N18	500,00	
	Cost of sales	N2		500,00
	Closing transfer			
	Trading account	N20	195 490,00	
	Cost of sales	N2		195 490,00
	Closing transfer			
	Sales	N1	595 000,00	
	Trading account	N20		595 000,00
	Closing transfer			
	Trading account	N20	399 510,00	
	Profit or loss account	N21		399 510,00
	Transfer of gross profit			
	Profit or loss account	N21	162 700,00	
	Advertising	N3		7 000,00
	Bank charges	N4		2 300,00
	Telephone expenses	N5		9 800,00
	Water and electricity	N7		14 400,00
	Salaries	N8		80 400,00
	Insurance	N9		3 700,00
	Delivery expenses	N10		3 900,00
	Credit losses	N11		908,00
	Interest on bank overdraft	N12		600,00
	Packing materials	N13		5 600,00
	Interest on mortgage	N14		18 000,00
	Interest on long-term loan	N15		900,00
	Depreciation	N16		15 192,00
	Closing transfers			
	Commission income	N17	1 250,00	
	Rental income	N19	2 000,00	
	Profit or loss account	N21		3 250,00
	Closing transfers			
	Profit or loss account	N21	240 060,00	
	Capital	B1		240 060,00
	Closing transfer			
	Capital	B1	70 860,00	
	Drawings	B2		70 860,00
	Closing transfer			

**POMPEII TRADERS  
GENERAL LEDGER**

Dr		Capital				B1		Cr	
20.1					20.1				
Dec	31	Drawings	GJ6	70 860 00	Dec	31	Balance	b/d	250 000 00
		Balance	c/d	419 200 00			Profit or loss account	GJ6	240 060 00
				490 060 00					490 060 00
					20.2				
					Jan	1	Balance	b/d	419 200 00

Dr		Drawings				B2		Cr	
20.1					20.1				
Dec	31	Balance	b/d	70 860 00	Dec	31	Capital	GJ6	70 860 00

Dr		Debtors control				B1		Cr	
20.1					20.1				
Dec	31	Balance	b/d	18 000 00	Dec	31	Credit losses	GJ6	300 00
				18 000 00			Balance	c/d	17 700 00
									18 000 00
20.2									
Jan	1	Balance	b/d	17 700 00					

Dr		Accrued expenses				B7		Cr	
					20.1				
					Dec	31	Interest on mortgage	GJ6	18 000 00
							Interest on long-term loan	GJ6	900 00
							Water and electricity	GJ6	2 300 00
									21 200 00

Dr		Prepaid expenses				B8		Cr	
20.1									
Dec	31	Advertising	GJ6	400 00					
		Insurance	GJ6	300 00					
				700 00					

Dr		Income received in advance					B9		Cr	
						20.1 Dec 31	Rental income	GJ6	2 000	00

Dr		Accrued income					B10		Cr	
20.1 Dec 31		Commision income	GJ6	1 250	00					

Dr		Consumable stores on hand					B11		Cr	
20.1 Dec 31		Packing materials	GJ6	700	00					

Dr		Accumulated depreciation: Equipment					B12		Cr	
						20.1 Jan 1	Balance	b/d	21 000	00
						Dec 31	Depreciation	GJ6	7 000	00
									28 000	00

Dr		Accumulated depreciation: Vehicles					B13		Cr	
						20.1 Jan 1	Balance	b/d	39 040	00
						Dec 31	Depreciation	GJ6	8 192	00
									47 232	00

Dr		Allowance for credit losses					B14		Cr	
						20.1 Jan 1	Balance	b/d	600	00
						Dec 31	Credit losses	GJ6	108	00
									708	00

Dr		Sales					N1		Cr	
20.1 Dec 31		Trading account	GJ6	595 000	00	20.1 Dec 31	Total	b/d	595 000	00

Dr		Cost of sales				N2		Cr	
20.1					20.1				
Dec	31	Total	b/d	195 990 00	Dec	31	Settlement discount received	GJ6	500 00
							Trading account	GJ6	195 490 00
				195 990 00					195 990 00

Dr		Advertising				N3		Cr	
20.1					20.1				
Dec	31	Total	b/d	7 400 00	Dec	31	Prepaid expenses	GJ6	400 00
							Profit or loss account	GJ6	7 000 00
				7 400 00					7 400 00

Dr		Bank charges				N4		Cr	
20.1					20.1				
Dec	31	Total	b/d	2 300 00	Dec	31	Profit or loss account	GJ6	2 300 00

Dr		Telephone expenses				N5		Cr	
20.1					20.1				
Dec	31	Total	b/d	9 800 00	Dec	31	Profit or loss account	GJ6	9 800 00

Dr		Water and electricity				N7		Cr	
20.1					20.1				
Dec	31	Total	b/d	12 100 00	Dec	31	Profit or loss account	GJ6	14 400 00
		Accrued expenses	GJ6	2 300 00					
				14 400 00					14 400 00

Dr		Salaries				N8		Cr	
20.1					20.1				
Dec	31	Total	b/d	80 400 00	Dec	31	Profit or loss account	GJ6	80 400 00

Dr		Insurance				N9		Cr	
20.1					20.1				
Dec	31	Total	b/d	4 000 00	Dec	31	Prepaid expenses	GJ6	300 00
							Profit or loss account	GJ6	3 700 00
				4 000 00					4 000 00

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Delivery expenses</b>				<b>N10</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.1					20.1				
Dec	31	Total	b/d	3 900 00	Dec	31	Profit or loss account	GJ6	3 900 00

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Credit losses</b>				<b>N11</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.1					20.1				
Dec	31	Total	b/d	500 00	Dec	31	Profit or loss account	GJ6	908 00
		Debtors control	GJ6	300 00					
		Allowance for credit losses	GJ6	108 00					
				908 00					908 00

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Interest on bank overdraft</b>				<b>N12</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.1					20.1				
Dec	31	Total	b/d	600 00	Dec	31	Profit or loss account	GJ6	600 00

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Packing materials</b>				<b>N13</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.1					20.1				
Dec	31	Total	b/d	6 300 00	Dec	31	Consumable stores on hand	GJ6	700 00
							Profit or loss account	GJ6	5 600 00
				6 300 00					6 300 00

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Interest on mortgage</b>				<b>N14</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.1					20.1				
Dec	31	Accrued expenses	GJ6	18 000 00	Dec	31	Profit or loss account	GJ6	18 000 00

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Interest on long-term loan</b>				<b>N15</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.1					20.1				
Dec	31	Accrued expenses	GJ6	900 00	Dec	31	Profit or loss account	GJ6	900 00

<b>Dr</b>		<b>Depreciation</b>				<b>N16</b>		<b>Cr</b>	
20.1					20.1				
Dec	31	Accumulated depreciation: Equipment	GJ6	7 000 00	Dec	31	Profit or loss account	GJ6	15 192 00
		Accumulated depreciation: Vehicles	GJ6	8 192 00					
				15 192 00					15 192 00

Dr		Commission income				N17		Cr	
20.1					20.1				
Dec	31	Profit or loss account	GJ6	1 250 00	Dec	31	Accrued income	GJ6	1 250 00

Dr		Settlement discount received				N18		Cr	
20.1					20.1				
Dec	31	Cost of sales	GJ6	500 00	Dec	31	Total	b/d	500 00

Dr		Rental income				N19		Cr	
20.1					20.1				
Dec	31	Income received in advance	GJ6	2 000 00	Dec	31	Total	b/d	4 000 00
		Profit or loss account	GJ6	2 000 00					
				4 000 00					4 000 00

Dr		Trading account				N20		Cr	
20.1					20.1				
Dec	31	Cost of sales	GJ6	195 490 00	Dec	31	Sales	GJ6	595 000 00
		Profit or loss account	GJ6	399 510 00					
				595 000 00					595 000 00

Dr		Profit or loss account				N21		Cr	
20.1					20.1				
Dec	31	Advertising	GJ6	7 000 00	Dec	31	Trading account	GJ6	399 510 00
		Bank charges	GJ6	2 300 00			Commission income	GJ6	1 250 00
		Telephone expenses	GJ6	9 800 00			Rental income	GJ6	2 000 00
		Water and electricity	GJ6	14 400 00					
		Salaries	GJ6	80 400 00					
		Insurance	GJ6	3 700 00					
		Delivery expenses	GJ6	3 900 00					
		Credit losses	GJ6	908 00					
		Interest on bank overdraft	GJ6	600 00					
		Packing materials	GJ6	5 600 00					
		Interest on mortgage	GJ6	18 000 00					
		Interest on long-term loan	GJ6	900 00					
		Depreciation	GJ6	15 192 00					
		Capital (profit for the year)	GJ6	240 060 00					
				402 760 00					402 760 00

## Calculations

	R
① <b>Advertising</b>	
R(7 400 – 400)	<u>7 000</u>
② <b>Water and electricity</b>	
R(12 100 + 2 300)	<u>14 400</u>
③ <b>Credit losses and allowance for credit losses</b>	
Debtors control R(18 000 – 300)	<u>17 700</u>
Allowance for credit losses	<u>708</u>
Previous year allowance	<u>(600)</u>
Increase in allowance for credit losses	<u>108</u>
Total credit losses R(500 + 300 + 108)	<u>908</u>
④ <b>Depreciation on equipment (straight-line method):</b>	
R70 000 x 10%	7 000
<b>Depreciation on vehicles (diminishing balance method):</b>	
R(80 000 – 39 040) x 20%	<u>8 192</u>
Total depreciation	<u>15 192</u>
⑤ <b>Finance costs</b>	
Interest on long-term loan	
R30 000 x 4/12 x 9/100	900
Interest on mortgage	
R120 000 x 15%	18 000
Interest on bank overdraft	<u>600</u>
Total finance costs	<u>19 500</u>
⑥ <b>Insurance</b>	
Amount paid for period 1/2/20.1 to 31/1/20.2	<u>3 600</u>
Amount applicable to this financial year R3 600 x 11/12	<u>3 300</u>
Plus amount paid for Jan 20.1 in 20.0	<u>400</u>
Insurance expense for 20.1	<u>3 700</u>
Prepaid expenses	<u>300</u>

## 11.2 FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

### 11.2.1 Introduction

We have seen that journals are used on a daily basis to record the details of each transaction. The general ledger is used as a summary of the journals and is updated on a monthly basis. A trial balance is used primarily as an index (summary) of the accounts dealt with in the general ledger.

The source documents → journals → ledger → trial balance cycle should continue unabated for a period of 12 months (if the financial period is 12 months long).

At the end of the financial year some additional accounting procedures must be followed. After executing the usual documentation procedures → journals → ledger → trial balance – for the final month of the financial period, two important extra procedures must be followed:

- Determine the financial **performance** of the entity for the past financial year.
- Determine the financial **position** of the entity at the financial year-end.

### 11.2.2 Financial performance as measured by the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income

What is financial performance? Consider the situation where an investor deposits R100 000 into a fixed deposit investment for one year at an interest rate of 12% per annum. The 12% interest rate represents the *return* that the investor is expecting on the investment. If the interest rate remains the same, the investment should grow to R112 000 by the end of the 12-month period.

This scenario can be compared with one where the sole owner of an entity makes a capital contribution of R100 000 into the entity on a particular date (for example 1 July 20.1). At the end of the first financial period of 12 months (ie 30 June 20.2), the owner would like to determine the *return on his/her initial investment* for the year. How is this return calculated?

#### Return on capital invested = net profit (profit for the year)

*Interest* measures the performance of a savings investment, and *profit* measures the performance of an entity's capital investment. In fact, if the owner makes a R10 000 profit on 30 June 20.2 in the example given above, he/she can measure the return against the return on a savings investment. A R10 000 net profit (profit for the year) equates to a 10% return on the initial investment of R100 000 ( $R10\ 000 / R100\ 000 \times 100 = 10\%$ ). This return is less than the return on the savings investment, which in our example, amounts to R12 000 (12%). One could thus interpret the net profit (profit for the year) as being a very conservative return, since the owner could have yielded a return of 12% had he/she invested the money in a fixed deposit — without doing any work during the year!

#### • The structure of the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income

The statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income is a statement format of the trading and profit or loss accounts which should be familiar to you by now. The statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income is divided into a gross profit section (similar to the trading account) and a net profit section (similar to the profit or loss account).

Dr		Trading account (F1)				Cr	
Year-end date	Cost of sales	GJ	XXX	Year-end date	Sales (less sales returns)	GJ	XXX
	Profit or loss account (gross profit)	GJ	XXX				XXX
			XXX				



Dr		Profit of loss account (F2)				Cr	
Year- end date	Wages and salaries	GJ	XXX	Year- end date	Trading account	GJ	XXX
	Insurance	GJ	XXX		(gross profit)		
	Interest expenses	GJ	XXX		Rental income		
	Rental expenses	GJ	XXX		Interest income		
	Telephone expenses	GJ	XXX		Commission		
	Water and electricity	GJ	XXX		income		
	Advertising	GJ	XXX		etc ...		
	Repairs and maintenance	GJ	XXX				
	Stationery	GJ	XXX				
	Packing materials	GJ	XXX				
	Consumables	GJ	XXX				
	etc ...						
	Capital (profit for the year)	GJ	XXX				
			XXX				
			XXX				

The trading account will be used as a tool to close off the following nominal accounts at the end of the financial period:

- Sales
- Sales returns (closed off against sales)
- Cost of sales

The profit or loss account will be used as a tool to have all the remaining nominal accounts closed off at the end of the financial period.

**All nominal accounts should thus have an effective balance of 0 (nil) on the first day of the next financial year.**

OR:

**XXX TRADERS**

**STATEMENT OF PROFIT OR LOSS AND OTHER COMPREHENSIVE INCOME FOR THE YEAR ENDED ...**

	R	R	
Revenue		XXX	} Trading account section
Cost of sales		(XXX)	
Gross profit		XXX	
Other income		XXX	
Rent income	XXX		} Profit or loss account section
Interest income	XXX		
Commission income	XXX		
Profit on sale of non-current asset	XXX		
Distribution, administrative and other expenses		XXX (XXX)	
Wages and salaries	XXX		
Insurance	XXX		
Traffic fines	XXX		
Rental expenses	XXX		
Telephone expenses	XXX		
Water and electricity	XXX		
Advertising	XXX		
Repairs and maintenance	XXX		
Stationery	XXX		
Packing material	XXX		
Loss on sale of non-current asset	XXX		
Finance costs		(XXX)	
Interest on long-term loan	XXX		
Interest on mortgage	XXX		
Interest on bank overdraft	XXX		
Profit for the year		XXX	
Other comprehensive income for the year		—	
Total comprehensive income for the year		XXX	

**You will be required to know the structure of the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income as set out above.**

**11.2.3 Financial position as measured by the statement of financial position**

The financial position of an entity can be determined by preparing a statement of financial position at any point in time (usually at the end of the financial year).

A statement of financial position is used to answer a very important question:

**WHAT IF ... ?**

The statement of financial position should effectively answer the question: What if we closed the doors of our entity today (the statement of financial position date), sold all the assets, and paid back all our liabilities? The result of such a closure should indicate the owner's real equity in the entity. Remember: equity = assets – liabilities; or:

<b>ASSETS</b>	<b>=</b>	<b>EQUITY</b>	<b>+</b>	<b>LIABILITIES</b>
---------------	----------	---------------	----------	--------------------

The statement of financial position is in fact nothing but a detailed version of the **accounting equation**, which shows the financial position of an entity.

**None of the statement of financial position accounts (except for drawings) will be closed off at the end of the financial year. All the capital, asset and liability balances will be carried forward to the next financial period.**

**You will be required to know the structure of the statement of financial position as set out below.**

**The structure of the statement of financial position**

## XXX TRADERS

### STATEMENT OF FINANCIAL POSITION AS AT ...

	R	R
<b>ASSETS</b>		
Non-current assets		XXX
Property, plant and equipment	XXX	
Fixed deposit	XXX	
<b>Current assets</b>		XXX
Inventories	XXX	
Trade and other receivables	XXX	
Callable fixed deposit	XXX	
Prepayments	XXX	
Cash and cash equivalents	XXX	
VAT receivable	XXX	
<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>		XXX
<b>EQUITY AND LIABILITIES</b>		
Equity		XXX
Capital	XXX	
<b>Non-current liabilities</b>		XXX
Long-term borrowings	XXX	
<b>Current liabilities</b>		XXX
Trade and other payables	XXX	
Income received in advance	XXX	
Short-term borrowings	XXX	
Current portion of long-term borrowings	XXX	
Bank overdraft	XXX	
VAT payable	XXX	
<b>TOTAL EQUITY AND LIABILITIES</b>		XXX

**11.2.4 Statement of changes in equity**

The aim of the statement of changes in equity is to reconcile the balance of the equity at the beginning of the financial year with the equity at the end of the financial year.

**The structure of the statement of changes in equity****XXX TRADERS****STATEMENT OF CHANGES IN EQUITY FOR THE YEAR ENDED ...**

	<b>Capital R</b>
Balance at ... (date at beginning of financial year)	XXX
Capital contribution during the year	XXX
Total comprehensive income for the year	XXX
Drawings	(XXX)
Balance at ... (date at end of financial year)	XXX

## COMPREHENSIVE EXAMPLE TWO

Mimosa Dealers reached the end of their first financial year on 30 September 20.3. The following trial balance was extracted from the accounting records on that date:

	Fol	Debit R	Credit R
<b>Financial position section</b>			
Capital (1 October 20.2)	B1		250 000
Drawings	B2	22 400	
Equipment	B3	48 000	
Investment: Fixed deposit (12%)	B4	100 000	
Trading inventory	B5	110 000	
Debtors control	B6	44 880	
Creditors control	B7		30 210
Long-term loan: ABC Bank (14%)	B8		120 000
Bank	B9	127 150	
<b>Nominal accounts section</b>			
Sales	N1		382 500
Cost of sales	N2	190 000	
Sales returns	N3	21 500	
Rental expenses	N4	36 000	
Interest on fixed deposit	N5		12 000
Interest on long-term loan	N6	16 800	
Wages and salaries	N7	43 000	
Insurance	N8	11 000	
Stationery	N9	1 700	
Packing materials	N10	2 050	
Settlement discount granted	N11	840	
Settlement discount received	N12		360
Credit losses	N13	800	
Telephone expenses	N14	5 320	
Water and electricity	N15	12 500	
Repairs	N16	1 130	
		795 070	795 070

**REQUIRED**

- (1) Prepare the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income of Mimosa Dealers for the year ended 30 September 20.3.
- (2) Prepare the statement of financial position of Mimosa Dealers as at 30 September 20.3.
- (3) Prepare the statement of changes in equity for the year ended 30 September 20.3.
- (4) If it is assumed that the R250 000 capital was invested on 1 October 20.2, calculate the percentage (%) return for the first year on the capital invested.
- (5) If this entity is using a constant mark-up on cost for all trading inventory sold, determine the percentage (%) mark-up.
- (6) If Mimosa Dealers moved into the building from which they trade on 1 October 20.2, calculate the monthly rent payment if all payments have been made up to date.

**SOLUTION: COMPREHENSIVE EXAMPLE TWO****(1)****MIMOSA DEALERS****STATEMENT OF PROFIT OR LOSS AND OTHER COMPREHENSIVE INCOME FOR THE YEAR ENDED 30 SEPTEMBER 20.3**

	R	R
Revenue (382 500 – 21 500 – 840)		360 160
Cost of sales (190 000 – 360)		(189 640)
Gross profit		170 520
Other income		12 000
Interest on fixed deposit	12 000	
		182 520
Distribution, administrative and other expenses		(113 500)
Rental expenses	36 000	
Wages and salaries	43 000	
Insurance	11 000	
Stationery	1 700	
Packing materials	2 050	
Credit losses	800	
Telephone expenses	5 320	
Water and electricity	12 500	
Repairs	1 130	
Finance costs		(16 800)
Interest on long-term loan	16 800	
Profit for the year		52 220
Other comprehensive income for the year		—
Total comprehensive income for the year		52 220

**NOTE:**

Settlement discount granted must be deducted from revenue and settlement discount received must be deducted from cost of sales.

(2)

**MIMOSA DEALERS****STATEMENT OF FINANCIAL POSITION AS AT 30 SEPTEMBER 20.3**

	<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>
<b>ASSETS</b>		
<b>Non-current assets</b>		148 000
Property, plant and equipment	48 000	
Fixed deposit	100 000	
<b>Current assets</b>		282 030
Inventories	110 000	
Trade and other receivables	44 880	
Cash and cash equivalents	127 150	
<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>		430 030
<b>EQUITY AND LIABILITIES</b>		
<b>Equity</b>		279 820
Capital	279 820	
<b>Non-current liabilities</b>		120 000
Long-term borrowings	120 000	
<b>Current liabilities</b>		30 210
Trade and other payables	30 210	
<b>TOTAL EQUITY AND LIABILITIES</b>		430 030

(3)

**MIMOSA DEALERS****STATEMENT OF CHANGES IN EQUITY FOR THE YEAR ENDED  
30 SEPTEMBER 20.3**

	<b>Capital</b>
	<b>R</b>
Balance at 1 October 20.2	250 000
Total comprehensive income for the year	52 220
Drawings	(22 400)
Balance at 30 September 20.3	279 820

- (4)  $R52\,220 / R250\,000 \times 100 = 20,89\%$
- (5) Mark-up % on cost = gross profit / cost of sales x 100  
Thus: mark-up % =  $R170\,520 / R189\,640 \times 100 = 89,92\%$
- (6)  $R36\,000 / 12 = R3\,000$  per month



## ACTIVITY 1

Lucky Traders reached the end of their first financial year at 30 April 20.4. The following trial balance was extracted from the accounting records on that date:

	Fol	Debit R	Credit R
<b>Financial position section</b>			
Capital (1 May 20.3)	B1		300 000
Drawings	B2	40 000	
Vehicles	B3	120 000	
Investment: Fixed deposit (13%)	B4	80 000	
Trading inventory	B5	46 000	
Debtors control	B6	20 000	
Creditors control	B7		35 000
Long-term loan: Goodie Bank (15%)	B8		140 000
Bank	B9	199 270	
Petty cash	B10	1 000	
<b>Nominal accounts section</b>			
Sales	N1		415 000
Cost of sales	N2	250 000	
Sales returns	N3	15 000	
Wages and salaries	N4	71 400	
Interest on fixed deposit	N5		5 200
Interest on loan	N6	21 000	
Telephone expenses	N7	12 300	
Settlement discount granted	N8	1 500	
Credit losses	N9	5 800	
Insurance	N10	1 200	
Settlement discount received	N11		330
Credit losses recovered	N12		360
Advertising	N13	4 800	
Traffic fines	N14	850	
Rates and taxes	N15	3 770	
Repairs and maintenance	N16	2 000	
		895 890	895 890

## REQUIRED

- (1) Prepare the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income of Lucky Traders for the year ended 30 April 20.4.
- (2) Prepare the statement of financial position of Lucky Traders as at 30 April 20.4.
- (3) Prepare the statement of changes in equity for the year ended 30 April 20.4.
- (4) If it is assumed that the insurance policy was taken out on 1 January 20.4, and that all payments have been made up to date, what is the monthly insurance premium?
- (5) Determine the date on which the fixed deposit was invested. All interest due has been received.

(6) Lucky Traders sells all goods at a constant mark-up. Determine the mark-up % on cost.

This solution should be based on the same format as used in the illustrative example. It would be wise to try and do this question on your own. If your statement of financial position balances then you should be on the right track.

### 11.2.5 Year-end adjustments

This section was discussed in detail in this learning unit of the study guide. But let us now consider how this fits into the accounting cycle.

We have seen how the performance of an entity can be determined for a financial period. This is done by means of a statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income or trading and profit or loss accounts.

The financial position of an entity can also be determined by drafting a statement of financial position. The question now arises whether these statements are indeed **accurate** in measuring financial performance and position.

This is where **year-end adjustments** come in very handy.

The purpose of performing year-end adjustments is to make the financial results more realistic. The various year-end adjustments which are an extremely important section of the syllabus will now be discussed. We deal with each individual adjustment in detail. The process of drafting financial statements is slightly more comprehensive and complicated, because all the adjustments need to be incorporated into one set of financial statements.

For the sake of revision, the most important year-end adjustments are listed:

- Depreciation
- Accrued expenses
- Accrued income
- Prepaid expenses
- Income received in advance
- Consumable stores on hand
- Trading inventory deficits
- Credit losses
- Allowance for credit losses

## COMPREHENSIVE EXAMPLE THREE

The following information relates to Joyner & Sons as at 31 October 20.4, the last day of the financial year of the entity:

### JOYNER & SONS

#### PRE-ADJUSTMENT TRIAL BALANCE AS AT 31 OCTOBER 20.4

	Fol	Debit	Credit
		R	R
<b>Financial position section</b>			
Capital (1 November 20.3)	B1		447 540
Drawings	B2	10 000	
Land and buildings	B3	350 000	
Vehicles	B4	133 000	
Equipment	B5	36 800	
Accumulated depreciation: Vehicles	B6		43 000
Accumulated depreciation: Equipment	B7		12 800
Fixed deposit: AA Bank (12% pa)	B8	65 000	
Debtors control	B9	31 250	
Creditors control	B10		24 270
Inventory	B11	63 500	
Bank	B12	21 210	
Petty cash	B13	2 000	
Cash float	B14	3 500	
Long-term loan: BB Bank (14% pa)	B15		30 000
<b>Nominal accounts section</b>			
Sales	N1		310 700
Cost of sales	N2	125 100	
Sales returns	N3	10 700	
Rental income	N4		29 700
Interest on fixed deposit	N5		7 950
Interest on long-term loan	N6	4 000	
Bank charges	N7	160	
Stationery	N8	1 200	
Packing materials	N9	2 620	
Insurance	N10	5 600	
Wages and salaries	N11	20 100	
Water and electricity	N12	8 450	
Telephone expenses	N13	5 890	
Repairs and maintenance	N14	3 000	
Settlement discount granted	N15	450	
Settlement discount received	N16		1 310
Advertising	N17	1 940	
Credit losses	N18	1 800	
		907 270	907 270

**Adjustments at 31 October 20.4:**

- (a) A physical inventory count taken, revealed the following:
- Inventory on hand, R61 800
  - Stationery on hand, R400
  - Packing materials on hand, R620
- (b) The fixed deposit and long-term loan were both negotiated during 20.1.
- (c) The salary of an employee, D Bono, for October 20.4 is still due, R4 900.
- (d) Prepaid insurance amounts to R500.
- (e) The rent due by the tenant amounts to R2 700 per month. The tenant has been renting since 1 November 20.3.
- (f) The outstanding balance of a debtor, B Charlie, must be written off. The amount is R1 250.
- (g) Joyner & Sons determined that the allowance for credit losses account should amount to R1 200 on 31 October 20.4.
- (h) Depreciation must be provided for as follows:
- On vehicles @ 20% per annum according to the straight-line method
  - On equipment @  $33\frac{1}{3}\%$  per annum on the reducing-balance method

**REQUIRED**

- (1) Prepare the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income for Joyner & Sons for the year ended 31 October 20.4.
- (2) Prepare the statement of financial position of Joyner & Sons as at 31 October 20.4.
- (3) Prepare the statement of changes in equity for Joyner & Sons for the year ended 31 October 20.4.
- (4) Prepare the notes for the year ended 31 October 20.4.

<b>SOLUTION: COMPREHENSIVE EXAMPLE THREE</b>
--

(1)

**JOYNER & SONS****STATEMENT OF PROFIT OR LOSS AND OTHER COMPREHENSIVE INCOME FOR THE YEAR ENDED 31 OCTOBER 20.4**

	R	R
Revenue (310 700 – 10 700 – 450)		299 550
Cost of sales (125 100 – 1 310)		(123 790)
Gross profit		175 760
Other income		40 200
Rental income (29 700 + 2 700)	32 400	
Interest on fixed deposit (7 950 – 150)	7 800	
		215 960
Distribution, administrative and other expenses		(92 890)
Bank charges	160	
Stationery (1 200 – 400)	800	
Packing materials (2 620 – 620)	2 000	
Insurance (5 600 – 500)	5 100	
Wages and salaries (20 100 + 4 900)	25 000	
Water and electricity	8 450	
Telephone expenses	5 890	
Repairs and maintenance	3 000	
Advertising	1 940	
Credit losses (1 800 + 1 250 + 1 200)	4 250	
Trading inventory deficits	1 700	
Depreciation (26 600 + 8 000)	34 600	
Finance costs		(4 200)
Interest on long-term loan (4 000 + 200)	4 200	
Profit for the year		118 870
Other comprehensive income for the year		—
Total comprehensive income for the year		R118 870

(2)

**JOYNER & SONS****STATEMENT OF FINANCIAL POSITION AS AT 31 OCTOBER 20.4**

	Notes	R	R
<b>ASSETS</b>			
<b>Non-current assets</b>			494 400
Property, plant and equipment	1	429 400	
Fixed deposit	2	65 000	
<b>Current assets</b>			121 530
Inventories	3	62 820	
Trade and other receivables	4	31 500	
Prepayments	5	500	
Cash and cash equivalents	6	26 710	
<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>			615 930
<b>EQUITY AND LIABILITIES</b>			
<b>Equity</b>			556 410
Capital		556 410	
<b>Non-current liabilities</b>			30 000
Long-term borrowings	7	30 000	
<b>Current liabilities</b>			29 520
Trade and other payables	8	29 370	
Income received in advance	9	150	
<b>TOTAL EQUITY AND LIABILITIES</b>			615 930

(3)

**JOYNER & SONS****STATEMENT OF CHANGES IN EQUITY FOR THE YEAR ENDED  
31 OCTOBER 20.4**

	Capital
	R
Balance at 1 November 20.3	447 540
Total comprehensive income for the year	118 870
Drawings	(10 000)
Balance at 31 October 20.4	556 410

(4)

**JOYNER & SONS****NOTES FOR THE YEAR ENDED 31 OCTOBER 20.4**

1	<b>Property, plant and equipment</b>	<b>Land and building</b>	<b>Equipment</b>	<b>Vehicles</b>	<b>Total</b>
		<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>R</b>
	Carrying amount at 1 November 20.3	350 000	24 000	90 000	464 000
	Cost price	350 000	36 800	133 000	519 800
	Accumulated depreciation	–	(12 800)	(43 000)	(55 800)
	Additions	–	–	–	–
	Disposals	–	–	–	–
	Depreciation for the year	–	(8 000)	(26 600)	(34 600)
	Carrying amount at 31 October 20.4	350 000	16 000	63 400	429 400
	Cost price	350 000	36 800	133 000	519 800
	Accumulated depreciation	–	(20 800)	(69 600)	(90 400)
<b>2</b>	<b>Financial assets</b>				
	<b>Non-current financial assets</b>				
	Loans and receivables: Fixed deposit at AA Bank at 12% pa				65 000
<b>3</b>	<b>Inventories</b>				
	Trading inventory (63 500 – 1 700)			61 800	
	Consumable stores on hand:				
	– Stationery		400		
	– Packing material		620	1 020	62 820
<b>4</b>	<b>Trade and other receivables</b>				
	Debtors control (31 250 – 1 250)		30 000		
	<u>Less:</u> Allowance for credit losses		(1 200)	28 800	
	Accrued income: – Rental income			2 700	31 500
<b>5</b>	<b>Prepayments</b>				
	Prepaid expenses: – Insurance				500
<b>6</b>	<b>Cash and cash equivalents</b>				
	Bank			21 210	
	Petty cash			2 000	
	Cash float			3 500	26 710
<b>7</b>	<b>Long-term borrowings</b>				
	Long-term loan: BB Bank (14% pa)				30 000
<b>8</b>	<b>Trade and other payables</b>				
	Creditors control			24 270	
	Accrued expenses:				
	– Interest on loan		200		
	– Wages and salaries		4 900	5 100	29 370
<b>9</b>	<b>Income received in advance:</b>				
	– Interest on fixed deposit			150	150

## ACTIVITY 2

The following information was obtained from the records of Swinton Dealers on the last day of the financial year of the entity:

### SWINTON DEALERS

#### PRE-ADJUSTMENT TRIAL BALANCE AS AT 31 MARCH 20.4

	Debit	Credit
	R	R
<b>Financial position section</b>		
Capital		186 980
Drawings	23 000	
Office equipment at cost price	24 000	
Accumulated depreciation: Office equipment		8 400
Bank	102 700	
Fixed deposit @ 12% pa	80 000	
Petty cash	2 000	
Inventory (1/04/20.3)	45 900	
Debtors control	21 300	
Creditors control		12 100
Prepaid insurance	2 880	
Rent received in advance		16 000
Allowance for credit losses		1 200
Stationery on hand	2 300	
<b>Nominal accounts section</b>		
Sales		213 000
Purchases	85 600	
Freight charges on purchases	4 700	
Freight charges on sales	3 000	
Purchases returns		5 000
Sales returns	1 050	
Customs duties	1 900	
Import tariffs	3 900	
Advertisements	800	
Wages and salaries	34 800	
Interest on fixed deposit		8 800
Settlement discount granted	400	
Rental income		3 200
Administrative expenses	2 200	
Repairs and maintenance	3 600	
Water and electricity	8 650	
	454 680	454 680



**Additional information**

- (a) The entity took out a fire insurance policy on 1 January 20.4 and paid a premium of R2 880 to cover the entity until 31 December 20.4.
- (b) On 31 March 20.4 the following was still on hand:
  - Trading inventory, R23 000
  - Stationery, R1 500
- (c) An employee's salary of R4 500 was still outstanding on 31 March 20.4.
- (d) The tenant moved into the building on 30 November 20.3 and paid his rent for 12 months. No deposit was required.
- (e) Office equipment is depreciated at 20% per annum on a straight-line basis. Take into account that a new computer was bought on 1 August 20.3 for R12 000.
- (f) The fixed deposit was invested a few years ago. Interest on the investment is credited to the current bank account.
- (g) Swinton Dealers determined that the allowance for credit losses account should amount to R1 065 at 31 March 20.4.

**REQUIRED**

- (1) Prepare the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income for Swinton Dealers for the year ended 31 March 20.4.
- (2) Prepare the statement of financial position of Swinton Dealers as at 31 March 20.4.
- (3) Prepare the statement of changes in equity of Swinton Dealers for the year ended 31 March 20.4.

## SOLUTION: ACTIVITY 2

(1)

**SWINTON DEALERS****STATEMENT OF PROFIT OR LOSS AND OTHER COMPREHENSIVE INCOME FOR THE YEAR ENDED 31 MARCH 20.4**

	R	R
Revenue (213 000 – 1 050 – 400)		211 550
Cost of sales (*1)		(114 000)
Gross profit		97 550
Other income		16 135
Interest on fixed deposit (8 800 + 800)	9 600	
Rental income (3 200 + 3 200)	6 400	
Credit losses (1 200 – 1 065)	135	
		113 685
Distribution, administrative and other expenses		(63 070)
Freight charges on sales	3 000	
Advertisements	800	
Wages and salaries (34 800 + 4 500)	39 300	
Administrative expenses	2 200	
Repairs and maintenance	3 600	
Water and electricity	8 650	
Insurance	720	
Stationery	800	
Depreciation (2 400 + 1 600)	4 000	
Profit for the year		50 615
Other comprehensive income for the year		—
Total comprehensive income for the year		50 615

**\* 1 Calculation of cost of sales**

	R
Opening inventory	45 900
Purchases (85 600 – 5 000)	80 600
Freight charges on purchases	4 700
Customs duties	1 900
Import tariffs	3 900
	137 000
Closing inventory	(23 000)
	114 000

## Notes on adjustments

- (a) The fire insurance premium equals  $R2\ 880/12 = R240$  per month. By 31 March 20.4 only 3 months' insurance have been "used". Thus  $R240 \times 3 = R720$  must end up in the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income as an *expense*, and  $R240 \times 9 = R2\ 160$  must end up in the statement of financial position as an *asset*.
- (b) • The opening trade inventory is R45 900. The closing trade inventory is R23 000. Both these amounts are used to calculate cost of sales in the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income. The closing inventory of R23 000 will be shown in the statement of financial position as a current asset.
- Stationery worth R2 300 was evidently bought during the financial year, and by the end of the year R800 had been used, since stationery of R1 500 was on hand at the inventory count. The portion that was used (R800) is an *expense*, and the part that is left on the shelves, is an *asset*.
- (c) Salary accrued. Debit salaries, credit accrued expenses (current liabilities) with R4 500.
- (d) The initial double-entry made must have been a debit against bank and a credit against income (rent) received in advance. There have in the meantime, however, been some reversals made against the rent received in advance account. This is evident from the fact that an income account for rental income exists as well. The total rent for the year must have been  $R16\ 000 + R3\ 200 = R19\ 200$ . This amounts to R1 600 per month for the tenant. By 31 March 20.4 the tenant had only occupied the premises for 4 months (since he moved in). This means that Swinton Dealers had only earned 4 months of rent at R1 600 per month. The income for rent (as shown in the statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income) will thus be R6 400. 8 months of rent have been received in advance (R12 800) and will be disclosed in the statement of financial position as a current liability.
- (e)  $R12\ 000 \times 20\% = R2\ 400$   
 $R12\ 000 \times 20\% \times 8/12 = R1\ 600$   
 Total depreciation for the year = R4 000
- (f)  $R80\ 000 \times 12\% = R9\ 600$   
 R9 600 interest has been earned by the entity, but only R8 800 has been received. This leaves R800 receivable interest (current asset in the statement of financial position).
- (g) Allowance for credit losses account at 31 March 20.4 = R1 065  
 Allowance for credit losses account at 31 March 20.3 = R1 200  
 A decrease in the allowance for credit losses is needed (income) and the new allowance for credit losses of R1 065 will be disclosed as a deduction from debtors in the statement of financial position.

(2)

**SWINTON DEALERS****STATEMENT OF FINANCIAL POSITION AS AT 31 MARCH 20.4**

	Notes	R	R
<b>ASSETS</b>			
<b>Non-current assets</b>			91 600
Property, plant and equipment	1	11 600	
Fixed deposit	2	80 000	
<b>Current assets</b>			152 395
Inventories	3	24 500	
Trade and other receivables	4	21 035	
Prepayments	5	2 160	
Cash and cash equivalents	6	104 700	
<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>			243 995
<b>EQUITY AND LIABILITIES</b>			
<b>Equity</b>			214 595
Capital		214 595	
<b>Current liabilities</b>			29 400
Trade and other payables	7	16 600	
Income received in advance	8	12 800	
<b>TOTAL EQUITY AND LIABILITIES</b>			243 995

(3)


**SWINTON DEALERS****STATEMENT OF CHANGES IN EQUITY FOR THE YEAR ENDED  
31 MARCH 20.4**

	<b>Capital R</b>
Balance at 1 April 20.3	186 980
Total comprehensive income for the year	50 615
Drawings	(23 000)
Balance at 31 March 20.4	<u>214 595</u>

**SWINTON DEALERS****NOTES FOR THE YEAR ENDED 31 MARCH 20.4**

<b>1 Property, plant and equipment</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>Equipment R</b>	<b>Total R</b>
Carrying amount at 1 April 20.3		3 600	3 600
Cost price		12 000	12 000
Accumulated depreciation		(8 400)	(8 400)
Additions		12 000	12 000
Disposals		–	–
Depreciation for the year		(4 000)	(4 000)
Carrying amount at 31 March 20.4		11 600	11 600
Cost price		24 000	24 000
Accumulated depreciation		(12 400)	(12 400)
<b>2 Financial assets</b>			
<b>Non-current financial assets</b>			
Loans and receivables: Fixed deposit at 12% pa			80 000
<b>3 Inventories</b>			
Trading inventory		23 000	
Consumable stores on hand: – stationery		1 500	24 500
<b>4 Trade and other receivables</b>			
Debtors control	21 300		
<u>Less:</u> Allowance for credit losses	(1 065)	20 235	
Accrued income: – Interest income		800	21 035

<b>5 Prepayments</b>			
Prepaid expenses: – Insurance			2 160
<b>6 Cash and cash equivalents</b>			
Bank		102 700	
Petty cash		2 000	104 700
<b>7 Trade and other payables</b>			
Creditors control		12 100	
Accrued expenses: – Salaries		4 500	16 600
<b>8 Income received in advance:</b>			
– Rental income		12 800	12 800

	<b>SELF-ASSESSMENT</b>			
	After you have worked through this learning unit, are you able to:			
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>correctly calculate and do adjustments at year-end with regard to accrued expenses, prepaid expenses, accrued income and income received in advance?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>correctly calculate and do adjustments with regard to consumable stores?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>correctly calculate and do adjustments with regard to depreciation of non-current assets?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>correctly calculate and do adjustments with regard to credit losses and allowance for credit losses?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>correctly prepare a statement of profit or loss and other comprehensive income for a sole trader?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>correctly prepare a statement of financial position and notes for a sole trader?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>correctly prepare a statement of changes in equity for a sole trader?</li> </ul>	☺	☹	☹	

If you have marked any ☹ you have to *revise* that specific section.

If you have marked any ☹ you have to **re-study** that specific section.

If you have marked all ☺ you may congratulate yourself for having achieved all the outcomes of this course.